





From the Digital Library Collection  
Of  
St. Mary's Hermitage Nr. Canterbury in Kent

The Order of the Hermits of Saint Bruno

Brother Librarian:  
[st.maryshermitage\(at\)hermitsofsaintbruno.org](mailto:st.maryshermitage(at)hermitsofsaintbruno.org)

<https://hermitsofsaintbruno.org>

<https://www.facebook.com/EremoSantaMaria/>



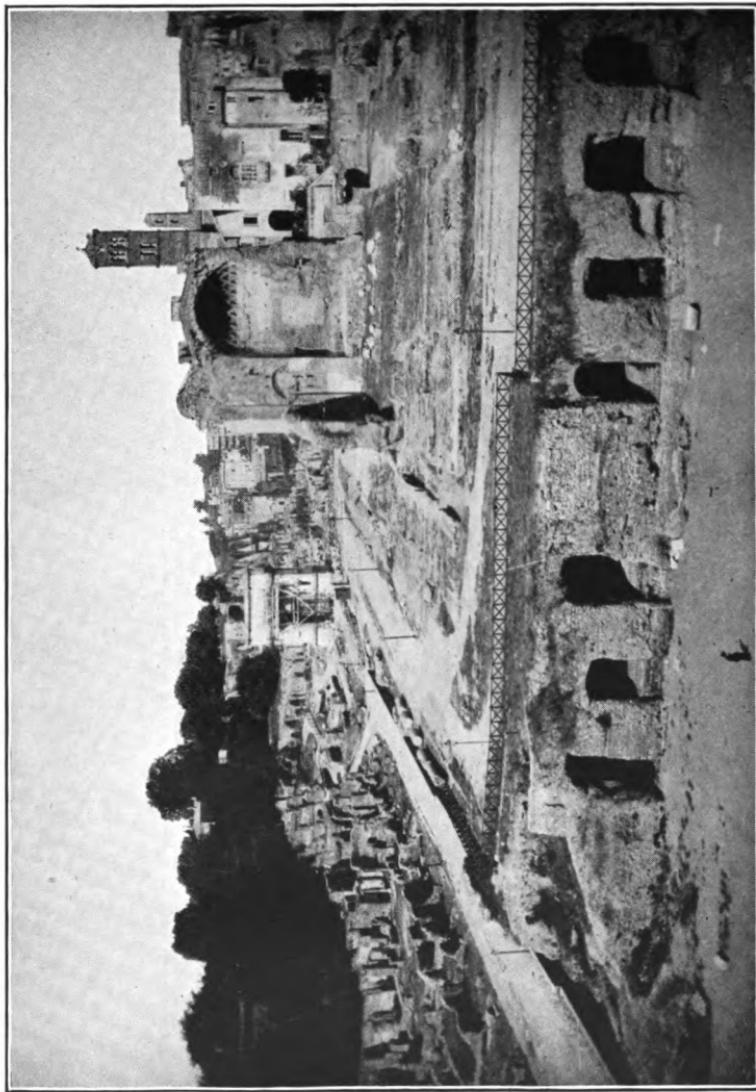


The Catholic University Classical Series

Edited by ROY J. DEFERRARI, M.A., Ph.D.







ARCH OF TITUS AND TEMPLE OF VENUS AND ROME FROM COLOSSEUM.

# A FIRST LATIN BOOK FOR CATHOLIC SCHOOLS

By

ROY JOSEPH DEFERRARI, M.A., Ph.D.

*Associate Professor of Greek and Latin at The Catholic University  
of America*

WASHINGTON, D. C.  
THE CATHOLIC EDUCATION PRESS

1921

Due T 919.21.320

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
GIFT OF  
GIHN & CO.  
DEC 11 1930

COPYRIGHT 1921  
BY THE  
CATHOLIC EDUCATION PRESS

NATIONAL CAPITAL PRESS  
BOOK MAKERS

## PREFACE

In preparing the present book, the author has endeavored primarily to present all the essentials of Latin grammar in the simplest possible way.

By far the majority of first year Latin books completely ignore the order of subjects as treated in the Latin grammar and mingle the study of forms with the study of syntax. The reason for this, it is said, is to lend variety, and thereby an added interest to the work of the first year. In very recent years, too, beginners' Latin books have had a tendency to load their pages with an excess of material regarding the relationship between Latin and English. This, too, is done in the hope of increasing the interest of beginners in their early study of the language.

The purpose of all these innovations is worthy, indeed, but the real purpose of the beginners' book seems to have been forgotten. The first Latin book should aim to give the student a complete mastery of the forms and of the essentials of syntax, all within the compass of a year's work, in order that in the second year he may study intelligently such Latin as Caesar's "Gallic War," and may at the same time make a more detailed study of the Grammar. This is no easy task for a single year's work, and accordingly the utmost economy should be exercised in selecting the material for study, and the greatest care should be applied to procure the most effective arrangement of this material.

Thus only matters of the greatest importance have been presented here. At the same time we feel sure nothing really essential has been omitted. Since the Latin usually read in the second year is Caesar's "Gallic War," the vocabulary has been made up largely of the words most commonly found therein.

The reading of continuous prose should be started as early as possible, probably at Lesson 30. For this purpose, easy Latin selections with full notes will be found at the back of the book. These bits of prose have been taken from Nepos's "Lives" and Caesar's "Gallic War." Some prayers and hymns of the Church have also been included in this section. These may be read and translated very early in the year's work, and may be memorized very profitably, at least in part.

Since a large portion of the second year's work is a systematic study of the Grammar, the present volume has followed the order of the standard grammars, thereby familiarizing the student at once with the most important tool for his Latin studies. In this way the student will not have to adapt himself to a new system of Latin grammar study so soon after his struggle with the arrangement presented in the first Latin book.

Indeed, as he becomes familiar with the first year book, he at the same time learns the order and arrangement of the Grammar. The orderly arrangement of the Grammar has an intrinsic value in itself, the loss of which has never been counterbalanced by any new arrangement intended to lend increased interest. In the present book, just as in the grammars, the forms to be memorized are presented first, followed by the essentials of the syntax.

The student must have a thorough mastery of the forms before he can study and apply the rules of syntax intelligently. It is then much better to concentrate on this work of pure memory first, even to the distaste of the student, as the interest in the study of Latin will be greatly increased later when he realizes his proficiency in the elements of the language and sees his success in the actual application of these fundamentals.

Since this book has been prepared primarily for Catholic schools, it contains, besides Latin prayers and hymns, the principles of the Italian as well as the "Roman" pronunciation of Latin. It is not our purpose to discuss the merits of these two systems. The so-called "Roman" pronunciation is undoubtedly the nearest approximation to Latin as it was spoken in the classical period of antiquity. The Italian pronunciation has been advocated strongly by the Pope, in an effort to procure some uniformity in the spoken Latin of ecclesiastical gatherings. The various other methods of speaking this ancient tongue, known variously as "Continental," "Modern," etc., have nothing whatever to recommend them except, perhaps, their facility. They consist for the most part of the application of the principles for pronouncing one's own native tongue, whatever it may be, to the speaking of Latin.

Finally we wish to express our sincere gratitude to the Rev. Romain Butin, S.M., Ph.D., of the Catholic University of America, not only for many valuable suggestions, but also for his great interest and practical assistance in preparing the manuscript for the press. Thanks are due also to Rev. T. J. McGourty, Ph.D., and Rev. F. J. Cöln, Ph.D., both of the Catholic University of America, for having read the manuscript and for making noteworthy suggestions.

Roy J. DEFERRARI.

*Brookland, D. C.*

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## INTRODUCTION

	Page
Alphabet.— Sounds.— Roman Method of Pronunciation.— Syllables.— Quantity.— Accent.— Inflections.— Gender.— Italian Pronunciation.....	11-14

## Part I.—INFLECTIONS

### Lesson

1. First Declension.....	19
2. First Declension (continued).—Present Indicative Active of a Verb of the First Conjugation.—Rules of Syntax.....	20
3. Second Declension.....	22
4. Second Declension (continued).....	24
5. Second Declension (continued).—Present Indicative of the Verb <i>sum</i> .—Rules of Syntax.....	25
6. Adjectives of the First and Second Declension.—Rules of Syntax.....	27
7. Adjectives of the First and Second Declension (continued).....	28
8. Third Declension.—Mute Stems.....	30
9. Third Declension (continued).—Liquid Stems.—Rule of Syntax.....	32
10. Third Declension (continued).—Liquid Stems.—Rules of Syntax.—Nasal Stems.....	34
11. Third Declension (continued).—I-Stems.—Rules of Syntax.....	37
12. Third Declension (continued).—Mixed Stems.....	39
13. Gender in the Third Declension.—Rules of Syntax.....	40
14. Fourth Declension.....	41
15. Fifth Declension.....	43
16. Nine Irregular Adjectives.....	44
17. Adjectives of the Third Declension.....	46
18. Adjectives of the Third Declension (continued).....	48
19. Comparison of Adjectives.—Rule of Syntax.....	52
20. Comparison of Adjectives.....	53
21. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.....	55
22. Numerals.....	57
23. Numerals (continued).....	58
24. Declension of Numeral Adjectives.....	59
25. Personal Pronouns.....	61
26. Reflexive and Possessive Pronouns.....	62
27. Demonstrative Pronouns.....	64

Lesson	Page
28. Demonstrative Pronouns (continued).....	65
29. The Intensive Pronoun.—Relative and Interrogative Pronouns. —Rules of Syntax.....	69
30. Indefinite Pronouns.....	69
31. Conjugation.—The Four Conjugations.—The Principal Parts of a Verb.—Conjugation of <i>sum</i> .....	70
32. Conjugation of <i>sum</i> (continued).....	73
33. Indicative Active of <i>amō</i> .....	75
34. Subjunctive Active of <i>amō</i> .....	77
35. Active of <i>amō</i> (continued).....	79
36. Indicative Passive of <i>amō</i> .....	80
37. Passive Voice of <i>amō</i> (continued).—Rule of Syntax.....	82
38. Indicative Active of <i>moneō</i> .....	84
39. Active Voice of <i>moneō</i> (continued).....	86
40. Indicative Passive of <i>moneō</i> .....	88
41. Passive Voice of <i>moneō</i> (continued).....	90
42. Active Voice of <i>regō</i> .....	92
43. Passive Voice of <i>regō</i> .....	94
44. Passive Voice of <i>regō</i> (continued).....	96
45. Active Voice of <i>audiō</i> .....	98
46. Passive Voice of <i>audiō</i> .....	100
47. Verbs in <i>-iō</i> of the Third Conjugation.....	103
48. Verbs in <i>-iō</i> of the Third Conjugation (continued).....	105
49. Deponent Verbs.....	107
50. Periphrastic Conjugations.—Rule of Syntax.....	110
51. Irregular Verbs: <i>possūm</i> .....	111
52. Irregular Verbs (continued): <i>dō</i> .....	113
53. Irregular Verbs (continued): <i>ferō</i> .....	115
54. Irregular Verbs (continued): <i>volō, nōlō, mālō</i> .....	118
55. Irregular Verbs (continued): <i>fiō</i> .....	119
56. Irregular Verbs (continued): <i>eō</i> .—Interrogative Sentences.....	121
57. Defective Verbs.....	123
58. Impersonal Verbs.....	125

## Part II.—SYNTAX

59. The Nominative and Vocative Cases.....	129
60. The Genitive Case.....	131
61. The Genitive Case (continued).....	133
62. The Dative Case.....	135
63. The Dative Case (continued).....	136

Lesson	Page
64. The Accusative Case.....	138
65. The Accusative Case (continued).....	139
66. The Ablative Case.....	141
67. The Ablative Case (continued).....	143
68. The Ablative Case (continued).....	145
69. The Ablative Case (continued).....	147
70. Syntax of Adjectives.....	149
71. Syntax of Pronouns.....	151
72. The Subjunctive Mood in Independent Sentences.—Hortatory Subjunctive.—Deliberative Subjunctive.....	152
73. The Subjunctive Mood in Independent Sentences (continued).— Optative Subjunctive.—Potential Subjunctive.....	154
74. Commands.—Affirmative.—Negative.....	155
75. Tenses of the Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses.—Sequence of Tenses.....	156
76. Clauses of Purpose.—Relative Clauses of Characteristic.— Causal Clauses.....	158
77. Clauses of Result.—Concessive Clauses.....	160
78. Temporal Clauses.....	162
79. Temporal Clauses (continued).....	163
80. Substantive Clauses.....	165
81. Substantive Clauses (continued).....	166
82. Indirect Questions.....	168
83. Conditional Sentences.....	169
84. Indirect Discourse.—Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.....	171
85. The Infinitive.....	173
86. Participles.....	174
87. Gerund and Gerundive.—Principal Rules of Syntax.....	176

### Part III.—LATIN FOR TRANSLATION

Latin Prayers: The Sign of the Cross.—The Lord's Prayer.—The Angelical Salutation.—The Apostles' Creed.— <i>Glōria Patri</i> .—The <i>Confiteor</i> .— <i>Salve Regina</i> .— <i>Memorāre</i> .— <i>Orēmus</i> .....	187
Latin Hymns: <i>Tantum Ergo</i> .— <i>Dē Nativitate Dōmīni</i> .— <i>Dē Resur- rectiōne Domīni</i> .— <i>In Passiōne Domīni</i> .— <i>Dē Cruce Domīni</i> .— <i>Dē Novissimō Iudiciō</i> .....	188
Selections from Nepos: Hannibal.—His greatness as a general, and his hatred of Romans.—Hannibal's vow.—Hannibal's campaign in Spain, and his march over the Alps.—The victories in Italy.—	

	Page
He outwits Fabius and defeats the Roman generals.—Hannibal, after retiring from Italy, is defeated by Scipio at Lama.—Hannibal at home. His flight to Antiochus.—He arouses Antiochus to war against the Romans.—He goes to Crete, and there saves his money by a trick.—Hannibal goes to Prusias. His bit of stratagem.—By his strategy he defeats Eumenes.—His death by poison.—His historians and his own writings.....	192
Julius Caesar's Gallic Wars, Book III, selections: Caesar sends Galba against the Nantuates, Veragri, and Seduni. Galba establishes winter quarters at Octodurus.—Mountain tribes revolt and occupy the neighboring heights.—The Romans meet in council and determine to defend their position.—The Romans are attacked by a larger force.—After fighting for six hours, Galba decides upon a sally.—The Gauls are completely routed.—Galba goes into winter quarters.....	205
General Latin-English Vocabulary.....	211
English-Latin Vocabulary.....	246

#### ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	= <i>ablative</i> .	inf.	= <i>infinitive</i> .
acc.	= <i>accusative</i> .	interrog.	= <i>interrogative</i> .
adj.	= <i>adjective</i> .	intr.	= <i>intransitive</i> .
adv.	= <i>adverb, adverbial</i> .	lit.	= <i>literally</i> .
c.	= <i>common (gender)</i> .	m., masc.	= <i>masculine</i> .
comp.	= <i>comparative</i> .	n., neut.	= <i>neuter</i> .
conj.	= <i>conjunction</i> .	nom.	= <i>nominative</i> .
dat.	= <i>dative</i> .	p., pp.	= <i>page, pages</i> .
decl.	= <i>declension</i> .	pass.	= <i>passive</i> .
dep.	= <i>deponent</i> .	pl., plu.	= <i>plural</i> .
e.g.	= <i>exempli gratia = for example</i> .	prep.	= <i>preposition</i> .
etc.	= <i>et cetera = and so forth</i>	pres.	= <i>present</i> .
f.	= <i>feminine</i> .	pron.	= <i>pronoun</i> .
gen.	= <i>genitive</i> .	rel.	= <i>relative</i> .
i.e.	= <i>id est = that is</i> .	sc.	= <i>supply</i> .
impers.	= <i>impersonal, impersonally</i> .	sing.	= <i>singular</i> .
indecl.	= <i>indeclinable</i> .	sup. super.	= <i>superlative</i> .
indic.	= <i>indicative</i> .	tr., trans.	= <i>transitive</i> .
		w.	= <i>with</i> .

## INTRODUCTION

1. This introduction should first of all be read carefully by the pupil, and then used for reference.

### Alphabet

2. The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English except that the Latin has no *j* or *w*. *I* is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. Consonantal *i* is printed in some books as *j*.

### Classification of Sounds

3. The Vowels are **a, e, i, o, u**. The other letters are consonants. The diphthongs are combinations of two vowels pronounced as one. They are **ae, oe, au, eu, ui**.

### 4. Roman Method of Pronunciation

(a) **Vowels**, when long, are pronounced as follows: **ā** like *a* in *father*; **ē** like *e* in *prey*; **ī** like *i* in *machine*; **ō** like *o* in *note*; **ū** like *u* in *rude*.

(b) **Vowels**, when short, are pronounced as follows: **ă** like *a* in *along*; **ĕ** like *e* in *step*; **ĭ** like *i* in *pit*; **ŏ** like *o* in *or*; **û** like *u* in *put*.

(c) **Diphthonge**, being combinations of two vowels, are pronounced as two vowels in quick succession. Thus: **ae** like *ai* in *aisle*; **oe** like *oi* in *coin*; **au** like *ou* in *out*; **eu** like **ĕ-oo**; **ui** like **oo-ĭ**.

(d) **Consonants** are for the most part pronounced as in English, but the few exceptions should be noted carefully:

**b, d, f, h, k, l, m, n, p, qu, r, x, z** are pronounced as in English, but **bs** and **bt** are pronounced as *ps* and *pt*.

**c** and **g** are always hard as in *come* and *go*.

**i** as a consonant is like *y* in *yes*.

**t** is always hard as in *tin*, and never as the sound of *sh* as in English *mention*.

**s** is always a hissing sound as in *sin*, and never like *z* as in *ease*.

**v** is always like *w*.

**ph, ch, and th** are to be pronounced practically like English *p, k*, and *t*.

Doubled consonants such as **ll, mm, tt**, etc., are not pronounced as in English like single consonants, but an effort should be made to pronounce both members of the combination distinctly.

### Syllables

5. A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong either alone or with one or more consonants. Therefore a word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs: **con-ci-pi-ō**, *I perceive*.

In dividing the word into syllables, a single consonant between two vowels belongs with the following vowel: *pa'-ter, father.*

Where there are two or more consonants between two vowels, as many are joined with the following vowel as can be pronounced with it: *ho'-spes, guest; mōn-strum, omen.*

Compound words are separated into their component parts: *ad-est* (*ad, near; est, he is*), *he is present.*

Double consonants are separated: *pu-el'-la, girl.*

The last syllable of a word is called the ultima; the syllable before the last is the penult; and the one before that is the anteult.

#### Quantity of Vowels

**6.** Vowels are long (̄) or short (˘), according to the length of time used in pronouncing them. Thus in English, the ī of *machine* takes more time than the ī of *pin*. In this book, the long vowels are marked by a horizontal line above them; short vowels are left unmarked.

No definite rules can be given for determining the quantity of Latin vowels. One must become familiar with them by observing and learning the quantity as marked in every part of the book.

A few general rules, however, for determining the quantity of vowels are of great assistance:

1. A vowel is long before **nf**, **ns**, as *inferō, I bring in; insānus, mad.*
2. Vowels resulting from contraction are long, as *cō'-gō (coagō), I collect.*
3. Diphthongs are always long, and so need not be marked, as *cāusa, cause.*
4. A vowel is usually short before **nt**, **nd**, as *amant, they love; amandus, to be loved.*
5. A vowel is short before another vowel or **h**, as *cō'-pī-a, abundance; tra'-ho, I drag.*

#### Quantity of Syllables

**7.** A syllable is long or short according to the length of time consumed in pronouncing it.

A syllable is long or takes a long time in pronunciation when it contains a long vowel or diphthong, as *lēgēs, laws; aedēs, temple.* Such syllables are said to be long by nature.

A syllable is long when it contains a short vowel followed by **x**, **z**, or any two consonants, except a mute<sup>1</sup> followed by **l** or **r**, as *dux, leader; sacerdōs, priest.* Such syllables are said to be long by position.

<sup>1</sup> The mutes are **p**, **b**, **t**, **d**, **c**, **k**, **g**, **q**.

A syllable is short if it contains a short vowel followed by a vowel, by a single consonant, or by a mute with **l** or **r**, as **honor**, *honor*; **hiems**, *winter*; **patria**, *native land*.

### Accent

**8.** In words of two syllables the first receives the stress of the voice or accent, as **te'git**, *it covers*; **te'm plum**, *temple*.

Words of more than two syllables receive the accent on the penult (next to the last) when it is long, otherwise on the antepenult (second before the last), as **amā're**, *to love*; **mi't tere**, *to send*.

### EXERCISE

**9.** Divide the following into syllables. Accent and pronounce carefully, remembering to sound long vowels long, and short vowels short.

#### *The Lord's Prayer*

Pater noster, qui es in caelis, sanctificetur nōmen tuum. Adveniat regnum tuum; fiat voluntas tua sicut in caelō et in terrā. Pānem nostrum quotidianū dā nōbis hodie. Et dimite nōbis débita nostra, sicut et nōs dimittimus debitoribus nostris. Et nē nōs inducās in tentatiōnem, sed libera nōs a malō. Āmēn.

### Inflections

**10.** **The Parts of Speech** in Latin are the same as in English, except that the Latin has no article: thus, nouns, adjectives, pronouns, verbs, adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections.

**11.** **Inflection** is the change words undergo in form to show change in meaning. The inflection of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns is called declension; with verbs, conjugation. Adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections have no inflection.

**12.** **Declension.**—Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives have the following cases:

*Nominative*, the case of the subject.

*Genitive*, like English possessive, or objective case with *of*.

*Dative*, like English objective with *to* or *for*.

*Accusative*, the case of the direct object.

*Vocative*, the case of direct address.

*Ablative*, like English objective with *by*, *from*, *with*, *in*.

**Locative.**—The traces of another case, the locative, denoting place where, occur in names of towns, and a few other words.

**13. Conjugation.**—Latin verbs have:

1. Three finite moods: Indicative, subjunctive, imperative; besides infinitives, participles, supines, gerunds, and gerundives.
2. Six tenses: present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, future perfect.
3. Two voices: Active and passive, as in English.
4. Three persons: First, second, and third, as in English.
5. Two numbers: Singular and plural, as in English.

**Gender**

**14.** Latin, just as English, has three genders: masculine, feminine, and neuter.

Gender is determined partly, as in English, by the meaning of the noun, but more frequently by the ending.

**15. General rules of gender by meaning.**

1. Names of males, and of rivers, winds, months, and mountains are masculine, as: *pater, father; Tiberis, the Tiber; austus, south wind; Ianuarius, January; Apenninus, Apennines.*
2. Names of females, and of countries, towns, islands, and trees are feminine, as *filia, daughter; Italia, Italy; Roma, Rome; Delos, Delos; ulmus, elm.*
3. Indeclinable nouns are neuter, as *nihil, nothing.*
4. The principles for gender by ending will be given later under the different declensions.

**16. Italian Pronunciation of Latin.**

For those teachers who prefer to teach the Italian pronunciation of Latin, the following general rules may be of assistance:

(a) In general, vowels in Italian are pronounced as in the Roman pronunciation of Latin.

(b) Diphthongs in Italian are also pronounced as in the Roman pronunciation of Latin, except *ae*, which rarely occurs in Italian. When the diphthong *ae* does appear, it is pronounced as Latin *e*, that is, like *e* in *prey*.

(c) Of the consonants, the following are to be noted as being different from their regular pronunciation in English.

*c*, soft before *e* and *i*, like *ch* in *charity*.

*g*, soft before *e* and *i*, like *j* in *just*.

*h*, is always silent.

*r*, as in English, except that it is rolled more.

s, as in English, except that between two vowels it sounds like z in dozen.

z, usually like English ts in *fits*.

cc, before e or i, like tch in *match*.

ch, before e or i, always hard, like k.

gg, before e or i, sounds like dj in *adjust*.

gh, before e or i, is hard, like g in *game*.

gl, before i, like ll in *million*.

gn, like n in *onion*.

sc, soft before e or i, like sh in *she*.

Double consonants are always pronounced as two separate consonants;  
i. e., with double emphasis.



## **PART I.—INFLECTIONS**



## Lesson 1

### FIRST DECLENSION

17. There are five declensions of nouns, distinguished by the final letter of the stem. It is customary, however, to indicate the declension from the ending of the genitive singular.

Declension	Stem-ending	Gen. Sing. ending
I	-ā-	-ae
II	-ō-	-ī
III	-i- or a consonant	-is
IV	-u-	-ūs
V	-ē-	-ēi

### FIRST DECLENSION (-ā-) STEMS

*mensa, f., table*

18.		Singular	Case-endings
	<i>Nom.</i>	<b>mēnsa</b> <i>a (or the) table</i>	-a
	<i>Gen.</i>	<b>mēnsae</b> <i>a table's, of a table</i>	-ae
	<i>Dat.</i>	<b>mēnsae</b> <i>to or for a table</i>	-ae
	<i>Acc.</i>	<b>mēnsam</b> <i>a table</i>	-am
	<i>Abl.</i>	<b>mēnsā</b> <i>from, with, by, or on a table</i>	-ā
		Plural	
	<i>Nom.</i>	<b>mēnsae</b> <i>tables, or the tables</i>	-ae
	<i>Gen.</i>	<b>mēnsārum</b> <i>tables', of tables</i>	-ārum
	<i>Dat.</i>	<b>mēnsis</b> <i>to or for tables</i>	-is
	<i>Acc.</i>	<b>mēnsās</b> <i>tables</i>	-ās
	<i>Abl.</i>	<b>mēnsis</b> <i>from, with, by, or on tables</i>	-is

19. The base or that part of the word which remains unchanged in inflection is found by dropping the termination -ae of the genitive singular, as **mēnsae**, base, **mēns-**.

20. The vocative case in all declensions is like the nominative, except in certain nouns of the second declension.

21. Latin has no article. Thus **mēnsa** may mean *table*, *a table*, or *the table*; and in the plural **mēnsae**, *tables* or *the tables*.

22. Town names and a few common nouns have a locative case in -ae: as, **Rōmae**, *at Rome*; **militiae**, *in service*.

**23.** Most nouns of the first declension are feminine. Names of males, however, are masculine: as, *agricola*, *farmer*; *nauta*, *sailor*; *porta*, *port*.

**24.****VOCABULARY**

- agricola*, ae, m., *farmer*.
- fābula*, ae, f., *story*.
- filia*, ae, f., *daughter*.
- incola*, ae, m., *inhabitant*.
- īnsula*, ae, f., *island*.
- lūna*, ae, f., *moon*.
- nauta*, ae, m., *sailor*.
- porta*, ae, f., *gate*.
- puella*, ae, f., *girl*.
- rēgīna*, ae, f., *queen*.

**25.****EXERCISES**

1. *Agricola*, *fābulae*, *lūna*. 2. *Filiae*, *incolārum*, *īnsulis*. 3. *Nautae*, *portis*, *puellas*. 4. *Rēgnam*, *fabulās*, *agricolārum*. 5. *Īnsula*, *lūnis*, *portas*. 6. *Puella*, *rēgnārum*, *incolae*. 7. *Agricolās*, *nautārum*, *nautās*. 8. *Filia*, *filiārum*, *filiis*. 9. *Portis*, *portam*, *portae*. 10. *Puella*, *fābula*, *rēgnāe*.

**26.** 1. To the queen, the stories (as subject), from the moon. 2. To the farmer, for the sailors, of the inhabitants. 3. The girls (as direct object), of the story, to the inhabitants. 4. The gate (as subject), by the gates, of the queens. 5. The daughters of the sailor, the inhabitants of the islands. 6. To the girls of the island. 7. With the story of the farmer. 8. From the sailors of the island.

**Lesson 2****FIRST DECLENSION (-ā-) STEMS, Continued****27. Present Indicative Active of a Verb of the First Conjugation.**

Singular	Plural
<i>amō</i> , <i>I love, am loving, do love.</i>	<i>amāmus</i> , <i>we love.</i>
<i>amās</i> , <i>thou lovest, you love, etc.</i>	<i>amātis</i> , <i>you love.</i>
<i>amat</i> , <i>he, she, it loves.</i>	<i>amant</i> , <i>they love.</i>

All verbs of the first conjugation are inflected like *amō*.

Remember that in Latin the subject of the verb if it is a personal pronoun (*I*, thou, he, we, etc.) is not expressed unless emphatic. It is implied in the verb.

## 28.

## RULES OF SYNTAX

1. The subject of the verb is always in the nominative case.
2. The verb agrees with the subject in number and person. *filiae amant, daughters love.*
3. The object of the verb is in the accusative case. *poēta amat filiam, the poet loves his daughter.*
4. A noun used with another noun to complete or limit its meaning is put in the genitive case.  
*filiae agricolae, the daughters of the farmer, or the farmer's daughters.*

## 29.

## VOCABULARY

- est, he, she, or it is.**  
**et, conj., and; et... et, both... and.**  
**laudō, I praise.**  
**nōn, adv., not.**  
**rōsa, ae, f., rose.**  
**sagitta, ae, f., arrow.**  
**silva, ae, f., forest.**  
**stella, ae, f., star.**  
**sunt, they are.**  
**terra, ae, f., land, country.**  
**ubi, adv., where, when.**  
**västō, I lay, waste.**  
**via, ae, f., road, street.**  
**vocō, I call, I summon.**

**N.B.**—It is very important for the student to remember from the outset that the order of words in a Latin sentence is free. Although it may be stated that usually the subject and object (if they exist) of a Latin sentence come first and the verb last, this is by no means always so. Therefore it is very necessary that the student analyze strictly every sentence which he translates. That is, he should understand exactly the relation of one word to another.

## EXERCISES

- 30.** 1. Terram agricolae vastant. 2. Incolae nautas vocant. 3. Et stellas et lūnam amāmus. 4. Rōsas laudās. 5. Silvam laudātis. 6. Viās silvae puella laudat. 7. Sagittas nōn amō. 8. Ubi est<sup>1</sup> rēgina

<sup>1</sup> est, third sing. ind. of sum. Translate is.

Insulae? 9. Incolae terrae västant. 10. Filiae nautae silvam laudant. 11. Agricolas et nautas vocatis. 12. Sagittas agricolae laudas. 13. Silvam laudas. 14. Silvas agricolae västant.

31. 1. We love the moon and the stars. 2. We praise the farmer's daughter. 3. They lay waste the forests of the country. 4. He summons both the farmers and the sailors. 5. The inhabitants of the island are calling. 6. The farmer does not like roses. 7. Where is the star?

### Lesson 3

#### SECOND DECLENSION (-o-): STEMS

32. Stems in -o- with the nominative in -us or -um.

*amicus*, m., friend.

	Singular	Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>amicus</b> <i>a (or the) friend</i>	<b>-us</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>amicī</b> <i>a friend's, of a friend</i>	<b>-i</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>amicō</b> <i>to or for a friend</i>	<b>-ō</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>amicum</b> <i>a friend</i>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>amicō</b> <i>from, with, by a friend</i>	<b>-ō</b>
Plural		
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>amicī</b> <i>friends, or the friends</i>	<b>-i</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>amicōrum</b> <i>friends', of friends</i>	<b>-ōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>amicīs</b> <i>to or for friends</i>	<b>-īs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>amicōs</b> <i>friends</i>	<b>-ōs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>amicīs</b> <i>from, with, by friends</i>	<b>-īs</b>

*bellum*, n., war

Singular	Case-endings	Plural	Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i> <b>bellum</b>	<b>-um</b>	<i>Nom.</i> <b>bella</b>	<b>-a</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>bellī</b>	<b>-i</b>	<i>Gen.</i> <b>bellōrum</b>	<b>-ōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>bellō</b>	<b>-ō</b>	<i>Dat.</i> <b>bellīs</b>	<b>-īs</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>bellum</b>	<b>-um</b>	<i>Acc.</i> <b>bella</b>	<b>-a</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <b>bellō</b>	<b>-ō</b>	<i>Abl.</i> <b>bellīs</b>	<b>-īs</b>

Stems in -o- with the nominative in -us have a special form for the vocative case, thus, **amicē**, **Marcē**.

## 33.

## VOCABULARY

- accūsō**, *I accuse.*  
**amicus**, *i*, m., *friend.*  
**animus**, *i*, m., *soul, mind, courage.*  
**aquila**, *ae*, f., *eagle.*  
**avus**, *i*, m., *grandfather.*  
**auxilium**, *i* (*ii*), m., *aid, help.*  
**Belgae**, *ārum*, m. pl., *Belgians, a tribe of Gaul.*  
**bellum**, *i*, n., *war.*  
**equus**, *i*, m., *horse.*  
**Gallī**, *ōrum*, m. pl., *Gauls.*  
**Germāni**, *ōrum*, m. pl., *Germans.*  
**implōrō**, *I entreat.*  
**Italia**, *ae*, f., *Italy.*  
**proelium**, *i* (*ii*), n., *battle.*

## EXERCISES

**34.** 1. Equō, equum, equis. 2. Bellum, bellō, bellī. 3. Amict, amicōs, amicōrum. 4. Animum, animī, animīs. 5. Proelia, proeliis, proeliōrum. 6. Auxilia, auxiliō, amīce. 7. Belgae Germānōs accūsant. 8. Belgae et Gallī auxilium implōrant. 9. Aquila et equus. 10. Avus equum amici amat. 11. Bella et proelia non amāmus. 12. Amicōs amātis. 13. Nautae equōs agricolārum vexant. 14. Silvās terrārum et insulārum aquilae amant. 15. Amicōs accūsant et bellum amant.

**35.** 1. To a friend; of friends; friends. 2. By war; by battles; for a help. 3. Both the Belgians and the Gauls accuse the Germans. 4. They lay waste the land and villages. 5. They entreat the aid of the Gauls. 6. Grandfather likes the farmer's horses. 7. The queen does not like battles and wars.

## Lesson 4

### SECOND DECLENSION (-o-) STEMS, Continued

- 36.** Stems in -o- with the nominative in -er or -ir.

*puer*, m., *boy*.  
stem, *puero-*.

*ager*, m., *field*.  
stem, *agro-*.

	Singular		Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>puer</b>	<b>ager</b>	wanting
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>puerī</b>	<b>agrī</b>	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>puerō</b>	<b>agrō</b>	-ō
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>puerum</b>	<b>agrūm</b>	-um
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>puerō</b>	<b>agrō</b>	-ō

	Plural		
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>puerī</b>	<b>agrī</b>	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>puerōrum</b>	<b>agrōrum</b>	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>puerīs</b>	<b>agrīs</b>	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>puerōs</b>	<b>agrōs</b>	-ōs
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>puerīs</b>	<b>agrīs</b>	-īs

*vir*, m., *man*.  
stem, *viro-*.

Singular	Case-endings	Plural	Case-endings	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>vir</b>	wanting	<i>Nom.</i> <b>virī</b>	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>virī</b>	-ī	<i>Gen.</i> <b>virōrum</b>	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>virō</b>	-ō	<i>Dat.</i> <b>virīs</b>	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>virum</b>	-um	<i>Acc.</i> <b>virōs</b>	-ōs
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>virō</b>	-ō	<i>Abl.</i> <b>virīs</b>	-īs

Stems in -o- with the nominative in -er or -ir have no special vocative form. The vocative is the same as the nominative.

**37.** **VOCABULARY**

*audācia*, ae, f., *boldness*.

*castra*, orum, n. pl., *a camp*.

*cōpia*, ae, f., *abundance, plenty*; in plur. *troops, forces*.

*dōnum*, i, n., *gift*.

*Eurōpa*, ae, f., *Europe*.

*filius*, ī (ii), m., *son*.

*Galba*, ae, m., *Galba* (a man's name).

**Graecī, ūrum,** m., pl., *Greeks.*

**incitō,** *I incite, urge on.*

**oppidum,** i, n., *town.*

**oppugnō,** *I attack, assault.*

**periculum,** i, n., *danger.*

### EXERCISES

- 38.** 1. Audāciam Galbae laudat. 2. Galli puerōs incitant. 3. Italia terra Eurōpae est. 4. Cōpiae Graecōrum oppidum oppugnant. 5. Galba pericula amat. 6. Pueri virōs implōrant. 7. Pericula cas-trōrum non amātis. 8. Dōna Graecōrum nōn amō. 9. Eurōpa cōpias implōrat. 10. Et agrōs et oppida Belgārum Germāni vāstant.

- 39.** 1. The Belgians are imploring aid. 2. The troops lay waste the villages and towns of the Gauls. 3. Europe does not like the dangers of war. 4. The troops storm the camp of the Germans. 5. The boldness of the sailors is a danger. 6. The boys like the farmers' daughters. 7. The queen of the island urges on the troops.

## Lesson 5

### SECOND DECLENSION (-o-) STEMS, Continued

- 40.** Certain peculiarities of inflection.

If e is contained in the stem as in **puer**, it appears in all cases. For example, **gener** (gen. -erī), *son-in-law;* **presbyter** (gen. -erī), *elder, priest;* **socer** (gen. -erī), *father-in-law;* **vesper** (gen. -erī), *evening.*

If e is not contained in the stem as in **ager** (gen. agrī), the nominative singular is formed by dropping the o of the stem and inserting e before r.

Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** usually contract and form the genitive singular in **-ī** instead of **-ii**. For example, **ingenium**, n. *character* (gen. inge'nī); **filius**, m. *son* (gen. fili). In such cases the genitive is accented on the penult, even when short.

Town names and a few common nouns have a locative case in **-i**. For example, **Corinthi**, *at Corinth;* **domi**, *at home;* **humī**, *on the ground.*

Most nouns ending in **-us** and **-r** are masculine; those ending in **-um** are neuter.

- 41. Present Indicative of the Verb sum.**

#### Singular

**sum,** *I am.*

**es,** *thou art, you are.*

**est,** *he, she, it is.*

#### Plural

**sumus,** *we are.*

**estis,** *you are.*

**sunt,** *they are.*

## 42.

## RULES OF SYNTAX

1. A noun used with and explaining another noun, denoting the same person or thing, is called an Appositive and is said to be in apposition.
2. An appositive agrees with its noun in case, and, if possible, in number and gender.

**Galba agricola, Galba, the farmer.**

3. A noun connected with the subject by some form of the verb **sum** or other intransitive verb is called a Predicate Noun.

4. A predicate noun agrees in case and, whenever possible, in number and gender with the noun which it modifies.

**Galba est agricola, Galba is a farmer.**

## 43.

## VOCABULARY

**arma, örüm, n. pl., weapons, arms, armour.**

**aurum, i, n., gold.**

**caelum, i, n., sky, heaven.**

**fluvius, i (ii), m., river.**

**frumentum, i, n., grain.**

**Rōma, ae, f., Rome.**

**Sēquani, örüm, m, pl., Sequani, a tribe of Gaul.**

**vexō, I harass, annoy.**

**vicus, i, m., village.**

**vītō, I avoid.**

## EXERCISES

- 44.** 1. Pericula proeliōrum nōn vitamus. 2. Es, sumus, sum, sunt.  
 3. Sequanī agricultorās, incolās vīcōrum, vexant. 4. Sequanī sunt agricultorāe.  
 5. Est fluvius periculōrum. 6. Galba, agricultor, fluvium amat. 7. Estis amici Sēquaniōrum. 8. Dōna aurī laudant. 9. Amici sumus Galbae, nautae. 10. Germāni Rōmam, oppidum Italiae, oppugnant. 11. Galli frumentū incolarūm Insulae vāstant. 12. Galba, amicus agricultorae, et caelum et stellas laudat. 13. Bella et pericula vitatis. 14. Sunt Belgae, amici Gallōrum.

- 45.** 1. We are friends of Galba, the sailor. 2. You like the road, and avoid the river. 3. We harass the villages of the Sequani. 4. Galba, the farmer, is a friend of the sailors. 5. You are Gauls, friends of the Belgians. 6. You (plural) avoid the dangers of battle. 7. We like the sky, and the moon, and the stars. 8. The queen of the island is a friend of boys and girls.

## Lesson 6

### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

**46.** There are two declensions of adjectives, one being a combination of the first and second declensions of nouns, the other having the terminations of the [third] declension of nouns. Adjectives of the first and second declensions have three distinct series of case-endings for the masculine, feminine, and neuter. Each series corresponds respectively to **o-** stems, **a-** stems, and neuter **o-** stems.

**47.** *Bonus, good; stems, bono-, bona-.*

Singular			
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>bonus</b>	<b>bona</b>	<b>bonum</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>bonī</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bonī</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>bonō</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bonō</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>bonum</b>	<b>bonam</b>	<b>bonum</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>bonō</b>	<b>bonā</b>	<b>bonō</b>
Plural			
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>bonī</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bona</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>bonōrum</b>	<b>bonārum</b>	<b>bonōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>bonōs</b>	<b>bonās</b>	<b>bona</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>

### 48. RULES OF SYNTAX

Adjectives may also be classified according to their use, as attributive or predicate.

An Attributive adjective modifies a noun directly.

**bonus amīcus, a good friend.**

A Predicate Adjective modifies a noun by being connected with it by a verb.

**fortūna cæeca est, fortune is blind.**

The quality of the noun expressed by the attributive adjective is taken for granted, whereas the quality expressed by the predicate adjective is specifically asserted.

All adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

**fortissimī sunt Belgæ, the Belgians are the bravest.**

## 49.

## VOCABULARY

**fēmina**, ae, f., *woman*.

**hortus**, i, m., *garden*.

**iūmentum**, i, n., *beasts of burden*.

**lātus**, a, um, *broad*.

**longus**, a, um, *long*.

**magnus**, a, um, *large, great*.

**multus**, a, um, *much*; pl., *many*.

**parō**, I *prepare*.

**parvus**, a, um, *small*.

**populus**, i, m., *people*.

**Rōmānus**, a, um, *Roman*; as a noun, m., *a Roman*.

**victoria**, ae, f., *victory*.

## EXERCISES

50. 1. *Pueri* nautae sunt parvi. 2. *Fēminae Rōmānae* sunt bonae. 3. *Hortus* est longus et latus. 4. *Rōmāni* victorias magnas amant. 5. *Īnsula* est magna. 6. Multa iūmenta paratis. 7. Victoria populi *Rōmāni* est magna. 8. *Belgae* et *Sēquani* multa bella parant. 9. Cōpiae *Rōmānae* multos agrōs Gallōrum vexant. 10. *Viae Rōmae* sunt longae, nōn latae. 12. *Galli* cōpiam frūmenti et multa iūmenta implorant. 12. Multa iūmenta parāmus. 13. *Hortus* parvus est fēminae *Rōmānae*. 14. Oppida *Rōmāndrum* sunt magna et multa.

51. 1. The farmer's daughters are good. 2. The island is broad and long. 3. The people like a Roman victory. 4. Many Gauls are ravaging the broad fields. 5. You are getting ready the large beasts of burden. 6. We praise the woman's gardens and many roses. 7. The Roman people like courage and daring. 8. The villages of the Germans are small.

## Lesson 7

## ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (Cont.)

52. Adjectives declined like *puer*.

**liber**, *free*; stems, **libero-**, **libera-**.

	Masculine	Singular	
	Nom.	Feminine	Neuter
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>liber</b>	<b>libera</b>	<b>liberum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>liberī</b>	<b>liberae</b>	<b>liberī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>liberō</b>	<b>liberae</b>	<b>liberō</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>liberum</b>	<b>liberam</b>	<b>liberum</b>
	<b>libero</b>	<b>liberā</b>	<b>liberō</b>

## Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>liberī</b>	<b>liberae</b>	<b>libera</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>liberōrum</b>	<b>liberārum</b>	<b>liberōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>liberis</b>	<b>liberis</b>	<b>liberis</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>liberōs</b>	<b>liberās</b>	<b>libera</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>liberis</b>	<b>liberis</b>	<b>liberis</b>

53. Adjectives declined like *ager*.

**niger**, *black*; stems, **nigro-**, **nigra-**.

## Singular

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>niger</b>	<b>nigra</b>	<b>nigrum</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>nigrī</b>	<b>nigrae</b>	<b>nigrī</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>nigrō</b>	<b>nigrae</b>	<b>nigrō</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>nigrum</b>	<b>nigram</b>	<b>nigrum</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>nigrō</b>	<b>nigrā</b>	<b>nigrō</b>

## Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>nigrī</b>	<b>nigrae</b>	<b>nigra</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>nigrōrum</b>	<b>nigrārum</b>	<b>nigrōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>nigrīs</b>	<b>nigrīs</b>	<b>nigrīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>nigrōs</b>	<b>nigrās</b>	<b>nigra</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>nigrīs</b>	<b>nigrīs</b>	<b>nigrīs</b>

Most adjectives are declined like **niger**. The only adjectives in common use which are declined like **liber**, are **asper**, *rough*; **tener**, *tender*; and **miser**, *wretched*.

## 54. VOCABULARY

**beātus**, *a*, *um*, *happy*.

**clārus**, *a*, *um*, *bright*, *splendid*, *happy*.

**Helvētiī**, *ōrum*, *m. pl.*, *the Helvetii*, *a Celtic tribe*.

**iniuria**, *ae*, *f.*, *injury*.

**iustitia**, *ae*, *f.*, *justice*.

**lēgātus**, *ī*, *m.*, *lieutenant*.

**liber**, *era*, *erum*, *free*.

**nuntius**, *ī*, *(ii)*, *m.*, *messenger*.

**potentia**, *ae*, *f.*, *power*.

**pulcher**, *chra*, *chrum*, *beautiful*, *pretty*.

**servus**, *ī*, *m.*, *slave*, *servant*.

**supero**, *I* *overcome*.

### EXERCISES

**55.** 1. Feminae et pueriae sunt beatae. 2. Populus Rōmānus multos Gallos superat. 3. Legatus Rōmānus, vir bonus, pueros et puellas amat. 4. Nuntius Helvētiōrum iustitiam et nōn iniuriam implorat. 5. Rōmāni sunt populus clarus. 6. Galba magnum numerum Gallōrum superat. 7. Belgae sunt liberi et beati. 8. Terrae et Insulae Eurōpae sunt parvae. 9. Nautae Rōmāni sunt asperfi et miseri. 10. Iustitia, nōn iniuria, est bona. 11. Aurum Germānōrum vitamus; victoriā et iustitiam implorāmus. 12. Populus liber est populus beatus. 13. Legati Helvētiōrum Rōmānos vocant. 14. Cōpiae Rōmānōrum nuntiōs Graecōrum vexant. 15. Servus Galbae, legati Rōmāni, est niger.

**56.** 1. The Helvetii are happy. 2. The slaves of the Roman lieutenants are black. 3. Galba, the lieutenant, likes great victories. 4. The Sequani are free and happy. 5. The rough Gauls lay waste the villages of the Helvetii. 6. Many villages of the Romans are beautiful. 7. The power of a good lieutenant is justice. 8. We praise good servants.

## Lesson 8

### THIRD DECLENSION

**57.** The third declension has several distinct classes of stems.<sup>1</sup>

I. Consonant—Stems, subdivided into:

- (a) Mute (**p, b; t, d; c, g**) stems.
- (b) Liquid (**l, r**) stems.
- (c) Nasal (**m, n**) stems.

II. **Y**-stems.

III. Mixed Stems. (Consonant stems which have taken over some of the peculiarities of the inflection of **Y**-stems.)

#### Mute-stems

**58.** *miles*, m., *soldier*; stem, **milit-**. *rēx*, m., *king*; stem, **rēg-**.

	Singular	Case-endings.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>miles</b>	<b>rēx</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>militis</b>	<b>rēgis</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>militi</b>	<b>rēgi</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>militem</b>	<b>rēgem</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>milite</b>	<b>rēge</b>

<sup>1</sup> Since English words derived from Latin are generally taken from an oblique case, the stem of a Latin word may often be easily determined from a glance at its English derivative; e.g., *miles* (*milit-ary*, stem **milit-**); *cor* (*cord-ial*, stem **cord-**); *caput* (*capit-al*, stem **capit-**), etc.

		Plural	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>militēs</b>	<b>rēgēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>militum</b>	<b>rēgum</b>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>militibus</b>	<b>rēgibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>militēs</b>	<b>rēgēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>militibus</b>	<b>rēgibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>

**Cor**, n., *heart*; stem, *cord-*.    **caput**, n., *head*; stem, *capit-*.

	Singular		Case-endings.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>cor</b>	<b>caput</b>	wanting
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>cordis</b>	<b>capitis</b>	<b>-is</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>cordi</b>	<b>capiti</b>	<b>-i</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>cor</b>	<b>caput</b>	wanting
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>corde</b>	<b>capite</b>	<b>-e</b>

	Plural		Case-endings.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>corda</b>	<b>capita</b>	<b>-a</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	.....	<b>capitum</b>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>cordibus</b>	<b>capitibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>corda</b>	<b>capita</b>	<b>-a</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>cordibus</b>	<b>capitibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>

Masculine and feminine nouns with stems ending in a mute form the nominative by adding **s** to the stem.

(a) A dental (**t**, **d**) disappears before **s**, as **miles**, **nepōs** (stem, **nepōt-**), *grandson*.

(b) A guttural (**c**, **g**) joins with **s** to form **x**, as, **rēx**, **pāx** (stem, **pāc-**), *peace*.

The only neuters with stems ending in a mute are **cor**, **caput**, **lac**, *milk*; and Greek words like **poēma** (-tis), *poem*. In these, the nominative singular is the stem without the final consonant.

## 59.

## VOCABULARY

- aeger**, *ra, rum*, *sick*:
- altus**, *a, um*, *high, tall, deep*.
- Britannia**, *ae, f.*, *Britain*.
- cōfirmō**, *I establish*.
- dīmicō**, *I contend*.
- eques**, *itis, m.*, *horseman; pl., cavalry*.
- Gallia**, *ae, f.*, *Gaul*.
- Hibernia**, *ae, f.*, *Ireland*.
- imperō**, *I demand*.

*laetus, a, um, glad, delightful.*

*numerus, i, m., number.*

*obses, idis, m., hostage.*

*pax, pacis, f., peace.*

*virtus, tūtis, f., valor.*

### EXERCISES

60. 1. *Britannia est pulchra et Gallia laeta.* 2. *Virtus multorum equitum.* 3. *Clara virtute, clarae virtutis, claram virtutem.* 4. *Rēgēs Rōmānī, rēgēs Rōmānōs, rēgī Rōmānō.* 5. *Audacia militum Rōmānōrum.* 6. *Magnus numerus obsidum Gallōrum.* 7. *Rōmānī rēgēs Gallōrum vocant.* 8. *Regina Britanniae multōs obsides imperat.* 9. *Milites Rōmānī castra Gallōrum oppugnant.* 10. *Insula pulchra et parva est Hibernia.* 11. *Multi rēgēs potentiam amant.* 12. *Rex equitēs laudat.* 13. *Rex Britanniae magnum numerum obsidum imperat.*

61. 1. The great daring of the cavalry. 2. Of peace, to peace, by peace, hostages. 3. Of hostages, from hostages, heads. 4. The horseman is tall and large. 5. You praise the valor and daring of the sailors. 6. The soldiers demand justice. 7. Ireland is a beautiful island, and Britain is a large country. 8. The kings of the lands are establishing peace.

## Lesson 9

### THIRD DECLENSION, Continued

#### Liquid-Stems .

62. Liquid-Stems usually end in **-r**; a few end in **-l**. *cōnsul*, m., *consul*; stem, *cōsul-*. *victor*, m., *victor*; stem, *victor*.

	Singular		Case-endings.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>cōnsul</b>	<b>victor</b>	wanting
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>cōnsulīs</b>	<b>victōris</b>	<b>-is</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>cōnsulī</b>	<b>victōri</b>	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>cōsulem</b>	<b>victōrem</b>	<b>-em</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>cōsule</b>	<b>victore</b>	<b>-e</b>
	Plural		Case-endings.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>cōsulēs</b>	<b>victōrēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>cōsulum</b>	<b>victōrum</b>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>cōsulib⁹s</b>	<b>victōrib⁹s</b>	<b>-ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>cōsulēs</b>	<b>victōrēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>cōsulib⁹s</b>	<b>victōrib⁹s</b>	<b>-ibus</b>

**flōs**, m., *flower*; stem, **flōr-**.   **pater**, m., *father*; stem, **patr-**.

	Singular	Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>flōs</b>	pater
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>flōris</b>	patris
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>flōri</b>	patrī
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>flōrem</b>	patrem
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>flōre</b>	patre
	Plural	Case-endings.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>flōrēs</b>	patrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>flōrum</b>	patrum
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>flōribus</b>	patribus
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>flōrēs</b>	patrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>flōribus</b>	patribus

Most masculine and feminine nouns and many neuters, with stems ending in a liquid, form the nominative without the case-ending; as, **cōnsul**; **mulier**, *woman*; **cadāver**, *dead body*.

Many r-stems ended originally in s, hence the nominative **flōs**; **mōs**, *custom*; **aes**, *copper*. In such words the stem readily ends in -s, but s between two vowels regularly became r. Thus, **mōs** (gen. **mōris**); **aes** (gen. **aeris**).

### 63. RULE OF SYNTAX

Place where must always be expressed by the ablative with the preposition in. Thus **in castrīs**, *in the camp*.

### 64. VOCABULARY

**agger**, eris, m., *embankment, rampart*.

**arbor**, oris, f., *tree*.

**Caesar**, aris, m., *Caesar*.

**cōsul**, is, m., *consul*.

**dominus**, i, m., *lord, ruler*.

**glōria**, ae, f., *glory*.

**in**, in, on, prep. with abl.

**pater**, tris, m., *father*.

**poēta**, ae, m., *poet*.

**Rhēnus**, i, m., *the Rhine*.

**socius**, i (ii), m., *comrade, ally, companion*.

**timor**, ūris, m., *fear*.

## EXERCISES

**65.** 1. Flōres patris, cōsules Rōmānī. 2. Agger altus, timōribus magnis. 3. Filii patris, filiae patrum, patribus bonis. 4. Arborēs silvae, timōres mīlitum, timōre magnō. 5. Arborēs silvae sunt altae. 6. Cōsules magnās cōpiās parant. 7. Rhēnus est longus et altus. 8. Timōres sociōrum sunt multae et magnae. 9. Poeta Rōmānus arborēs et flōres silvae laudat. 10. Fabulae et arma et proelia mīlitum laudant. 11. Equites Caesaris sunt multi et boni. 12. Lēgati magnās cōpiās et multa iūmenta parant. 13. In altō Rhēnō est parva īnsula. 14. In parvā īnsula sunt multae pulchrae arbores.

**66.** 1. Of a sick father, in the trees of the forest. 2. By the fears of the allies, the fathers of the consuls. 3. On a high rampart, to Caesar's consuls. 4. The Roman consuls praise the virtue of the soldiers. 5. The trees in the forest are high. 6. Galba, the Roman lieutenant, praises the glory of peace. 7. The soldiers on the ramparts are contending. 8. The ruler of the Belgians is an ally of the Roman people. 9. The fear of Caesar is great. 10. The Roman cavalry harass the Gauls.

## Lesson 10

## THIRD DECLENSION, Continued

**67. Liquid-Stems, continued. Neuter nouns.**

**genus**, n., *race*; stem, **gener-**. **corpus**, n., *body*, stem, **corpor-**.

	Singular	Case-endings.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>genus</b>	<b>corpus</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>generis</b>	<b>corporis</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>generī</b>	<b>corporī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>genus</b>	<b>corpus</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>genere</b>	<b>corpore</b>
		wanting
		<b>-is</b>
		<b>-ī</b>
		wanting
		<b>-e</b>
	Plural	Case-endings.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>genera</b>	<b>corpora</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>generum</b>	<b>corporum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>generibus</b>	<b>corporibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>genera</b>	<b>corpora</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>generibus</b>	<b>corporibus</b>
		<b>-a</b>
		<b>-um</b>
		<b>-ibus</b>
		<b>-a</b>
		<b>-ibus</b>

## 68.

## Nasal-Stems

Nouns of this class end in **-n**, which often disappears in the nominative singular.

**leō**, m., *lion*; stem, **leōn-**.   **virgō**, f., *maiden*, stem, **virgin-**.

	Singular	Case-endings.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>leō</b>	<b>virgō</b> wanting
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>leōnis</b>	<b>virginis</b> -is
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>leōni</b>	<b>virginī</b> -i
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>leōnem</b>	<b>virginem</b> -em
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>leōne</b>	<b>virgine</b> -e
	Plural	Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>leōnēs</b>	<b>virginēs</b> -ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>leōnum</b>	<b>virginum</b> -um
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>leōnibus</b>	<b>virginibus</b> -ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>leōnēs</b>	<b>virginēs</b> -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>leōnibus</b>	<b>virginibus</b> -ibus

**flūmen**, n., *river*; stem **flūmin-**

	Singular	Case-endings	Plural	Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>flūmen</b>	wanting	<i>Nom.</i> <b>flūmina</b>	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>flūminis</b>	-is	<i>Gen.</i> <b>flūminum</b>	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>flūmini</b>	-i	<i>Dat.</i> <b>flūminibus</b>	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>flumen</b>	wanting	<i>Acc.</i> <b>flūmina</b>	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>flumine</b>	-e	<i>Abl.</i> <b>flūminibus</b>	-ibus

Stems in **-ōn-** have the nominative in **-ō**, as **leō**; **legiō**, *legion*.

Stems in **-din-** and **-gin-** have the nominative in **-ō**, as **virgō**; **ordō**, *rank*.

Stems in **-in-** (not **-din-** or **-gin-**) have the nominative in **-en**, as **flumen**, **tibicen**, *flute-player*.

There is only one stem in **-m**, **hiems** (*gen. hiemis*), f., *winter*.

## 69.

## RULES OF SYNTAX

1. The ablative, with or without **cum**, is used to denote the manner in which an act is performed.
2. **Cum** is usually used with a noun which has no adjective modifying it. **Cum cūrā labōrant**, *they work with care*. **magnā virtūte pugnant**, *they fight with great valor*.

## 70.

## VOCABULARY

**aut**, conj., or. **aut...aut**, either...or.  
**cum**, prep. with abl., with.  
**dēditiō**, ūnis, f., surrender.  
**dolor**, ūris, m., grief.  
**nōmen**, inis, n., name.  
**flūmen**, inis, n., river.  
**genus**, eris, n., race, kind.  
**latrō**, ūnis, m., robber, highway-man.  
**sōl**, is, m., sun.  
**soror**, ūris, f., sister.  
**uxor**, ūris, f., wife, consort.  
**vituperō**, I blame.

## EXERCISES

**71.** 1. Aut soror aut uxor. 2. Cum dolore, magna virtute. 3. Magna flūmina, multōrum flūminum, multis flūminibus. 4. Nōmina arborum, dēditione, sōle, magnus dolor uxoris. 5. Potentia cum iustitia est bona. 6. Nōmen flūminis est Rhēnus. 7. Nautae cum virtute dīmicant. 8. Mīlitēs magnō periculō castra Gallōrum oppugnant. 9. Rēx dolorem et timorem equitum vituperat. 10. Latrōnes sunt in lata silvā. 11. Deditioñem vīcōrum dominus imperat. 12. Puella aut mīlitis aut nautae est soror. 13. Dolor patris puerōrum est magnus. 14. Galba, cōsul Rōmānus, in aggere cum audacia dīmicat.

**72.** 1. Of grief, with fear, of rivers. 2. Races, griefs, by names. 3. Either of the sister or of the wife. 4. The grief of the soldier's sister is great. 5. We blame either the Gallic soldiers or Roman cavalry. 6. The Germans attack the rampart of the Roman camp. 7. You blame the rulers of the countries. 8. In the small islands are many beautiful trees. 9. The name of the long river is the Rhine.

## REVIEW

**73.** 1. Agricolae insularum, puellas nautarum, poētis. 2. Insulae silvas vāstant. 3. Germāni auxilium implōrant. 4. Et agrōs et oppida Eurōpae vāstant. 5. Galli, amici Belgārum, frūmentum incolarum vāstant. 6. Iūmenta Gallōrum sunt parva. 7. Populi liberī sunt populi beati. 8. Regēs magnum numerum equitum laudant. 9. In parvā insula sunt multae flōres et arborēs. 10. Nautae magnā virtute castra Gallōrum oppugnant.

## Lesson 11

### THIRD DECLENSION, Continued

#### 74. (I-) stems, Masculine and Feminine

Masculine and Feminine I-stems end in **-is** in the nominative singular, and always have **-ium** in the genitive plural. They have **-īs** or **-ēs** in the accusative plural, and a few, like **turris**, have **-im** in the accusative singular, and **-ī** in the ablative singular.

**hostis**, m., *enemy*; stem, **hosti**. **auris**, f., *ear*.

	Singular		Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>hostis</b>	<b>auris</b>	<b>-is</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>hostis</b>	<b>auris</b>	<b>-is</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>hostī</b>	<b>aurī</b>	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>hostem</b>	<b>aurem</b>	<b>-em</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>hoste</b>	<b>aure</b>	<b>-e</b>
	Plural		Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>hostēs</b>	<b>aurēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>hostium</b>	<b>aurium</b>	<b>-ium<sup>1</sup></b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>hostibus</b>	<b>auribus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>hostīs (-ēs)</b>	<b>aurīs (-ēs)</b>	<b>-īs, -ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>hostibus</b>	<b>auribus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>

### Neuter

75. Nouns of this class end in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar** in the nominative singular. They always have **-e** in the ablative singular, **-ia** in the nominative, accusative and vocative plural, and **-ium** in the genitive plural. Most of these words lose the final **-i** of the stem in the nominative singular; others retain it as **-e**.

**mare**, n., *sea*; stem, **mari-**. **animal**, n., *animal*; stem, **animali-**.

	Singular		Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>mare</b>	<b>animal</b>	wanting
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>maris</b>	<b>animālis</b>	<b>-is</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>marī</b>	<b>animalī</b>	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>mare</b>	<b>animal</b>	wanting
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>marī</b>	<b>animālī</b>	<b>-ī</b>

<sup>1</sup> Strictly speaking **i**-stem nouns are declined just as other nouns of the Third Declension. The **i** of the endings **-ium** (genitive plural) and **-ia** (nom. and acc. neuter plural) do not properly belong to the ending but to the stem.

	Plural		Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>maria</b>	<b>animālia</b>	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>marium</b>	<b>animālium</b>	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>maribus</b>	<b>animālibus</b>	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>maria</b>	<b>animālia</b>	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>maribus</b>	<b>animālibus</b>	-ibus

In most words of this class the final **-i** of the stem disappears in the nominative singular. In others it appears as **-e**.

### RULES OF SYNTAX

76. The Dative is used with verbs to denote the Indirect Object.  
**haec Galbae nuntiant**, *they announce these things to Galba.*
77. The ablative is used to denote the means by which anything is accomplished.  
**Gladiis pugnant**, *they fight with swords.*

### 78. VOCABULARY

- animal, ālis**, n., *animal.*
- auris, is**, f., *ear.*
- collis, is**, m., *hill.*
- dōnō**, *give, present.*
- dux, ducis**, m., *leader.*
- hostis, is**, m., *enemy.*
- mare, is**, n., *sea.*
- māter, tris**, f., *mother.*
- nāvis, is**, f., *ship.*
- occupō**, *I take possession of, occupy.*
- sedile, is**, n., *seat.*

### EXERCISES

79. 1. Aures, auris. 2. Collium, colle. 3. Animalia, animali. 4. Multis animalibus, maria alta. 5. Galbae flōres dōnō. 6. Animalia in mari altō sunt multa. 7. Hostes magna audacia colles occupant. 8. Nautae Rōmāni gladiis nāvēs hostium occupant. 9. In sedili legati sunt multae flōres. 10. Hostibus multum aurum dōnamus. 11. In aggeribus armis dīmicant. 12. Multi reges pācem nōn cōnfīrmant. 13. Cōpia flōrum et multa animalia sunt in insula parvā. 14. Ubi sunt sōci Rōmānōrum? 15. Caesar hostes multis proelis superat.

80. 1. Animals, to an animal, in the sea. 2. Gifts of gold, mothers of soldiers, in the seats. 3. The ears of the animal, the sailors of the ships,

the cavalry of the enemy. 4. The enemy are taking possession of many lands. 5. On the high mound many soldiers are fighting with weapons. 6. You are giving the woman money. 7. Great fear takes possession of the minds of the Romans. 8. Caesar by means of gold establishes peace with many lands. 9. There are large animals on the small island.

## Lesson 12

### THIRD DECLENSION, Continued

#### Mixed ī-stems.

**81.** Mixed ī-stems are consonant-stems which have assumed ī forms in the plural. Thus they are declined like consonant-stems in the singular, like ī-stems in the plural.

**urbs**, f., *city*; stem, **urb** (i-). **cliēns**, m., *client*; stem **client** (i-).

	Singular		Plural	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>urbs</b>	<b>cliēns</b>	<i>Nom.</i>	<b>urbēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>urbis</b>	<b>clientis</b>	<i>Gen.</i>	<b>urbium</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>urbī</b>	<b>clientī</b>	<i>Dat.</i>	<b>urbibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>urbem</b>	<b>clientem</b>	<i>Acc.</i>	<b>urbis (-ēs)</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>urbe</b>	<b>cliente</b>	<i>Abl.</i>	<b>urbibus</b>

This class includes:

- (a) Nouns in -ēs, with genitive in -is; as **nūbēs**, *cloud*; **aedēs**, *temple*, etc.
- (b) Monosyllables in -s or -x preceded by a consonant; as **ars**, *skill*; **ark**, *citadel*, etc.
- (c) Most nouns in -ns and -rs; as **cliēns**; **cohors**, *cohort*.
- (d) Nouns in -ās or -īs; as **civitās**, *state*; **lis**, *strife*.

### 82. VOCABULARY

- caedēs**, is, f., *slaughter*.
- cīvitās**, tātis, f., *state*.
- cliēns**, clientis, m., *client*.
- gladius**, ī (ii), m., *sword*.
- liberī**, ūrum, m. pl., *children* (i. e. *free born*).
- mens**, mentis, f., *mind*.
- mōns**, montis, m., *mountain*.
- pars**, partis, f., *part*.
- paucī**, ae, a, *few*, used only in pl.
- turris**, is, f., *tower*.
- urbs**, urbis, f., *city*.

### EXERCISES

**83.** 1. Civitates Gallorum, caedes animalium. 2. In montibus altis, gladiis magnis, cum multis clientibus. 3. Timores multi mentes militum occupant. 4. Paucae civitates iumenta parant. 5. Hostes magna virtute altos montes oppugnant. 6. Civitates Germannorum pacem implorant. 7. Urbes Romanorum sunt et magnae at pulchrae. 8. In turribus sunt multi milites. 9. Liberi Galbae sunt in monte alto. 10. Pars civitatis pacem non amat. 11. Caedes hostium est magna. 12. Belgae cum virtute gladiis dimicant. 13. Liberi clientis sunt in silva. 14. Caedes feminarum et liberorum in bello non est bonum.<sup>1</sup> 15. Pauca animalia sunt in silva parva. 16. In sedibus sunt gladii regum.

**84.** 1. In the tower, in the city, in the sea. 2. The kings of the states, the camp of the enemy, the forests of the mountain. 3. With great daring they take possession of the mountain. 4. The cavalry of the Germans contend with the Roman soldiers. 5. The rulers give swords to the lieutenants. 6. The children of the client like flowers. 7. In the forests of the mountains are many beautiful flowers. 8. There are eagles in the trees of the high mountains.

### Lesson 13

#### GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

**85.** The following rules may be taken as general guides in determining the gender of nouns in the Third Declension.

1. Nouns in **-er**, **-es**, **-ēs**, **-ex** (gen. **-icis**), **-ō** (gen. **-ōnis**), **-or**, and **-ōs** are masculine.

2. Nouns in **-ās**, **-is**, **-ō** (gen. **-inis**), **-iō**, **-s** (preceded by a consonant), **-ūs**, and **-x** are feminine.

3. Nouns in **-c**, **-e**, **-l**, **-n**, **-t**, **-ar**, **-ur**, and **-ūs** are neuter.

There are many exceptions, however, to the foregoing rules.

#### RULE OF SYNTAX

**86.** The Ablative is used to express Cause, sometimes accompanied by a preposition . . . **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**.

**Veneris praeidiō ferox**, bold because of the protection of Venus.

**ex vulnere aeger**, disabled by a wound.

<sup>1</sup> The neuter of an adjective is often used as a substantive. Translate "a good thing."

## 87.

## VOCABULARY

- antīquus, a, um, old, ancient.*  
*iūvenis, is, m., young man.*  
*mōs, mōris, m., custom; plur., manners.*  
*nūntiō, I announce.*  
*postulō, I demand.*  
*secrētum, i, n., secret, mystery.*  
*semper, adv., always, ever:*  
*vultur, vulturis, m., vulture.*

## EXERCISES

**88.** 1. *Iuvenis boni, iuvenum bonōrum, iuventi bonō.* 2. *Magna secrēta, magni sedīlis, in magnō sedīlī.* 3. *Antiqui mōrēs, antiquos mōrēs, antiquis mōribus.* 4. *In pulchra turri, arbores altae, in magnō mari.* 5. *Iuvenēs secrēta Galbae nūntiant.* 6. *Mōrēs antiqui semper sunt boni.* 7. *Vultures et aquilae sunt in altis montibus.* 8. *Rēx hostib⁹ aurum ex timōre dōnat.* 9. *Multa genera arbōrum pulchrarūm sunt in silvā.* 10. *Nūntiū magnum proelium et deditiōnem hostium nūntiant.* 11. *Hostes ferōces victoriā dōna auri postulant.* 12. *Galbae, legatō Rōmānō, secrēta hostium nūntiō.* 13. *Mōrēs Rōmānōrum laudatīs.* 14. *Rōmāni et socii cum principib⁹ hostium pācem cōfirmant.* 15. *Militēs magna audaciā aggerem et altas turris oppugnant.*

**89.** 1. To the good young men; of the good young man; of the deep rivers. 2. The name of the deep river; the secret of the high tower; the customs of the Romans. 3. The vultures in the trees; many kinds of animals; fear of the enemy. 4. He announces the secret of the high tower. 5. Because of fear he gave the enemy presents of gold. 6. Because of the power of the Romans the enemy makes peace. 7. The troops are happy, and like the dangers of war. 8. The allies of the Romans fight with valor.

## Lesson 14

## FOURTH DECLENSION (-u-) STEMS

**90.** Masculines and feminines form the nominative by adding *s* to the stem. Neuters have the stem with the vowel lengthened for the nominative.

**fructus**, m., *fruit*; stem, **fructu**.

Singular	Case-endings	Plural	Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i> fructus	-us	<i>Nom.</i> fructūs	-ūs
<i>Gen.</i> fructūs	-ūs	<i>Gen.</i> fructuum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i> fructui (ū)	-ūi (ū)	<i>Dat.</i> fructibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i> fructum	-um	<i>Acc.</i> fructūs	-ūs
<i>Abl.</i> fructū	-ū	<i>Abl.</i> fructibus	-ibus

**cornū**, n., *horn*; stem, **cornū-**

Singular	Case-endings	Plural	Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i> cornū	-ū	<i>Nom.</i> cornua	-ua
<i>Gen.</i> cornūs	-ūs	<i>Gen.</i> cornuum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i> cornū	-ū	<i>Dat.</i> cornibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i> cornū	-ū	<i>Acc.</i> cornua	-ua
<i>Abl.</i> cornū	-ū	<i>Abl.</i> cornibus	-ibus

The stem-vowel is usually weakened to *i* before the ending **-bus**.

Nouns of the fourth declension in **-us** are usually masculine. Those ending in **-ū** are neuter.

A few of the commonest nouns in **-us** which are feminine are **anus**, *old woman*; **domus**, *house*; **manus**, *hand*; **socrus**, *mother-in-law*.

## 91.

### VOCABULARY

**collocō**, *I place, arrange, station.*

**cornū, ūs**, n., *horn; wing* (of an army).

**dē**, *concerning*, prep. with abl.

**dexter, tra, trum, right.**

**dubitō**, *I doubt, am in doubt.*

**equitātus, ūs**, m., *cavalry.*

**legiō, ūnis**, f., *legion.*

**manus, ūs**, f., *hand, band, force* (of troops).

**peditātus, ūs**, m., *infantry.*

**portus, ūs**, m., *harbor.*

**quercus, ūs**, f., *oak.*

**reliquus, a, um, remaining.**

**senātus, ūs**, m., *senate.*

### EXERCISES

92. 1. Manūs, manū, manibus. 2. Cornū, cornus, cornuum. 3. Fructum, portui, portuum. 4. Senātus Romānus, cornūs, fructū. 5. Caesar cum reliquis legiōnibus oppidum oppugnat. 6. Timor mentes

reliquorum militum occupat. 7. De militibus sociorum dubitatis. 8. Equitatum in cornibus collocō. 9. Fractus arborum in parvā insula sunt boni. 10. In dextrō cornū peditatum collocatis. 11. Milites senatum Rōmānum accusant. 12. Caesar de virtute legiōnum Rōmānum nōn dubitat. 13. Nāves in portū nōn sunt Rōmānae. 14. Aliae querunt et multi vultures sunt in montibus. 15. Caesar multa secreta senātū nāntiat. 16. Caedes legiōnum in Britannia est magna. 17. Rēgēs populōrum Eurōpae accusāmus.

**93.** 1. Of the harbor, to the senate, concerning the fruits. 2. The bands, in the harbors, the wings. 3. The horns, of the horns, in the senate. 4. Caesar is in doubt about the courage of the legions. 5. Because of the victory the soldiers are demanding gifts of gold. 6. In the harbor is a small island. 7. On the island are many oaks and beautiful flowers. 8. The Roman senate is arranging a peace with the enemy. 9. He places the remaining legions on the right wing.

## Lesson 15

### FIFTH DECLENSION (-ē-) STEMS

**94.** The nominative is formed by adding *s* to the stem.

*diēs*, m., *day*; stem, *diē-*. *rēs*, f., *thing*; stem, *rē-*.

	Singular	Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>diēī</i>	<i>-ēī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>diēī</i>	<i>-ēī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>-em</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>-ē</i>
	Plural	Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>-ērum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>

The genitive and dative singular ending is *-ēī*, instead of *-ēī*, when a consonant precedes; as *spēī*, *rēī*.

*Diēs* and *rēs* are the only nouns of the fifth declension which are declined throughout. Except for the nominative and accusative, the plural forms of other nouns are rare.

All nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except **diēs**, and **meridiēs**, *midday*, which are masculine. Even **diēs** is sometimes feminine in the singular.

## 95.

## VOCABULARY

- aciēs**, *ēi*, f., *line of battle*.
- diēs**, *diēi*, m., *day*.
- exercitus**, *ūs*, m., *army*.
- fidēs**, *ēi*, f., *fidelity, loyalty*.
- homo**, *inīs*, m., *man*.
- perniciēs**, *ēi*, f., *destruction, ruin*.
- rēs**, *rēi*, f., *thing*.
- spēs**, *spēi*, f., *hope*.

## EXERCISES

96. 1. Fidet, fidem, de fidē. 2. Aciērum, in aciē, aciēbus. 3. Spē victoriae, spēbus auxili, de multis rēbus. 4. Multarum rērum, dē magna rē, spei. 5. Legātus Rōmānus dē fidē Gallorūm dubitat. 6. Turrē magna spē victoriae oppugnant. 7. Caesar equites in cornibus collocat et cum hostibus dīmicant. 8. In aciē Rōmānā sunt multi socii. 9. Belgae cum parvā manū exercitum hostium oppugnant. 10. Socii Rōmānis multa dē hostibus nūntiant. 11. Caedes hostium est magna. 12. Spē senātū et populi est in virtute militum. 13. Galli magna audāciā cum legiōnibus Rōmānis dīmicant. 14. In portū sunt multae nāves. 15. Hostes victoriā multos obsides imperant.

97. 1. In the lines of battle, hope of victory, destruction of the army. 2. Day of hope, by the destruction, for the day. 3. We are in doubt concerning the loyalty of the lieutenant. 4. They announce many things about the war. 5. Because of many great battles, fear possesses the minds of the soldiers. 6. The fidelity of the allies of the Romans is not great. 7. The remaining soldiers like the dangers of war. 8. The general's hopes for victory are small.

## Lesson 16

## NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

98. Nine adjectives in **-us** or **-er** have the genitive and dative singular of all genders in **-ius** and **-i** respectively.

These adjectives are,

- alius** (*neuter aliud*), *other; nūllus, no; sōlus, only;*
- alter, the other; ullus, any; tōtus, whole;*
- neuter, neither; unus, one; uter, which (of two).*

They are declined as follows:

Singular

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
Gen.	<sup>1</sup> alius	alius	alius	alterius	alterius	alterius
Dat.	aliī	alii	aliū	alterī	alterī	alterī
Acc.	aliūm	aliām	aliud	alterūm	alteram	alterum
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

The plural is regular, like *bonus*.

Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	uter	utra	utrum
Gen.	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	utrius	utrius	utrius
Dat.	ūni	ūni	ūni	utri	utri	utri
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	utrum	utram	utrum
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	utro	utrā	utro

The plural is regular, like *bonus*.

## 99. VOCABULARY

**aedificium, i.**, n., *building*.

**amor, ōris**, m., *love*.

**bestia, ae**, f., *animal, beast*.

**corōna, ae**, f., *wreath, crown*.

**firmō**, *I make firm*.

**furor, ōris**, m., *rage, fury*.

**inimicus, i.**, *an enemy* (*personal enemy* as opposed to **hostis**, *a public enemy*).

**narrō**, *I relate, tell*.

**pariēs, etis**, m., *wall*.

**saepe**, adv., *often, frequently*.

**sine**, *without*, prep., with abl.

**terror, ōris**, m., *terror, alarm*.

## EXERCISES

- 100.** 1. Aliud aedificium, alterius amōris, aliis amor. 2. Tōtius corōnae, tōti parieti, nullus furor. 3. Nullae bestiae, nullus bestiae, utrōrum parietum. 4. Únum aedificium, aliis pariēs, neutrīs corōnis. 5. Rēges tōtius Galliae dīmicant. 6. Altera corōna est pulchra. 7. Magnō terrore alterum oppidum oppugnant. 8. Milites altus legiōnis nōn laudamus. 9. Populus Rōmānus dē fidē fūntus rēgis dubitat. 10.

---

<sup>1</sup> The form **alterius** is usually used in place of **alius**.

Spes victoriae milites et aliōs firmat. 11. Galba multas alias fabulas de bestiis narrat. 12. Saepe in castris est magnus terror. 13. Aliōs equites in cornū collocat. 14. Sine ullō timore alteram turrim oppugnat.

**101.** 1. Of the whole building; other crowns; no terror. 2. Of another wall; the other animal; another crown. 3. Of neither enemy (personal); in one battle; of the other alarm. 4. The senate and the Roman people are in doubt about the loyalty of the soldiers. 5. One wall of the building is high. 6. The soldiers avoid the dangers of another battle. 7. Neither king likes the country and the people. 8. The lieutenant is telling the other story about the surrender.

## Lesson 17

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

**102.** These adjectives are classified according to the number of endings in the nominative singular, as adjectives of one, two or three endings.

With the exception of comparatives and a few other words all follow the inflection of Y-stem. They have -i in the ablative singular, ium in the genitive plural, -is or -ēs in the accusative plural masculine and feminine, and -ia in the nominative and accusative plural neuter.

#### 103. Adjectives of One Ending.

*Audāx, bold; stem, audac-. recēns, recent; stem, recent-.*

##### Singular

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>audax</b>	<b>audāx</b>	<b>recēns</b>	<b>recēns</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>audācis</b>	<b>audācīs</b>	<b>recentis</b>	<b>recentis</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>audācī</b>	<b>audācī</b>	<b>recenti</b>	<b>recenti</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>audācem</b>	<b>audāx</b>	<b>recentem</b>	<b>recēns</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>audācī</b>	<b>audācī</b>	<b>recentī</b>	<b>recenti</b>

##### Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>audācēs</b>	<b>audācia</b>	<b>recentēs</b>	<b>recentia</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>audācium</b>	<b>audācīum</b>	<b>recentium</b>	<b>recentīum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>audācībus</b>	<b>audācībus</b>	<b>recentībus</b>	<b>recentībus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>audācīs (-ēs)</b>	<b>audācia</b>	<b>recentīs (-ēs)</b>	<b>recentia</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>audācībus</b>	<b>audācībus</b>	<b>recentībus</b>	<b>recentībus</b>

**pār**, *equal*; stem, **par-**. **vetus**, *old*; stem, **veter-**.

Singular

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>pār</b>	<b>pār</b>	<b>vetus</b>	<b>vetus</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>paris</b>	<b>paris</b>	<b>veteris</b>	<b>veteris</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>parī</b>	<b>parī</b>	<b>veterī</b>	<b>veterī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>parem</b>	<b>par</b>	<b>veterem</b>	<b>vetus</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>parī</b>	<b>parī</b>	<b>vetere</b>	<b>vetere</b>

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>parēs</b>	<b>paria</b>	<b>veterēs</b>	<b>vetera</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>parium</b>	<b>parium</b>	<b>veterum</b>	<b>veterum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>paribus</b>	<b>paribus</b>	<b>veteribus</b>	<b>veteribus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>parīs (-ēs)</b>	<b>paria</b>	<b>veterēs</b>	<b>vetera</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>paribus</b>	<b>paribus</b>	<b>veteribus</b>	<b>veteribus</b>

Comparatives and **vetus** are declined as pure consonant-stems.

## 104. VOCABULARY

**aditus, ūs**, m., *approach*.

**adulēscēns, entis**, m., *young man*.

**audax, audācis**, *bold, daring*.

**clēmens, ntis**, *mild, gentle*.

**cohors, rtis**, f., *cohort*.

**concilium, ī**, n., *council*.

**dēlectō**, *I delight*.

**dēlibērō**, *I deliberate, consult*.

**ferax, ferācis**, *fertile*.

**Haedui, ḫrum**, m. pl. *Haedui, a Gallic tribe*.

**prīnceps, cipis**, m., *chief*.

**tribūnus, ī**, m., *tribune*.

## EXERCISES

105. 1. Alius aditus, nūlli adulēscētes, ḫlla cohors. 2. Audacis adulēscētis, ferāces agrī, prīncipum clēmentium. 3. Alīf cohortī, aliae cohortēs, nūllōs prīncipes. 4. Audacēs prīncipes Haeduōrum dēliberant. 5. Ager ferax agricolam dēlectat. 6. Senātus Rōmānus concilium prīncipum Haeduōrum nōn amat. 7. Tribūnus de fide ducum Gallōrum dubitat. 8. Mīlites audacēs ducēs semper dēlectant. 9. Equitēs sine timōre terram ferācem Belgārum vexant. 10. Alteram cohortēm in acīe collocāmus. 11. Nūllōs mīlites alterius legiōnis laudātis. 12. Dux Rōmānōrum est clēmens et audax. 13. Flōrēs agrōrum ferācium sunt pulchrae. 14. Adulēscētes de perničiē recenti exercitus narrant.

**106.** 1. No approach; daring chiefs; of the whole council. 2. The old tribunes; to another cohort; on the other hill. 3. From equal legions; of gentle tribunes; by bold battles. 4. The fertile fields delight the farmers. 5. The Roman leaders and the Gallic chiefs are deliberating. 6. The soldiers are bold because of hope of victory. 7. Daring men do not avoid the dangers of battle. 8. The wreaths of flowers delight the farmer's daughters. 9. The beasts of the forest attack men with fury.

## Lesson 18

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION, Continued

#### 107. Adjectives of Two Endings.

*levis, light; stem, levi. levior, lighter; stem, levior-*

		Singular			
		M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>levis</b>		<b>leve</b>	<b>levior</b>	<b>levius</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>levis</b>		<b>levis</b>	<b>leviōris</b>	<b>leviōris</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>levī</b>		<b>levī</b>	<b>leviōri</b>	<b>leviōri</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>levem</b>		<b>leve</b>	<b>leviōrem</b>	<b>levius</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>levī</b>		<b>levī</b>	<b>leviōre</b>	<b>leviōre</b>
		Plural			
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>levēs</b>		<b>levia</b>	<b>leviōres</b>	<b>leviōra</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>levium</b>		<b>levium</b>	<b>leviōrum</b>	<b>leviōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>levibus</b>		<b>levibus</b>	<b>leviōribus</b>	<b>leviōribus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>levīs (-ēs)</b>		<b>levia</b>	<b>leviōres</b>	<b>leviōra</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>levibus</b>		<b>levibus</b>	<b>leviōribus</b>	<b>leviōribus</b>

**Levior** is the comparative of **levis**. All comparatives are regularly declined like **levior**.

**Plus, more**, is used in the singular only as a neuter noun. It is declined as follows:

		Singular				Plural	
		M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	—		<b>plūs</b>	<b>plūrēs</b>		<b>plūra</b>	
<i>Gen.</i>	—		<b>plūris</b>	<b>plūrium</b>		<b>plūriūm</b>	
<i>Dat.</i>	—		—	<b>plūribus</b>		<b>plūribus</b>	
<i>Acc.</i>	—		<b>plūs</b>	<b>plūres (-īs)</b>		<b>plūra</b>	
<i>Abl.</i>	—		—	<b>plūribus</b>		<b>plūribus</b>	

## 108. Adjectives of Three Endings.

**ācer**, *sharp*; stem, **ācri-**.

	Singular		
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>ācer</b>	<b>ācris</b>	<b>ācre</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>ācris</b>	<b>ācris</b>	<b>ācris</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>ācri</b>	<b>ācri</b>	<b>ācri</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>ācrem</b>	<b>ācrem</b>	<b>ācre</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>ācri</b>	<b>ācri</b>	<b>ācri</b>
	Plural		
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>ācrēs</b>	<b>ācrēs</b>	<b>ācria</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>ācrium</b>	<b>ācrium</b>	<b>ācrium</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>ācribus</b>	<b>ācribus</b>	<b>ācribus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>ācris (ēs)</b>	<b>ācris (-ēs)</b>	<b>ācria</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>ācribus</b>	<b>ācribus</b>	<b>ācribus</b>

**Celer**, *swift*, has the nominative singular **celer**, **celeris**, **celere**, the second e being a part of the stem.

## 109. VOCABULARY

**celer**, *eris*, *ere*, *swift*.

**commūnis**, *e*, *common*.

**complūrēs**, *ra*, gen. *ium*, *very many*.

**coniurō**, *I conspire*.

**crūdēlis**, *e*, *cruel*.

**difficilis**, *e*, *difficult*.

**equester**, *tris*, *tre*, *equestrian*, *cavalry* (adjective).

**fortis**, *e*, *brave*, *courageous*.

**incolumis**, *e*, *unharmed*.

**nāvālis**, *e*, *naval*.

**nōbilis**, *e*, *noble*.

**omnis**, *e*, *all*, *every*.

**Venetī**, **ōrum**, m. pl., *Veneti*, *a Gallic tribe*.

## EXERCISES

110. 1. *Celerium equōrum*, in omnibus agrīs, nōbiles principes. 2. *Complūribus Venetīs*, *equestrī proeliō*, *proelia nāvālia*. 3. *Concilia commūnia*, *conciliis commūnibus*, *militi crūdelt*. 4. *Fēminaē et liberī* sunt *incolumēs*. 5. *Cum militib⁹ celeribus collem oppugnat*. 6. *Fortēs hominēs pericula proeli nōn vitant*. 7. *Lēgati Rōmāni* sunt adulēscētes fortēs et nōbiles. 8. *Complūrēs Venetī* sine timōre coniurant. 9.

Rōmāni et socii in conciliō commūni dēliberant. 10. Tribāni proeliis  
navalibus hostēs superant. 11. Nūntii celerēs populō dē periculis com-  
munibūs nuntiant. 12. Hostēs proeliō equestri superat. 13. Omnēs  
aditūs sunt difficiles. 14. Complūtres prīncipes auxilium Caesaris implō-  
rant. 15. Fēmina nōbilis est clēmens et fortis.

**111.** 1. Swift messengers; in fertile fields; by cavalry battles. 2.  
To courageous women; of very many young men; a naval battle. 3.  
From noble chiefs; of a cruel soldier; from a noble girl. 4. The Roman  
people are deliberating in common council. 5. The daring young men  
are unharmed. 6. The messenger announces the destruction of the noble  
army. 7. Both the Haedui and the Veneti are conspiring. 8. You are  
praising the soldiers and tribunes of the other legion.

## REVIEW

112. The regular case-endings for the nouns and adjectives of the various declensions are as follows:

	Decl. I	Decl. II	Decl. III	Decl. IV	Decl. V
Singular					
<i>Nom.</i>	F. -a M. -us	N. -s M.F. -um (modified stem)	N. -i -is	M. -us -ui(-ū)	N. -ū -ēs -ēi (-ē) -ēm -ē
<i>Gen.</i>	-ae	-ī	-ī	-īs	-ēs
<i>Dat.</i>	-ae	-ō	-ō	-ō	-ēi
<i>Acc.</i>	-am	-um	-em(-im) (like nom.)	-um	-ēm
<i>Abl.</i>	-ā	-ō	-ēi (like nom.)	-ō	-ē
<i>Voc.</i>	-a	-ē	-um	-us	-ēs
Plural					
<i>Nom. and Voc.</i> -ae	-ī	-ōrum	-a -um-(i)um -ibus	-a,-(i)a -īs -īs	-ūs -ērum -ēbus -ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	-ārum	-īs	-um-(i)um -ibus	-a,-(i)a -īs	-ārum -ēbus -ēs
<i>Dat. and Abl.</i>	-īs	-a	-īs	-īs	-ēbus(-ubus)
<i>Acc.</i>	-ās			-īs	-ēs

## Lesson 19

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

**113.** In Latin, as in English, adjectives have three degrees of comparison—the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

The Comparative is regularly formed by adding **-ior** (neut. **-ius**), the Superlative by adding **-issimus** (**-a**, **-um**) to the genitive singular of the Positive minus its ending.

**114.** Participles used as adjectives are compared in the same manner.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
<b>altus,</b> <i>high</i>	<b>altior</b>	<b>altissimus</b>
<b>fortis,</b> <i>brave</i>	<b>fortior</b>	<b>fortissimus</b>
<b>felix,</b> <i>happy</i>	<b>felicior</b>	<b>felicissimus</b>
<b>amāns,</b> <i>loving</i>	<b>amāntior</b>	<b>amantissimus</b>

**115.** Adjectives in **-er** form their Comparative in the regular way, but form the Superlative by adding **-rimus** to the nominative of the Positive.

<b>asper,</b> <i>rough</i>	<b>asperior</b>	<b>asperrimus</b>
<b>celer,</b> <i>swift</i>	<b>celerior</b>	<b>celerrimus</b>
<b>pulcher,</b> <i>beautiful</i>	<b>pulchrior</b>	<b>pulcherrimus</b>

**116.** Six adjectives in **-lis** form the superlative by adding **-limus** to the genitive of the Positive minus its ending. The comparative is regular.

<b>facilis,</b> <i>easy</i>	<b>facilior</b>	<b>facillimus</b>
<b>difficilis,</b> <i>difficult</i>	<b>difficiilior</b>	<b>difficillimus</b>
<b>dissimilis,</b> <i>unlike</i>	<b>dissimilior</b>	<b>dissimillimus</b>
<b>gracilis,</b> <i>slender</i>	<b>gracilior</b>	<b>gracillimus</b>
<b>humilis,</b> <i>low</i>	<b>humilior</b>	<b>humillimus</b>
<b>similis,</b> <i>like</i>	<b>similior</b>	<b>simillimus</b>

**117.** Other adjectives in **-lis** are compared regularly: as, **utilis**, *useful*, **utilior**, **utilissimus**.

### RULES OF SYNTAX

**118.** Comparison is expressed by using **quam**, *than*, or by the ablative without **quam**.

**nihil est amabilius quam virtus: nihil est virtute amabilius,**  
*nothing is more attractive than virtue.*

**119.** Superlativeness is expressed by the genitive. **asperrima viārum**, *the roughest of the roads.*

**120.****VOCABULARY**

- asper, era, erum, rough.**
- facilis, e, easy.**
- felix, felicis, fortunate, happy.**
- gracilis, e, slender.**
- humilis, e, low, humble.**
- similis, e, like.**
- ūtilis, e, useful.**
- vallis, is, f., valley.**

**EXERCISES**

**121.** 1. Flōres graciliōres, urbium pulcherrimārum, collēs asperimae. 2. In vallibus altissimis, hominum felicium, filiis simillimis. 3. Aditū difficillimō, via asperior, flumina altiōra. 4. Belgae sunt fortissimi omnium Gallōrum. 5. Viae Galliae sunt asperimae. 6. Rōma est urbs pulcherrima. 7. In exercitū Rōmānōrum milites sunt fortissimi. 8. In Italia est magnus numerus hominum felicissimōrum. 9. Filiae agricolae sunt pulchriōres. 10. Flamina Galliae nōn sunt altiōra quam flumina Italiae. 11. Filius altior est quam pater. 12. Filia est pulchrior matrē. 13. Rōma, felicissima urbs totius terrae.

**122.** 1. Humbler soldiers; of the most difficult approach; in the more beautiful valley. 2. By the rougher road; of the bravest soldiers; to the happiest legion. 3. The flowers of the woods are most beautiful. 4. The mountains of Gaul are higher than the mountains of Italy. 5. The sailor is humbler than the soldier. 6. The roads in the valley are very beautiful.

**Lesson 20****COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES, Continued**

**123.** The following adjectives vary the stem in comparison.

<b>bonus, good</b>	<b>meliōr, better</b>	<b>optimus, best</b>
<b>malus, bad</b>	<b>pēior, worse</b>	<b>pessimus, worst</b>
<b>magnus, great</b>	<b>māior, greater</b>	<b>maximus, greatest</b>
<b>parvus, small</b>	<b>minor, smaller</b>	<b>minimus, smallest</b>
<b>multus, much</b>	<b>plūs, more</b>	<b>plurimus, most</b>

**124.** The positive of the following adjectives derived from preposition have a positive only in special cases.

<i>exterus, outside</i>	<i>exterior, outer</i>	<i>extrēmus, outermost</i>
<i>inferus, below</i>	<i>inferior, lower</i>	<i>infimus, lowest</i>
<i>posterus, following</i>	<i>posterior, later</i>	<i>postrēmus, last</i> <i>postumus, late-born</i>
<i>superus, above</i>	<i>superior, higher</i>	<i>suprēmus, highest</i> <i>summus</i>

**125.** The following adjectives lack the positive entirely.

<i>citerior, on this side</i>	<i>citimus, nearest</i>
<i>dēterior, worse</i>	<i>dēterrīmus, worst</i>
<i>interior, inner</i>	<i>intimus, inmost</i>
<i>ōcior, swifter</i>	<i>ōcissimus, swiftest</i>
<i>prior, former</i>	<i>prīmus, first</i>
<i>propior, nearer</i>	<i>proximus, nearest, next</i>
<i>ulterior, farther</i>	<i>ultimus, farthest</i>

## 126. VOCABULARY

*Allobrogēs, um, m. pl., Allobroges, a Gallic tribe.*

*altitūdō, inis, f., depth, height.*

*Avāricum, ī, n., Avaricum, a Gallic town.*

*civis, is, m., citizen, fellow-citizen.*

*Genava, ae, f., Geneva, a town of the Allobroges.*

*laetitia, ae, f., joy, gladness.*

*patria, ae, f., native country.*

*templum, ī, n., temple.*

*ventus, ī, m., wind.*

## EXERCISES

**127.** 1. Meliōra castra, maximum oppidum, via peior. 2. Laetitia māiore, venti mīores, mīlites optimi. 3. Summus mōns, in oppidis proximis, summa virtūs. 4. Venti ōcissimi agrōs vastant. 5. Laetitia cīvium est maior quam laetitia militum. 6. Genava est optimum oppidum Allobrogum. 7. Collis proximus est altior et asperior. 8. Equites minimo periculō dīmican. 9. Duceſ Gallōrum maximās cōpiās parant. 10. In primā acīe sunt mīlites fortissimi. 11. Altitudō flūminum Italiae nōn est maxima. 12. Maxima virtūtē oppidum ultimum oppugnant.

**128.** 1. Of the last legion; the highest mountains; to the first soldiers.  
2. Of the swiftest messengers; in the nearest towns; the lowest mountain

3. The outer wall; from the higher place; with the least joy. 4. The first cohort fights with the greatest valor. 5. The swiftest messengers of the Romans tell about the battle. 6. A legion is larger than a cohort.

### REVIEW

- 129.** 1. Hostes in nave sunt multi. 2. Dux collem armis occupat. 3. In turribus sunt multi milites. 4. Römani feroces victoria altas turris oppugnant. 5. Multi portas in Italia sunt boni. 6. Magna perniciē est in acie. 7. Alios equites in altero cornu collocat. 8. De perniciē recenti exercitus narramus. 9. Complures hostes sine timore in concilio communī deliberant. 10. Milites Italiae non sunt fortiores quam milites Galliae. 11. Maxima virtute oppidum proximum oppugnant.

## Lesson 21

### FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

- 130.** Adjectives of the first and second declensions form the adverb by dropping the ending of the genitive singular and adding -ē.

Adjective.	Adverb.
cārus, dear.	cārē, dearly.
miser, wretched.	miserē, wretchedly.
pulcher, beautiful.	pulchrē, beautifully.

- 131.** Adjectives of the third declension form the adverb by adding -ter to the stem. Stems (chiefly participles) ending in -nt drop -t before adding -ter.

Adjective.	Stem.	Adverb
ācer, keen	ācri-	āriter, keenly
fortis, brave	forti-	fortiter, bravely
prudēns, wise	prudent-	prudenter, wisely

- 132.** In some adjectives the ablative singular serves as the adverb, in others the neuter accusative singular.

facilis, easy	facile, easily
multus, much	multum, much
primus, first	prīmō, at first

The comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter singular of the comparative of the adjective. To form the superlative, change the final -us of the superlative of the adjective to -ē.

Adjective	Adverb	Comparative	Superlative
cārus	cārē, <i>dearly</i>	cārius	cārissimē
pulcher	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i>	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
bonus	bene, <i>well</i>	melius	optimē
facilis	facile, <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē
audāx	audācter, <i>boldly</i>	audācius	audācissimē

133. Certain adverbs are peculiar in comparison.

magnopere, <i>greatly</i>	magis	maximē
multum, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimū
nōn multum } <i>little</i>	minus	minimē
parum	saepius	saepissimē
saepe, <i>often</i>	propius	proximē
prope, <i>near</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
diū, <i>long</i>		

### 134. VOCABULARY

- āriter, *sharply, fiercely.*
- audācter, *courageously.*
- cārus, a, um, *dear.*
- cogitō, *I think.*
- dēfensio, ūnis, f., *defense.*
- diū, adv., *a long time.*
- fortiter, *bravely.*
- fuga, ae, f., *flight.*
- impetus, ūs, m., *onset, attack.*
- magis, *more, rather;* comparative of magnopere.
- magnopere, *greatly, earnestly.*
- maximē, *especially;* superlative of magnopere.
- miser, a, um, *wretched, unfortunate.*
- parum, adv., *little.*
- perturbō, *I agitate, disturb.*
- prope, adv., *near.*
- prūdens, entis, *skilled, wise.*
- pugnō, *I fight.*
- saltō, *I dance.*
- tardō, *I retard, check.*

### EXERCISES

135. 1. Miserē, fortiter, primo, cārius, optimē, facillimē. 2. Diūtissimē, propius, saepissimē, maximē, pēius. 3. Minus bene, minimē facile,

acerrime, audacter. 4. Milites Rōmani acriter et audacter dimicant. 5. Oppidum diu et fortiter oppugnant. 6. Agricolae magis dē agris ferācibus quam dē proelitis cogitant. 7. Galli impetum Rōmānōrum fortiter tardant. 8. Filiae consulis flōrēs silvae maxime amant. 9. Timor pernicieū exercitū magnopere perturbat. 10. Nautae minus fortiter pugnant.

**136.** 1. Bravely; more wretchedly; less easily. 2. Most fiercely; most courageously; most easily. 3. The sailor's daughter dances very beautifully. 4. The Belgians fight more bravely than the Helvetians. 5. The soldiers are thinking more of flight than of the attack. 6. The strong defense of the town greatly retards the attack. 7. They consult very wisely about the defense of the camp.

## Lesson 22

### NUMERALS

**137.** Numeral adjectives are divided into three principal classes.

1. Cardinals, answering the question, How many?
2. Ordinals, answering the question, In what order?
3. Distributives, answering the question, How many at a time?

**138.** The student should memorize thoroughly the following Cardinals and Ordinals, but should simply read the Distributives.

The declension of numerals will be treated in a later lesson (24).

Cardinals	Ordinals	Distributives
1. <i>ūnus, one</i>	<i>prīmus, first</i>	<i>singulī, one each</i>
2. <i>duo</i>	<i>secundus</i>	<i>bīnī</i>
3. <i>trēs</i>	<i>tertius</i>	<i>ternī, trīnī</i>
4. <i>quattuor</i>	<i>quārtus</i>	<i>quaternī</i>
5. <i>quīnque</i>	<i>quīntus</i>	<i>quīnī</i>
6. <i>sex</i>	<i>sextus</i>	<i>sēnī</i>
7. <i>septem</i>	<i>septimus</i>	<i>septēnī</i>
8. <i>octo</i>	<i>octāvus</i>	<i>octōnī</i>
9. <i>novem</i>	<i>nonus</i>	<i>novēnī</i>
10. <i>decem</i>	<i>decimus</i>	<i>dēnī</i>
11. <i>ūndecim</i>	<i>undecimus</i>	<i>ūndēnī</i>
12. <i>duodecim</i>	<i>duodecimus</i>	<i>duodēnī</i>
13. <i>tredecim</i>	<i>tertius decimus</i>	<i>ternī dēnī</i>
14. <i>quattuordecim</i>	<i>quārtus decimus</i>	<i>quaternī dēnī</i>
15. <i>quindecim</i>	<i>quīntus decimus</i>	<i>quīnī dēnī</i>

16. <b>sēdecim</b>	<b>sexus decimus</b>	<b>sēnī dēnī</b>
17. <b>septendecim</b>	<b>septimus decimus</b>	<b>septēnī dēnī</b>
18. <b>duodēvīginti</b>	<b>duodēvīcēsimus</b>	<b>duodēvīcēnī</b>
19. <b>ūndēvīginti</b>	<b>ūndēvīcēsimus</b>	<b>ūndēvīcēnī</b>
20. <b>vīginti</b>	<b>vīcēsimus</b>	<b>vīcēnī</b>

**139.****VOCABULARY**

- annus**, *i*, m., *year*.  
**certāmen**, *inis*, n., *contest, strife*.  
**facile**, *easily*.  
**mensis**, *is*, m., *a month*.  
**pōem**, *ātis*, n., *a composition in verse, a poem*.

**EXERCISES**

**140.** 1. Duo nūntiū de certāmine bene narrant. 2. Duodecim mēnsēs sunt in annō. 3. Trēs milites magnā audāciā aggerem oppugnant. 4. Caesar trēs impetūs Gallōrum facile tardat. 5. Quīndecim equites agrōs agricolārum vexant.

**141.** 1. Eighteen horsemen retard the attack of the enemy. 2. Ten soldiers are in the road. 3. The many trees of the forest greatly delight the children. 4. The ten islands in the river are very beautiful places. 5. The two consuls do not like the fears of the soldiers.

**Lesson 23****NUMERALS, Continued**

**142.** Memorize thoroughly the following Cardinals and Ordinals, but simply read the Distributives.

Cardinals	Ordinals	Distributives
21. <b>vīginti ūnus</b>	<b>vīcēsimus pīmus</b>	<b>vīcēnī singuli</b>
<b>ūnus et vīginti</b>	<b>ūnus et vīcēsimus</b>	<b>singulī et vīcēnī</b>
22-27. are formed just as 21.		
28. <b>duodētrīgintā</b>	<b>duodētrīcēsimus</b>	<b>duodētrīcēnī</b>
29. <b>ūndētrīgintā</b>	<b>ūndētrīcēsimus</b>	<b>undētrīcēnī</b>
30. <b>trīgintā</b>	<b>trīcēsimus</b>	<b>trīcēnī</b>
40. <b>quadrāgintā</b>	<b>quadrāgēsimus</b>	<b>quadrāgēnī</b>
50. <b>quinquāgintā</b>	<b>quinquāgēsimus</b>	<b>quinquāgēnī</b>
60. <b>sexāgintā</b>	<b>sexāgēsimus</b>	<b>sexāgēnī</b>

70.	<i>septuāgintā</i>	<i>septuāgēsimus</i>	<i>septuāgēnī</i>
80.	<i>octōgintā</i>	<i>octōgēsimus</i>	<i>octōgēnī</i>
90.	<i>nōnāgintā</i>	<i>nōnāgēsimus</i>	<i>nōnāgēnī</i>
100.	<i>centum</i>	<i>centēsimus</i>	<i>centēnī</i>
101.	<i>centum ūnus</i>	<i>centēsimus pīmus</i>	<i>centēnī singulī</i>
	<i>centum et ūnus</i>		
200.	<i>ducentī</i>	<i>ducentēsimus</i>	<i>ducēnī</i>
300.	<i>trecentī</i>	<i>trecentēsimus</i>	<i>trecēnī</i>
400.	<i>quadringentī</i>	<i>quadringentēsimus</i>	<i>quadrēngēnī</i>
500.	<i>quīngentī</i>	<i>quīngentēsimus</i>	<i>quīngēnī</i>
600.	<i>sescēntī</i>	<i>sescētesimūs</i>	<i>sescēnī</i>
700.	<i>septingentī</i>	<i>septingentēsimus</i>	<i>septingēnī</i>
800.	<i>octingentī</i>	<i>octingentēsimus</i>	<i>octingēnī</i>
900.	<i>nōngentī</i>	<i>nōngentēsimus</i>	<i>nōngēnī</i>
1000.	<i>mille</i>	<i>millēsimus</i>	<i>singula millia</i>
100,000.	<i>centum millia</i>	<i>centiēs millēsimus</i>	<i>centēna millia</i>

## 143.

## VOCABULARY

- clāmō*, *I call, cry out.*  
*clāmor, ūris*, m., *loud cry, noise.*  
*error, ūris*, m., *wandering, mistake.*  
*forum, ī*, n., *market place.*  
*īinstō, I press on.*  
*nox, noctis*, f., *night.*

## EXERCISES

144. 1. Multi clāmōrēs ē castris clāmant. 2. In forō sunt duodecimā trīginta milites. 3. Trīginta cohortes semper īstant. 4. Optimī milites de secundō impetū dēliberant. 5. Miles tertius decimus in aciē est altissimus. 6. Mille hostēs in silvā īstant.

145. 1. Ten horsemen alone check the first attack. 2. Twenty-two soldiers are in the market place. 3. The leader demands a third attack. 4. Thirty-eight Gauls disturb the town. 5. A thousand cries call out in the night.

## Lesson 24

## DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

146. Of the Cardinals only *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, the hundreds above one hundred, and *mille* when used as a noun, are declined.

For the declension of *ūnus* see Lesson 16.

**Duo**, *two*, and **trēs**, *three*, are declined as follows:

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>duo</b>	<b>duae</b>	<b>duo</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>duōrum</b>	<b>duārum</b>	<b>duōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>duōbus</b>	<b>duābus</b>	<b>duōbus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>duōs, duo</b>	<b>duās</b>	<b>duo</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>duōbus</b>	<b>duābus</b>	<b>duōbus</b>
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>trēs</b>	<b>tria</b>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>trium</b>	<b>trium</b>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>tribus</b>	<b>tribus</b>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>trēs (tris)</b>	<b>tria</b>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>tribus</b>	<b>tribus</b>	

**147.** The Cardinals from four to ten, and all the tens from ten to one hundred are indeclinable. Hundreds are declined like the plural of *bonus*.

**148.** **Mille** in the singular is an indeclinable adjective. In the plural it is a noun (followed by the genitive of the objects enumerated) and is declined. Thus, **mille hominēs**, *a thousand men*; **duo milia hominum**, *two thousand men* (literally, *two thousand of men*).

	Plural
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>milia</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>miliūm</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>milibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>milia</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>milibus</b>

### 149.

### VOCABULARY

- advocō**, *I call or summon to.*
- cēlō**, *I keep secret, conceal.*
- conditor**, *ōris, m., builder, founder.*
- disturbō**, *I throw into disorder, disturb.*
- iam**, *adv., now.*
- messis**, *is, f., harvest.*
- prodigium**, *īi, n., unusual sign, foreboding.*
- probus**, *a, um, good, honest, virtuous.*

### EXERCISES

**150.** 1. *Duōrum prodigiōrum*, cum *tribus filiis*, *ducentis equitibus*.  
 2. *Mille equites*, *tria milia hominum*, cum *duōbus cohortibus*. 3. *In tribus oppidiis*, *duo prodigia*, *tria nomina*. 4. *Caesar duās legionēs iam*

advocat. 5. Puella tres flores pulchrás celat. 6. Trecenti homines sunt in oppidō. 7. Galli tres turrem magnō impetu oppugnant. 8. Messis in agris Rōmānōrum est maxima. 9. Duo sunt conditores urbis Rōmae. 10. Tres hominēs probi auxilium populi Rōmani implorant.

**151.** 1. To three soldiers; in two towns; with one lieutenant. 2. For three thousand men; from a thousand women; in two thousand cities. 3. Three thousand cavalry; with two hundred soldiers; of one cohort. 4. Caesar summons two thousand horsemen to the town. 5. The two founders of the city are very great men. 6. More than one prodigy disturbs the Roman people. 7. The three legions retard the attack of the many thousand Gauls. 8. Three hundred horsemen are ravaging the harvest in the fields.

## Lesson 25

### PRONOUNS

#### Personal Pronouns

**152.** The Personal Pronouns of the first and second persons are declined as follows:

	Singular	Plural
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ego, I</i>	<i>tu, you</i>
<i>nōs, we</i>		<i>vōs, you</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mei</i>	<i>tui</i>
		<i>nostrum, nostri,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi, mī</i>	<i>tibi</i>
		<i>nōbis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>
		<i>nōs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>
		<i>nōbis</i>

**153.** The personal pronoun of the third person is *is, he; ea, she; id, it.* For the declension, see Lesson 28.

#### VOCABULARY

**amicē**, *in a friendly way* Lesson 28.

**culpō**, *I blame.*

**Dumnorix**, *igis, m., Dumnorix, a leader of the Haedui.*

**epistula**, *ae, f., letter.*

**fructus**, *ūs, m., fruit (especially of trees).*

**frustrā**, *adv., in vain.*

**grātus**, *a, um, pleasing, welcome.*

**imperātor**, *ōris, m., commander.*

**inter**, *prep, with acc., among, between.*

**iūdicō**, *I judge, adjudge.*

**memoria, ae, f.**, *memory, recollection.*

**officium, i, n.**, *duty.*

**praestō, I perform.**

**probō, I approve.**

**quoque, also,** always follows word it modifies.

**sollicitō, I rouse, instigate.**

**verbum, i, n.**, *word.*

### EXERCISES

**155.** Mihi, tibi, nōs, vōs. 2. Mē, tē, nōbis, vōbis. 3. Ego, nostrum, tu, vestrum. 4. Mī, mei, tui, nostri. 5. Duceſ nōs culpant. 6. Tē probāmus. 7. Imperātor mē et tē acriter accusat. 8. Mē quoque sollicitās. 9. Memoria tui mihi est grāta. 10. Verba Galbae in epistula tibi nōn sunt grāta. 11. Vōs milites frustrā sollicitatiſ. 12. Nōs officia semper praestāmus. 13. Fructūs agrōrum agricōlīs sunt grāti.

**156.** 1. We; us; you; to us. 2. You (acc. sing.); to you; me; to me. 3. To you (plu.); of us; of you (sing.); of you (plu.). 4. The soldier calls the men to us. 5. The letter of Dumnorix is not pleasing to you and to me. 6. He gives you many duties. 7. The generals rouse us in vain.

## Lesson 26

### PRONOUNS, Continued

#### Reflexive Pronouns

**157.** Reflexive Pronouns refer to the subject of the sentence or clause in which they stand. Thus in "I see myself," "myself" is a reflexive pronoun referring to the subject "I."

For the first and second persons of the Reflexive Pronouns, the ordinary Personal Pronouns are used.

Only the third person has a special form, and is declined as follows:

*Gen. sui, of himself, herself, itself, themselves.*

*Dat. sibi, to himself, herself, itself, themselves.*

*Acc. se or sēsē, himself, herself, itself, themselves.*

*Abl. se or sēsē, with himself, herself, itself, themselves.*

The Reflexive Pronoun of the third person serves for all genders and for both numbers.

### POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

**158.** Possessive Adjectives are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions. Thus,

#### *First Person*

Singular, **meus, -a, -um, my.**

Plural, **noster, nostra, nostrum, our.**

#### *Second Person*

Singular, **tuus, -a, -um, thy, your** (of one person).

Plural, **vester, vestra, vestrum, your** (of more than one).

#### *Third Person*

Sing. and Plu., **suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their.**

**Suus** is always reflexive as in **māter liberōs suōs amat, the mother loves her children.** Where not reflexive, *his, her, its* are regularly expressed by the genitive singular of **is, i. e., eius;** and *their*, by the genitive plural, **eōrum, eārum.**

Possessive Pronouns exist in Latin only when Possessive Adjectives are used substantively.

**est meum, it is mine.**

### **159.**

#### VOCABULARY

**calamitas, ātis, f., misfortune, calamity.**

**fortitūdo, inis, f., strength, bravery.**

**gravis, e, heavy, grievous, serious.**

**metus, ūs, m., fear, dread.**

**opus, eris, n., work, labor.**

**sēditio, ūnis, f., uprising, revolt.**

**sonitus, ūs, m., noise, sound.**

**suāvis, e, sweet, pleasant, agreeable.**

#### EXERCISES

160. 1. **Sui, sē, sibi, sēsē.** 2. **Calamitas mea, metus vester, officiorum vestrōrum.** 3. **Pater meus, māter nostra, filia tua.** 4. **Omnēs milites boni officia sua praestant.** 5. **Lēgātus tuum gladium mihi donat.** 6. **Puer patrem suum ad sē vocat.** 7. **Tu tua opera semper probās.** 8. **Metus noster imperatōrem sollicitat.** 9. **Rōmāni suis armis fortiter dimicant.** 10. **Seditio militum nostrōrum est gravis.** 11. **Gallī cum fortitudine et virtute nōn semper pugnant.** 12. **Sonitus sēditiōnis nos-trōrum est maximus.**

- 161.** 1. To himself; to themselves; from herself. 2. My horse; your daughter; our children; your (plu.) misfortune. 3. The father calls the boys to him (= himself). 4. Your leader gave us many duties. 5. The commander praises his men. 6. Your daughter is calling me. 7. The sound of the revolt does not disturb our king.

## Lesson 27

### PRONOUNS, Continued

#### Demonstrative Pronouns

- 162.** Demonstrative Pronouns point out an object as here or there, or as previously mentioned. They usually precede the noun they modify. They are, **hic**, *this*; **ille**, *iste, that*; **is**, *this or that*; **idem**, *the same*.

#### **hic, this**

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>hic</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hī</b>	<b>hae</b>	<b>haec</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>hūius</b>	<b>hūius</b>	<b>hūius</b>	<b>hōrum</b>	<b>hārum</b>	<b>hōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>his</b>	<b>his</b>	<b>his</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>hunc</b>	<b>hanc</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hōs</b>	<b>hās</b>	<b>haec</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hāc</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>his</b>	<b>his</b>	<b>his</b>

#### **Ille, that**

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>ille</b>	<b>illa</b>	<b>illud</b>	<b>illi</b>	<b>illae</b>	<b>illa</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>illius</b>	<b>illius</b>	<b>illius</b>	<b>illōrum</b>	<b>illārum</b>	<b>illōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>illi</b>	<b>illi</b>	<b>illi</b>	<b>illis</b>	<b>illis</b>	<b>illis</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>illum</b>	<b>illam</b>	<b>illud</b>	<b>illōs</b>	<b>illās</b>	<b>illa</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>illō</b>	<b>illā</b>	<b>illō</b>	<b>illis</b>	<b>illis</b>	<b>illis</b>

**Iste, that, that of yours,** is declined like **ille**.

## 163.

### VOCABULARY

- agmen, inis**, n., *army* (on the march).  
**causa, ae, f.**, *cause, condition*.  
**foedus, ēris**, n., *league, treaty, compact*.  
**ignāvus, a, um**, *cowardly*.  
**lux, lūcis**, m., *light*.  
**opīniō, ūnis**, f., *opinion, expectation*.  
**salūs, ūtis**, f., *safety*.  
**tempestās, ātis**, f., *weather, storm*.

## EXERCISES

**164.** 1. Hoc agmen, hae causae, huius opiniōnis. 2. Huic causae, in hac tempestate, harum opiniōnum. 3. In istō exercitu, illorum militum, istius agminis. 4. Illa foedera, illa lux, istius salutis. 5. Causa huius exercitū non est bona. 6. Caesar illos milites ignavos ad sē vocat. 7. Haec urbs est pulcherrima Italiae. 8. Iste ducēs opiniōnes suās regi nostrō narrant. 9. Illa tempestas erat gravissima. 10. Salus patriae vestrae isti imperatōri est carissima. 11. Multa officia huic homini praestamus. 12. Milites, ista officia exercitū nōn amat̄is.

**165.** 1. That storm; these battles; of that opinion (of yours). 2. By those treaties; for this reason; in this light. 3. This soldier; of these men; for those horsemen. 4. Two cohorts of this legion were cowardly. 5. The robbers of that forest are very bad. 6. On those mountains are very tall trees. 7. With the swiftest soldiers he attacks those towers. 8. The rivers of that country are not very deep.

## Lesson 28

## PRONOUNS, Continued

**166. Demonstrative Pronouns, continued.**

*Is, this or that; he, she, it.*

Singular			Plural		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i> is	ea	id	eī or iī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i> eiūs	eiūs	eiūs	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i> eī	eī	eī	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs
<i>Acc.</i> eūm	eām	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i> eō	eā	eō	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs
Idem, the same					
Singular			Plural		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i> idem	eadem	idem	{ eīdem iīdem idem	eadem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i> eiūsdem	eiūsdem	eiūsdem		eadem	eadem
<i>Dat.</i> eīdem	eīdem	eīdem		eadem	eadem
<i>Acc.</i> eūndem	eāndem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i> eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

## 167.

## VOCABULARY

- acūmen, inis, n., keenness.**  
**arduuus, a, um, steep, difficult.**  
**celeritas, ētis, f., swiftness.**  
**contrōversia, ae, f., dispute.**  
**facultās, ētis, f., abundance, supply.**  
**ignāvia, ae, f., cowardice.**  
**labor, ūris, m., labor.**  
**locus, ī, m., place, spot.**  
**mīrus, a, um, wonderful, marvellous.**  
**oppidānus, ī, m., inhabitant of a town, townsmen.**

## EXERCISES

**168.** 1. Eius labōris, eidem oppidāni, eiusdem contrōversiae. 2. Idem acūmen, eadem celeritate, in eodem locō. 3. Earundem causārum, eiusdem corōnis, eidem homini. 4. Eius nānti celeritas est maxima. 5. Eius nōmen est Galba. 6. Oppidāni eius oppidi nōn sunt ignāvi. 7. Contrōversia gravis dē eis rebus est inter eum et oppidānum. 8. Facultās magna frumenti est in eodem oppidō. 9. Eōdem equites eōrum virtute laudas. 10. Eōs ad sē vocat. 11. Eis dē ignāvi oppidānōrum narrās. 12. Dux suōs pedites eōrum ignāvi vituperat.

**169.** 1. The same man; to the same women; of the same army. 2. Concerning the same causes; that camp; in this army. 3. Of these townsmen; the same places; for the same reason. 4. The people of this country avoid the dangers of war. 5. This general does not praise the cowardice of his soldiers. 6. The keenness of this boy's mind is wonderful. 7. The larger camp is in the same place. 8. You praise them; he blames her; they call him.

## Lesson 29

## PRONOUNS, Continued

## The Intensive Pronoun

**170.** The Intensive Pronoun is **ipse**. It gives emphasis to the word with which it agrees, and its exact translations vary. Thus, **puer ipse**, *the boy himself*; **femina ipsa**, *the woman herself*; **donum ipsum**, *the gift itself*; **urbēs ipsae**, *the cities themselves*.

**Ipsæ, self.**

## Singular

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>ipse</b>	<b>ipsa</b>	<b>ipsum</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>ipsius</b>	<b>ipsius</b>	<b>ipsius</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>ipsi</b>	<b>ipsi</b>	<b>ipsi</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>ipsum</b>	<b>ipsam</b>	<b>ipsum</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>ipsō</b>	<b>ipsā</b>	<b>ipsō</b>

## Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>ipsi</b>	<b>ipsae</b>	<b>ipsa</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>ipsorum</b>	<b>ipsarum</b>	<b>ipsorum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>ipsis</b>	<b>ipsis</b>	<b>ipsis</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>ipsos</b>	<b>ipsas</b>	<b>ipsa</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>ipsis</b>	<b>ipsis</b>	<b>ipsis</b>

**RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS**

- 171.** The Relative Pronoun is **qui**, *who*, *which*, and is declined as follows:

Singular			Plural			
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>qui</b>	<b>quae</b>	<b>quod</b>	<b>qui</b>	<b>quae</b>	<b>quae</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>cuius</b>	<b>cuius</b>	<b>cuius</b>	<b>quōrum</b>	<b>quārum</b>	<b>quōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>cui</b>	<b>cui</b>	<b>cui</b>	<b>quibus</b>	<b>quibus</b>	<b>quibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>quem</b>	<b>quam</b>	<b>quod</b>	<b>quōs</b>	<b>quās</b>	<b>quae</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>quō</b>	<b>quā</b>	<b>quō</b>	<b>quibus</b>	<b>quibus</b>	<b>quibus</b>

- 172.** The Interrogative Pronouns are **quis**, *who?* **quid**, *what?* They are declined as follows:

## Singular

M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>quis</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>cūius</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>cui</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>quem</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>quō</b>

The plural of the interrogative is the same as that of the relative.

The Interrogative Adjective **qui**, **quae**, **quod**, *what?* *what kind of?* is declined exactly as the Relative Pronoun.

### RULE OF SYNTAX

**173.** A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case is determined by its construction in the clause in which it stands.

*pallium quōd amictus est, the cloak with which he was covered.  
oppida quae oppugnāmus, the towns which we attack.*

**174.**

### VOCABULARY

- appellō,** *I name, call.*
- armō,** *I arm.*
- cāsus, us, m.,** *chance, accident.*
- errō,** *I err, am mistaken.*
- festinō,** *I hasten, hurry.*
- firmitās, ātis, f.,** *firmness, strength.*
- fugō,** *I put to flight.*
- hiberna, ūrum, n. pl.,** *winter quarters.*
- intereā,** *in the meanwhile.*
- prō,** prep. with abl., *before, for.*

### EXERCISES

**175.** 1. *Ducis ipsius, hominēs ipsōs, ipsa régina.* 2. *Quid oppidum? Quis legatus? Quis puella? Quōrum hibernōrum? Cūius urbī? Cui mīlitī?* 4. *Fēminaē quās laudās. Agricola cūius puerum amās.* 5. *Ad urbēm festinat quam Rōmam appellās.* 6. *Dux ipse dē virtūte mīlitū qui pugnant narrat.* 7. *Hominēs qui sunt in oppidō armat.* 8. *Rex mīlites laudās qui impetum hostiū tardant.* 9. *Imperātor deditiōne castrōrum omnēs culpat, quōs laudas.* 10. *Quis virtūtem et firmitātem nōn amat?* 11. *Crvēs ipsi illōs latrōnes intereā fugant.* 12. *Castra nōn sunt magna quae nostri mīlites oppugnant.* 13. *Quis vestrum salūtem populi nostri implorāt?* 14. *Duās cohortēs quās maximē amat in cornū dextrō collocat.* 15. *P̄inceps ipse est ignāvus et perficula bellī vitat.*

**176.** 1. *The armies themselves; by accident itself; of the generals themselves.* 2. *What winter quarters? What man? What thing?* 3. *The island in which the flowers are. The building which is in the forest.* 4. *Soldiers who fight for the fatherland. In what place is the army?* 5. *In the meantime they fight the enemy's cavalry which is in the fields.* 6. *He calls the men who are in the town. 7. What enemy are they putting to flight?*

## Lesson 30

### PRONOUNS, Continued

#### Indefinite Pronouns

**177.** The principal Indefinite Pronouns are **quis**, *anyone* (noun), and **qui**, *any* (adjective). These are declined respectively like the Interrogative and Relative Pronoun.

**178.** The compounds of the Indefinites **quis** and **qui** are as follows:

#### Substantives

M. and F.	N.
<b>aliquis</b> , <i>some one</i>	<b>aliquid</b> , <i>something</i>
<b>quisquam</b> , <i>anyone</i>	<b>quidquam</b> , <i>anything</i>
<b>quisque</b>	<b>quidque</b> , <i>each</i>
<b>quidam</b> , <i>quaedam</i> ,	<b>quiddam</b> , <i>a certain person or thing</i>

#### Adjectives

M.	F.	N.
<b>aliquī</b>	<b>aliqua</b>	<b>aliquid</b> , <i>some</i>
<b>quisque</b>	<b>quaeque</b>	<b>quodque</b> , <i>each</i>
<b>quidam</b>	<b>quaedam</b>	<b>quoddam</b> , <i>a certain</i>

In the compounded Indefinite Pronouns, only the pronominal part is declined, e. g., **alicūius**, **cūiusquam**, etc.

**Aliquī** has **aliqua** in the Nominative Singular Feminine, also in the Nominative and Accusative Plural Neuter.

In the declension of **quidam**, **m** is changed to **n** before **d**; as **quendam**, **quandam**, **quōrundam**, **quārundam**.

**179.**

#### VOCABULARY

- interitus**, *ūs*, m., *ruin, destruction*.
- laudābilis**, e, *praiseworthy, laudable*.
- praeda**, ae, f., *booty*.
- pretiōsus**, a, um, *valuable, precious*.
- sī**, *if*.
- sperō**, *I hope, hope for*.
- superbus**, a, um, *haughty, proud*.
- viciſſitūdo**, inis, f., *change*.

#### EXERCISES

- 180.** 1. Hominibus quibusdam, legatō alicui. 2. Femina aliqua, in oppidō quōdam. 3. Cuique puerō, praedae alicūius. 4. Rēgum

quorundam, reginae cuiusdam. 5. Alicui, quidquam, cuiusque, quorundam. 6. Cohortes quaedam iam sunt in hibernis. 7. Duces aliqui sunt superbi. 8. Si quisquam victoriā sperat, errat. 9. Caesar legatōs cuiusque cohortis ad se vocat. 10. Quidam sunt superbissimi. 11. Illa ager est terra pretiosa. 12. Milites qui pericula bellī nō vitant sunt laudabiles. 13. Vicissitudines bellī sunt multae et celere. 14. Aliqui interitum exercitus nostri sperant. 15. Aliqua in castris imperator nō amat.

**181.** 1. Some men; anyone; each legion; a certain cohort. 2. To every general; in certain towns; in each camp. 3. Of every army; concerning some booty; because of some things. 4. The booty which is in the camp is valuable. 5. Some commanders praise certain legions. 6. The proud soldiers harass each town. 7. A certain leader of the Gauls checks the onset of the Romans. 8. The general blames some men who avoid the dangers of battle.

### REVIEW

**182.** 1. Milites acerrime et audacter pugnant. 2. Duodecim nuntii de pernicie bene narrant. 3. Ducenti equites septem vicōs vastant. 4. Mille Rōmāni cum duobus milibus Gallorum dimicant. 5. Ego tē accusō. 6. Dux suō gladiō pugnat. 7. In hoc proeliō milites nostri fortiter pugnant. 8. Eisdem equites hunc laudant. 9. Dux eis, qui fortiter oppugnant, praedam dōnat. 10. Cohortes quaedam pericula bellī vitant.

## Lesson 31

### CONJUGATION

**183.** The inflection of the verb is called Conjugation. There are four conjugations, distinguished by the first vowel of the ending of the Present Infinitive Active. Thus.

Conjugation	Infinitive Ending	Distinguishing Vowel
I	-āre	ā
II	-ēre	ē
III	-ěre	ě
IV	-ire	i

By the inflection of the verb is expressed Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person.

**184.** There are two voices, Active and Passive. The Active Voice shows the subject as acting or being; thus, **amō**, *I love*; **sum**, *I am*.

The Passive Voice shows the subject as acted upon; thus **laudāmur**, *we are praised.*

**185.** There are three Moods—Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative.

(a) The Indicative Mood states a fact, or inquires about a fact. Thus, **moneō**, *I advise; quid monēs, what do you advise?*

(b) For the force of the Subjunctive Mood, see p. 153.

(c) The Imperative Mood is used in commands, entreaties, etc.

**186.** There are six Tenses—Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect, which correspond respectively to the English Present, Past, Future, Present, Perfect, Past Perfect, Future Perfect.

The Subjunctive, however, lacks the Future and Future Perfect, and the Imperative uses only the Present and Future.

**187.** There are two numbers—Singular and Plural.

**188.** There are three persons—First, Second, and Third.

**189.** These make up the forms of the three moods, or the so-called Finite Verb. Besides these forms there are the Infinitives, the Supines, and the Gerund, which are verbal nouns, and the Participles (including the Gerundive), which are verbal adjectives.

**190.** Transitive and Intransitive Verbs. Verbs that take a direct object are Transitive Verbs; thus **eōs amāmus**, *we love them.* Other verbs are Intransitive; thus **manēmus**, *we remain.*

**191.** The Principal Parts of a verb are:

(1) The First Person Singular of the Present Indicative Active.

(2) The Present Infinitive Active.

(3) The First Person Singular of the Perfect Indicative Active.

(4) The Nominative Singular Masculine of the Perfect Passive Participle.

The Principal Parts of a verb are so called because from them the full conjugation of the verb may be derived.

### CONJUGATION OF SUM

**192.** The conjugation of the irregular verb **sum** is given first because it enters into the conjugation of other verbs.

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.

Pres. Inf.

Perf. Ind.

Fut. Partic.

**sum**

**esse**

**fui**

**futūrus**

The Perfect Participle of **sum** is wanting.

**Indicative****PRESENT TENSE****Singular**

*sum, I am,  
es, thou art, you are,  
est, he is;*

**Plural**

*sumus, we are,  
estis, you are,  
sunt, they are.*

**IMPERFECT**

*eram, I was,  
erās, thou wast, you were,  
erat, he was;*

*erāmus, we were,  
erātis, you were,  
erant, they were.*

**FUTURE**

*erō, I shall be,  
eris, thou wilt be, you will be,  
erit, he will be;*

*erimus, we shall be,  
eritis, you will be,  
erunt, they will be.*

**PERFECT**

*fui, I have been, I was,  
fuisti, thou hast been, thou wast, you  
were,  
fuit, he has been, he was;*

*fuimus, we have been, we were,  
fuistis, you have been, you were,  
fuērunt, } they have been, they were.  
fuēre,*

**PLUPERFECT**

*fueram, I had been,  
fuerās, thou hadst been, you had been,  
fuerat, he had been;*

*fuerāmus, we had been,  
fuerātis, you had been,  
fuerant, they had been.*

**FUTURE PERFECT**

*fuerō, I shall have been,  
fueris, thou will (you will) have been,  
fuerit, he will have been;*

*fuerimus, we shall have been,  
fueritis, you will have been,  
fuerint, they will have been.*

**193.****VOCABULARY**

- armenta, órum, n. pl., herds, cattle.*
- arō, I plough.*
- hasta, ae, f., spear.*
- hostia, ae, f., victim.*
- iustus, a, um, just, lawful, true.*
- lex, lēgis, f., law.*

- pāgus, ī, m.,** *district, village.*  
**perpetuus, a, um,** *perpetual.*  
**piger, ra, rum,** *unwilling, lazy.*  
**sacrificium, ī, n.,** *sacrifice.*  
**scūtum, ī, n.,** *shield.*  
**sub,** *under, prep. with abl.*

### EXERCISES

**194.** 1. Sunt, erātis, erō, fuit. 2. Es, erāmus, erunt, fui. 3. Estis, eram, erit, fuerātis. 4. Fuerant, fueritis, sumus, eris. 5. Fuerimus, fuerat, fuere, erō. 6. Armenta Helvētiōrum erant in agrīs. 7. Illi legati imperātōris Rōmāni fuērunt fortissimi. 8. Quis fuit dux Sequāndōrum? 9. Ubi eris? 10. In sacrificio erunt hostiae multae. 11. Lēges Rōmānae semper fuērunt iustae. 12. Hasta hūius mīlitis erat sub scūto. 13. Vos, agricolae, qui agrōs nōn arātis, estis pigri. 14. In pagis Helvētiōrum fuerant multi hostēs. 15. Ubi fuerātis? 16. Vos omnēs in oppidis Belgārum fuistis. 17. Sub arbore sunt flōres pulcherrimi.

**195.** 1. I am; he was; you have been; we had been. 2. You are; they will be; he has been; he will have been. 3. She had been; I shall be; we shall have been; thou art. 4. These soldiers have been very brave. 5. The leader has been cowardly. 6. Under the shield was the spear. 7. You, fellow citizens, will be just. 8. He had been in the great country of the Gauls. 9. The sick soldiers will be in the buildings.

## Lesson 32

### 196. CONJUGATION OF SUM, Continued

#### Subjunctive

##### PRESENT

Singular	Plural
<b>sim, may I be,<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>sīmus, let us be,</b>
<b>sīs, mayst thou be,</b>	<b>sītis, be ye, may you be,</b>
<b>sīt, let him be, may he be;</b>	<b>sint, let them be.</b>

##### IMPERFECT

<b>essem, I should be,<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>essemus, we should be,</b>
<b>essēs, thou wouldst be,</b>	<b>essētis, you would be,</b>
<b>esset, he would be;</b>	<b>essent, they would be.</b>

---

<sup>1</sup>The many possible meanings of the Subjunctive will be taken up under Syntax. Only the most common meanings will be given in this paradigm.

## PERFECT

fuerim, *I may have been*,<sup>1</sup>  
 fueris, *thou mayst have been*,  
 fuerit, *he may have been*;

fuerimus, *we may have been*,  
 fueritis, *you may have been*,  
 fuerint, *they may have been*.

## PLUPERFECT

fuissem, *I should have been*,  
 fuisse, *thou wouldst have been*,  
 fuisse, *he would have been*;

fuissemus, *we should have been*,  
 fuissestis, *you would have been*,  
 fuissent, *they would have been*.

## Imperative

Pres. es, *be thou*,  
 Fut. estō, *thou shalt be*,  
 estō, *he shall be*;

este, *be ye*.  
 estōte, *ye shall be*,  
 suntō, *they shall be*.

## Infinitive

Pres. esse, *to be*.  
 Perf. fuisse, *to have been*.  
 Fut. futūrus esse,<sup>2</sup> *to be about  
to be*.

## Participle

Fut. futūrus,<sup>3</sup> *about to be*.

## 197.

## VOCABULARY

- amicitia, ae, f., *friendship*.
- ante, *before, in front of*, prep. with acc.
- brevis, e, *short, brief*.
- captivus, a, um, *captive; captivus* (as noun), *a captive*.
- contentus, a, um, *contented*.
- firmus, a, um, *steadfast, strong*.
- fossa, ae, f., *ditch, trench*.
- fugitivus, a, um, *fugitive; fugitivus* (as a noun), *a fugitive*.
- ibi, adv., *there, in that place*.
- inopia, ae, f., *lack, need*.
- nōndum, *not yet*.
- quondam, *formerly*.

<sup>1</sup>The many possible meanings of the Subjunctive will be taken up under Syntax. Only the most common meanings will be given in this paradigm.

<sup>2</sup>The form fore is often used for futūrus esse.

<sup>3</sup>Futūrus is declined like bonus.

## EXERCISES

**198.** 1. Sim, essem, fuerim, fuisse. 2. Sis, essētis, fueritis, fuis-  
sent. 3. Este, fuerimus, essent, sint. 4. Fuisse, suntō, fuissēmus,  
fuerint. 5. Sitis, fuerit, fuisse, futūrus. 6. Sim contentus. 7. Essē  
firmus. 8. Fuissent captivi. 9. Fābula pueri erat longior. 10. Ante  
oppidum sunt agrī ferācissimi. 11. Nōs, qui liberū sumus, sīmus contenti.  
12. Fuisse inopia magna rērum omnium. 13. Ille quondam erat amīcus  
meus. 14. In illis fossis fuerint multi hominēs aegri. 15. Plūrimae  
amicitiae sunt breves. 16. Laudāmus milites qui omnēs fuerunt fortēs.  
17. In hōc oppidō Belgārum Caesar nōndum fuerat.

**199.** 1. May I be; let us be; they would be; they may have been.  
2. Thou wouldst have been; he may have been; he would be. 3. You  
would be; be thou; let her be; let him be. 4. Mayst thou be; we should  
be; we should have been; I should have been. 5. Let them be brave.  
6. Soldiers, be steadfast, and there will be victory. 7. There may have  
been many men in the first trench. 8. The friendship between Gauls  
and Romans was brief.

## Lesson 33

**200.**

## FIRST (a-) CONJUGATION

*amō, I love.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.

**amō**

Pres. Inf.

**amāre**

Perf. Ind.

**amāvi**

Perf. Pass. Partic.

**amātus<sup>1</sup>**

## ACTIVE VOICE

## Indicative Mood

## PRESENT TENSE

## Singular

*amō, I love,  
amās, you love,  
amat, he loves;*

## Plural

*amāmus, we love,  
amātis, you love,  
amant, they love.*

<sup>1</sup> Many verbs in English taken from Latin are derived from the Perfect participial stem; e. g., *animate* from **animātus** (**animāre**), *effect* from **effectus** (**efficere**), *erect* from **ērectus** (**ērigere**), *select* from **selectus** (**sēligere**), etc.

## IMPERFECT

**amābam**, *I was loving, I loved,*  
**amābās**, *you were loving, etc.,*  
**amābat**, *he was loving, etc.;*

**amābāmus**, *we were loving, etc.,*  
**amābātis**, *you were loving, etc.,*  
**amābant**, *they were loving, etc.*

## FUTURE

**amābō**, *I shall love,*  
**amābis**, *you will love,*  
**amābit**, *he will love;*

**amābimus**, *we shall love,*  
**amābitis**, *you will love,*  
**amābunt**, *they will love.*

## PERFECT

**amāvī**, *I have loved, I loved,*  
**amāvisti**, *you have loved, you  
loved,*  
**amāvit**, *he has loved, he loved;*

**amāvimus**, *we have loved, we loved,*  
**amāvistis**, *you have loved, you  
loved,*  
**amāvērunt**, *-ēre, they have loved,  
they loved.*

## PLUPERFECT

**amāveram**, *I had loved,*  
**amāverās**, *you had loved,*  
**amāverat**, *he had loved;*

**amāverāmus**, *we had loved,*  
**amāverātis**, *you had loved,*  
**amāverant**, *they had loved.*

## FUTURE PERFECT

**amāverō**, *I shall have loved,*  
**amāveris**, *you will have loved,*  
**amāverit**, *he will have loved;*

**amāverimus**, *we shall have loved,*  
**amāveritis**, *you will have loved,*  
**amāverint**, *they will have loved*

Notice that the Present, Imperfect, and Future are formed by adding the proper endings to the present stem, **am-**.

Similarly the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect are formed by adding the proper endings to the perfect stem, **amav-**.

## 201.

## VOCABULARY

- aedificō**, *āre, āvi, ātus*, *build, erect.*
- āra**, *ae*, *f.*, *altar.*
- consilium**, *i*, *n.*, *deliberation, plan.*
- invidia**, *ae*, *f.*, *envy.*
- laborō**, *āre, āvi, ātus*, *work, suffer.*
- medius**, *a, um*, *middle, middle of.*
- migrō**, *āre, āvi, ātus*, *go, move, wander.*
- multitūdo**, *dinis*, *f.*, *multitude.*

**mūtō, āre, āvī, ātus, change, alter.**  
**nunc, now, temporal adv.**  
**ōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, pray, ask, request.**  
**pedes, itis, m., foot-soldier, in pl., infantry.**  
**planitiēs, ēi, f., plain.**  
**putō, āre, āvī, ātus, believe, think, consider.**  
**pugna, ae, f., fight, battle.**  
**recūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, refuse.**  
**vir, virī, m., a man.**

### EXERCISES

**202.** 1. Aedificābimus, ūratis, labōrabunt putavērunt. 2. Migrāvimus, mūtaverant, recūsāverimus, putāvisti. 3. Laudavit, superābo, collocāveras, dīmicābam. 4. Aedificāverō, collocāveris, occupābitis, superābant. 5. Populus hūiū oppidi āram aedificābat. 6. Aggerem ex duābus partibus oppugnābant. 7. Milites trium legiōnum oppida Helvetiōrum occupāvērunt. 8. Multi hominēs in castris minōribus labōrabunt. 9. Pacem et amicitiam Gallōrum Caesar recūsabit. 10. Omnes vōs victoriā ūrabitis. 11. Dē omnibus rēbus nos iūdicabimus. 12. Multitūdō virōrum et feminārum a Gallia in Italiam migrāverat. 13. Pedites in illō locō collocāvimus. 14. Timor magnus virōs qui erant in castris occupāvit. 15. Omnes equitēs qui in illā pugnā dīmicāvērunt laudābitis.

**203.** 1. You will work; I shall summon you; you will have suffered; we have moved. 2. We shall pray; he was considering; he has refused; I was praising him. 3. The soldiers have fought bravely in this battle. 4. The lieutenants had now gotten ready many beasts of burden. 5. Because of envy you have changed your plans. 6. We have stationed three cohorts in the same place. 7. Many foot-soldiers will be in the plain.

## Lesson 34

### FIRST (ā-) CONJUGATION, Continued

**204.** Active Voice of **amō**, continued.

#### Subjunctive Mood

##### PRESENT

Singular	Plural
amem, may I love,	amēmus, let us love,
amēs, love, may you love,	amētis, love, may you love,
amet, let him love, may he love;	ament, let them love, may they love.

## IMPERFECT

amārem, *I should love,*  
 amārēs, *you would love,*  
 amāret, *he would love;*

amārēmus, *we should love,*  
 amārētis, *you would love,*  
 amārent, *they would love.*

## PERFECT

amāverim  
 amāveris  
 amāverit

amāverimus  
 amāveritis  
 amāverint

## PLUPERFECT

amāvissem, *I should have loved,*  
 amāvissēs, *you would have loved,*  
 amāvisset, *he would have loved;*

amāvissēmus, *we should have loved,*  
 amāvissētis, *you would have loved,*  
 amāvissent, *they would have loved.*

Notice that the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive are formed from the Present Stem.

The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are formed from the Perfect Stem.

## 205.

## VOCABULARY

Ariovistus, i, m., *Ariovistus, a king of the Germans.*

bellō, āre, āvī, ātus, *make war, carry on war.*

classis, is, f., *fleet.*

cupidus, a, um, *fond, eager.*

ē, ex, *from, out of*, prep. with abl., ex is to be used before vowels or h.  
 gēns, gentis, f., *tribe.*

hōra, ae, f., *hour.*

intrā, *within*, prep. with acc.

ita, *thus, so.*

iugum, i, n., *yoke, ridge (of mountains).*

litus, oris, n., *shore.*

temptō, āre, āvī, ātus, *attempt, make trial of.*

turba, ae, f., *crowd, multitude.*

turbō, āre, āvī, ātus, *embarrass, disturb.*

## EXERCISES

206. 1. Putet, migrāret, ḫrāvissem, labōrārent. 2. Bellāres, temp-tarēmus, turbavissent, recūsāretis. 3. Laudent, dīmicāvissētis, parāvissēs, sperārem. 4. Bellēmus fortiter. 5. Victōriam semper sperārēs. 6. Sine periculō ex illō oppidō migrāvissent. 7. Populum illōrum oppidōrum turbabant. 8. Intra tīnam hōram exercitūm Gallōrum superāvisset. 9.

Cum duabus classibus litus occuparemus. 10. Hunc collem occupare temptemus.

**207.** 1. Let us praise the leader. 2. We should have prayed for peace. 3. They tried to storm the town with three cohorts. 4. Let them attempt the attack! 5. Within a few days they would have prepared a large army. 6. Let him himself who is so desirous occupy the shore! 7. Let Arioistus himself implore aid!

## Lesson 35

### FIRST (ā-) CONJUGATION, Continued

**208.** Active Voice of **amō**, continued.

#### Imperative Mood

Pres.	amā, <i>love thou;</i>	amāte, <i>love ye.</i>
Fut.	amātō, <i>thou shalt love,</i> amātō, <i>he shall love;</i>	amātōte, <i>ye shall love.</i> amantō, <i>they shall love.</i>

#### Infinitive

Pres.	amāre, <i>to love.</i>	Pres. amāns, <sup>1</sup> <i>loving.</i>
Perf.	amāvisse, <i>to have loved.</i>	(Gen. amantis)
Fut.	amātūrus esse, <i>to be about to love.</i>	Fut. amātūrus, <i>about to love.</i>

#### Participle

Gen.	amandī, <i>of loving.</i>	Supine
Dat.	amandō, <i>for loving.</i>	
Acc.	amandum, <i>loving.</i>	Acc. amātūm, <i>to love.</i>
Abl.	amandō, <i>by loving.</i>	Abl. amātū, <i>to love, be loved.</i>

Notice that the entire Imperative, the Present Infinitive, Present Participle, and the Gerund are formed from the Present Stem.

The Perfect Infinitive is formed from the Perfect Stem.

The Future Participle, Future Infinitive, and the Supine are formed from the Participial Stem **amāt-**.

## 209. VOCABULARY

arx, arcis, f., *castle, citadel.*  
avis, is, f., *bird.*

---

<sup>1</sup> For the declension of **amans**, see **cliens**, Lesson 14.

**dēsiderō**, *āre, āvī, ātus, long for, desire.*  
**mors, mortis**, *f., death.*  
**infestus, a, um, hostile, dangerous.  
**placō**, *āre, āvī, ātus, reconcile, pacify.*  
**properō**, *āre, āvī, ātus, hasten, hurry.*  
**unda, ae, f., wave.  
**vadum, i, n., ford.  
**vindex, īcis, m., avenger, defender.********

### EXERCISES

**210.** 1. Puta, dēsiderent, bellantō, parāvisse. 2. Properandō, laudandi, temptatūrus, dimicatūrus esse. 3. Turbāns, aedificantēs, mūtatōte, pugnāvisse. 4. Vōs qui cupidi bellandi estis arma paratē! 5. Timōre mortis pericula belli vitāverunt. 6. Caesar vadum illitus flaminis. temptatūrus est. 7. Lēgatus mīlitēs infestōs qui sunt in media planitīe placatūrus est. 8. Vōs, hominēs fortissimī, ad proelium properatūri estis. 9. Mors ducis mīlitēs ad maximum impetum incitābat. 10. Victōriam spērantēs melius pugnāvissent.

**211.** 1. To have hastened; to be about to reconcile; about to contend. 2. By praising; for attempting; to embarrass. 3. May he long for his country. 4. Soldiers, fight bravely for the fatherland. 5. We are all about to attack the citadel. 6. All Romans are not fond of fighting. 7. Who would have implored aid of that man?

## Lesson 36

### FIRST (ā-) CONJUGATION, Continued

**212.** Passive Voice of **amō**.

*amor, I am loved.*

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.  
**amor**

Pres. Inf.  
**amāri**

Perf. Ind.  
**amātus sum**

#### Indicative Mood

PRESENT TENSE  
*I am loved.*

Singular  
**amor**  
**amāris**  
**amātūr**

Plural  
**amāmur**  
**amāminī**  
**amantur**

## IMPERFECT

*I was loved.*

amābar	amābāmur
amābāris, or -re	amābāminī
amābātur	amābantur

## FUTURE

*I shall be loved.*

amābor	amābimur
amāberis, or -re	amābiminī
amābitur	amābuntur

## PERFECT

*I have been loved or I was loved.*

amātus (-a, -um) sum	amātī (-ae, -a) sumus
amātus es	amātī estis
amātus est	amātī sunt

## PLUPERFECT

*I had been loved.*

amātus eram	amātī erāmus
amātus erās	amātī erātis
amātus erat	amātī erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have been loved.*

amātus erō	amātī erimus
amātus eris	amātī eritis
amātus erit	amātī erunt

## 213.

## VOCABULARY

*anteā, previously, before.**gaudium, ī, n., joy.**honōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, respect, honor.**initium, ī, n., beginning.**mendācium, i, n., lie.**nēcō, āre, āvī, ātus, murder, kill.**ōtium, ī, n., leisure, idleness.**portō, āre, āvī, ātus, carry, bring, convey.**posteā, afterwards, later on.**sententia, ae, f., opinion.**tum, at that time, then.**vitium, ī, n., fault, vice, mistake.*

### EXERCISES

**214.** 1. Honōrātur, portantur, culpāris, laudāmur. 2. Excitābar, superābantur, convocabāmini, parāti sunt. 3. Vocātus erās, laudāti erimus, pericula vitāta erant. 4. Mendācia et vitia nōn laudantur. 5. Sententia ducis honōrātur. 6. Tum magnae classes summa celēritāte parābantur. 7. Duo lēgāti et multi milites nēcāti sunt. 8. Gaudium magnum erat in oppidō cūius exercitus fuit victor. 9. Omnia reliqua posteā portabis. 10. Eum anteā semper laudābas, et nunc nōn laudātur. 11. Tū cum omnibus fortibus laudābāris.

**215.** 1. They are honored; they have been killed; we are being carried. 2. It will be attacked; you will be praised; they have been made ready. 3. It will have been seized; we were overcome; you all have been summoned. 4. The town which you love is being attacked. 5. At the beginning of the attack many were not killed. 6. That hill together with the citadel will be occupied. 7. The opinion of the general had not been approved.

### Lesson 37

#### FIRST (ā-) CONJUGATION, Continued

**216.** Passive Voice of **amō**, continued.

##### Subjunctive Mood

###### PRESENT

*May I be loved, let him be loved.*

Singular	Plural
amer	amēmur
amēris, or -re	amēminī
amētur	amentur

###### IMPERFECT

*I should be loved, he would be loved.*

amārer	amārēmur
amārēris, or -re	amārēminī
amārētur	amārentur

###### PERFECT

amātus sim	amātī sīmus
amātus sīs	amātī sītis
amātus sit	amātī sint

**PLUPERFECT**

*I should have been loved, he would have been loved.*

amātus essem	amātī esseēmus
amātus esseēs	amātī esseētis
amātus esset	amātī essent

Notice that the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive Passive are formed with the Present Stem.

The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive use the Participial Stem.

**Imperative Mood**

Pres. amārē, *be thou loved,*      amāminī, *be ye loved,*

Fut. amātor, *thou shalt be loved;*      amātor, *he shall be loved;*      amantor, *they shall be loved.*

**Infinitive**

Pres. amārī, *to be loved,*

Perf. amātus esse, *to have been loved,*

Fut. amātum irī, *to be about to be loved;*

**Participle**

Perf. amātus, *loved, having been loved,*

Gerundive amandus, *to be loved, deserving to be loved.*

Notice that the entire Imperative, the Present Infinitive, and the Gerundive belong to the Present Stem.

The remaining forms are made with the Participial Stem.

The Perfect Stem is not used in forming any tense of the Passive Voice.

**RULE OF SYNTAX**

**217.** The ablative with **ā** or **ab** is used with a passive verb to denote the one who does the act.

*filia amātur ā mātre, the daughter is loved by the mother.*

**218.****VOCABULARY**

**castellum, ī, n., fort.**

**concordia, ae, f., harmony, agreement.**

**convocō, āre, āvī, ātus, call together.**

**culpa, ae, f., guilt, fault.**

**diligentia, ae, f., diligence.**

**discordia, ae, f., disunion, discord.**

**ēducō, āre, āvī, ātus, bring up, educate.**

**excitō, āre, āvī, ātus, stir up, rouse.**

**existimō, āre, āvī, ātus, think, consider.**

**exitium, ī, n., destruction.**

**expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus, take by storm.**

**ferrum, ī, n., iron, sword.**

**propter, prep. with acc., on account of.**

**statim, at once, immediately.**

**vix, scarcely, with difficulty.**

### EXERCISES

**219.** 1. Convocentur, laudēmur, honōrētur. 2. Excitatus esse, culpandus, parāri. 3. Existimāti, vocatus, superātus esset. 4. Amer, expugnārētur, excitareris. 5. Cōpiae parentur. 6. Tres cohortes summa diligentia parandae sunt. 7. Exitium hāius oppidi vitandum est. 8. Sine auxiliō nostrō castellum nōn expugnātūm esset. 9. Hae legiōnēs ex h̄ibernis convocandae sunt. 10. Concordia in militibus maximē est dēsideranda. 11. Propter discordiam ducum milites nōn convocatī essent. 12. Maxima copia frumentī statim parētur. 13. Intrā unam hōram classes hostium superātæ essent. 14. Caesar nōn dōnabit auxilium quod a Gallis implorābatūr.

**220.** 1. Let it be taken by storm; the soldiers should have been roused. 2. The citizens must be (=are to be) called together at once. 3. Children must be brought up in the best way. 4. The destruction of this army should have been avoided. 5. Without us that citadel would have been seized with difficulty. 6. Without his aid you would have been easily overcome.

## Lesson 38

### SECOND (ē-) CONJUGATION

**221.**

**moneō, I advise**

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.

Pres. Inf.

Perf. Ind.

Perf. Pass. Part.

**monēō**

**monēre**

**monuī**

**monitus**

#### ACTIVE VOICE

#### Indicative Mood

##### PRESENT TENSE

*I advise*

##### IMPERFECT

*I was advising, or I advised*

Singular

Plural

Singular

Plural

**moneō**

**monēmus**

**monēbam**

**monēbāmus**

**monēs**

**monētis**

**monēbās**

**monēbātis**

**monet**

**monent**

**monēbat**

**monēbant**

FUTURE		PERFECT	
<i>I shall or will advise</i>		<i>I have advised, or I advised</i>	
monēbō	monēbimus	monuī	monuimus
monēbis	monēbitis	monuistī	monuistis
monēbit	monēbunt	monuit	monuērunt, or ēre

PLUPERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT	
<i>I had advised</i>		<i>I shall or will have advised</i>	
monueram	monuerāmus	monuero	monuerimus
monuerās	monuerātis	monueris	monueritis
monuerat	monuerant	monuerit	monuerint

## 222.

## VOCABULARY

angustus, a, um, narrow.

dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus, owe; with an infinitive, ought.

deus, i, m., god.

finis, is, m., end, boundary; in pl. territory.

habeō, ēre, uī, itus, have, possess.

maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, remain.

militāris, e, military.

moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, move (transitive).

prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus, keep off, keep away (transitive).

signum, i, n., sign, standard.

superbia, ae, f., haughtiness, pride, insolence.

sustineō, ēre, sustinuī, —— withstand.

timeō, ēre, uī, —— fear.

umbra, ae, f., shadow.

videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, see.

## EXERCISES

223. 1. Habēmus, manēbat, sustinuimus. 2. Debetis, monebitis, mōvisti. 3. Prohibueram, timuerimus, viderant. 4. Gallis auxilium debēmus. 5. Nōs eōsdem amicōs habēmus et habēbimus. 6. Impetum hostium sustinere dēbent. 7. Magnum numerum equitum et peditum prohibuistis. 8. Castra ex eō locō iam mōverant. 9. Locum quam vidēs hostēs occupāvērunt. 10. Illi duces maximam superbiam habent. 11. Hostēs nōn timēbitis. 12. Equitēs signa militāria iam vident. 13. In finēs Helvetiōrum nōndum castra movebīt.

224. 1. They will remain; he did not fear; he had seen you. 2. They have withheld the attack; he fears him; he had kept the enemy off.

3. A god does not fear men. 4. You ought to move the standard from that place. 5. The soldiers will remain on the hill which you see. 6. Who did not see the citadel which the enemy was holding?

## Lesson 39

### SECOND (ē-) CONJUGATION, Continued

**225.** Active Voice of **moneō**, continued.

#### Subjunctive Mood

##### PRESENT

*May I advise, let him advise*

Singular	Plural
moneam	moneāmus
moneās	moneātis
moneat	moneant

##### IMPERFECT

*I should advise, he would advise*

monērem	monērēmus
monērēs	monērētis
monēret	monērent

##### PERFECT

*I may have advised, or I have advised*

monuerim	monuerīmus
monueris	monuerītis
monuerit	monuerint

##### PLUPERFECT

*I should have advised, he would have advised*

monuissēm	monuissēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis
monuisset	monuissent

#### Imperative

*Pres. monē, advise thou,*

*monēte, advise ye,*

*Fut. monētō, thou shalt advise,*

*monētōte, ye shall advise,*

*monētō, he shall advise;*

*monentō, they shall advise.*

Infinitive	Participle
<i>Pres. monēre, to advise,</i>	<i>Pres. monēns, advising,</i>
<i>Perf. monuisse, to have advised,</i>	
<i>Fut. monitūrus esse, to be about to advise;</i>	<i>Fut. monitūrus, about to advise.</i>
Gerund	Supine
<i>Gen. monendī, of advising,</i>	
<i>Dat. monendō, for advising,</i>	
<i>Acc. monendum, advising,</i>	<i>Acc. monitum, to advise,</i>
<i>Abl. monendō, by advising;</i>	<i>Abl. monitū, to advise, be advised.</i>

Note that the various moods and tenses of **moneō** are formed as in the First Conjugation. This is likewise true of the Third and Fourth Conjugations.

226. *aqua, ae, f., water.*  
*doceō, ēre, uī, doctus, teach, show.*  
*doleō, ēre, uī, itus, feel sorry, be pained, grieve.*  
*flōreō, ēre, uī, —— flourish, bloom, thrive.*  
*ludus, i, m., play, game.*  
*morbus, i, m., illness, sickness, disease.*  
*praebeō, ēre, uī, itus, grant, give, offer.*  
*prūdentia, ae, f., prudence.*  
*servō, āre, āvī, ātus, keep, save, preserve.*  
*stultitia, ae, f., folly.*

### EXERCISES

227. 1. Maneāmus, monērem, monuisset. 2. Videatis, timerētis, docuissent. 3. Vidēte, doluisse, praebitūrus esse. 4. Servandō, dolitūrus, praebitum. 5. Nōs omnes liberōs doceāmus. 6. In eō oppidō pulcherrimō flōruisses. 7. Mīlitēs, impetum hostium prohibet! 8. Ludōs in forō praebeant. 9. In castris nōn erat aqua. 10. Interitū exercitū feminae et liberi doluissent. 11. Dei nostri morbōs prohiberent.

228. 1. Let them teach; let the flowers flourish; advise. 2. I should have remained; you would have feared; by remaining. 3. We ought to offer games. 4. We should have kept off the attack of the enemy. 5. Let them move the camp from one place to another. 6. They should have had the same friends and enemies. 7. Who would fear soldiers who are sick with disease!

## Lesson 40

### SECOND (ē-) CONJUGATION, Continued

#### 229. Passive Voice of **moneō**.

**moneor**, *I am advised*

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.

**moneor**

Pres. Inf.

**monēri**

Perf. Ind.

**monitus sum**

#### Indicative Mood

##### PRESENT TENSE

*I am advised*

**moneor**

**monēris, or re**

**monētur**

**monēmur**

**monēminī**

**monentur**

##### IMPERFECT

*I was advised*

**monēbar**

**monēbāris, or re**

**monēbātur**

**monēbāmur**

**monēbāminī**

**monēbāntur**

##### FUTURE

*I shall or will be advised*

**monēbor**

**monēberis, or re**

**monēbitur**

**monēbimur**

**monēbiminī**

**monēbuntur**

##### PERFECT

*I have been advised, I was advised*

**monitus**

**monitus es**

**monitus est**

**monitī sumus**

**monitī estis**

**monitī sunt**

##### PLUPERFECT

*I had been advised*

**monitus eram**

**monitus erās**

**monitus erat**

**monitī erāmus**

**monitī erātis**

**monitī erant**

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall or will have been advised*

<b>monitus erō</b>	<b>monitū erimus</b>
<b>monitus eris</b>	<b>monitū eritis</b>
<b>monitus erit</b>	<b>monitū erunt</b>

## 230. VOCABULARY

**admodum**, *quite, very much.***aequus**, *a, um, level.***apertus**, *a, um, open.***augeō**, *ēre, auxī, auctus, increase.***barbarus**, *a, um, barbarian, as a noun, m., a barbarian.***celeriter**, *quickly.***compleō**, *ēre, ēvī, ētus, fill up.***contineō**, *ēre, uī, —— confine.***imber**, *imbris, m., rainstorm.***perterreō**, *ēre, uī, itus, terrify.***teneō**, *ēre, uī, tentus, hold.*

## EXERCISES

- 231.** 1. Augētur, continebantur, perterrentur. 2. Perterriti, erant, complebātur, praebitum est. 3. Docebāris, prohibitus erās, sustinēberis. 4. Visae erant, perterriti erunt, visa est. 5. Barbari exercitū Caesaris perterriti sunt. 6. Morbi in castris maximē augēbantur. 7. Mīlites in castellis imbribus continentur. 8. Loca aequa et aperta a Rōmānis tenēbantur. 9. Incolae hāius oppidi multis proeliis perterriti erant. 10. Timōrēs servōrum augēbuntur. 11. Fossae in agrō statim complebuntur. 12. In illā silvā perterrebāmini.

- 232.** 1. We are seen; he was advised; they have been frightened. 2. You will be taught; we had been kept off; the camp was moved. 3. They will be shown; you were kept off; it had been sustained. 4. The trenches of the enemy have already been filled by our soldiers. 5. The onset of the barbarians will be checked. 6. The general's resources were increased. 7. In the forest of that island you will be greatly terrified.

## REVIEW

- 233.** 1. In illō oppidō septem legiōnēs erunt. 2. Vōs omnes in Italia fūstis. 3. Multī hominēs, qui erunt in castrī minōribus, labōrabunt. 4. Ex illō oppidō sine periculō migrāvissēmus. 5. Adventum tuum omnēs exspectabunt. 6. Tum magnae classes summā celeritate parābuntur.

7. Copiae summa diligentia paranda sunt. 8. Hostes signa militaria non videbant. 9. In hoc oppido, quod Romani occupaverunt, maneamus.  
 10. Milites in castris imbribus continebantur.

## Lesson 41

### SECOND (-ē) CONJUGATION, Continued

**234.** Passive Voice of **moneō**, continued.

#### Subjunctive Mood

##### PRESENT

*May I be advised, let him be advised*

Singular	Plural
monear	moneāmur
moneāris, or re	moneāminī
moneātur	moneantur

##### IMPERFECT

*I should be advised, he would be advised*

monērer	monērēmur
monērēris, or re	monērēminī
monērētur	monērentur

##### PERFECT

*I may have been advised, or I have been advised*

monitus sim	moniti sīmus
monitus sis	moniti sītis
monitus sit	moniti sint

##### PLUPERFECT

*I should have been advised, he would have been advised*

monitus essem	moniti essēmus
monitus essēs	moniti essētis
monitus esset	moniti essent

##### Imperative

*Pres. monēre, be thou advised, monēminī, be ye advised,*

*Fut. monētor, thou shall be ad-*

*vised,*

*monētor, he shall be advised; monentor, they shall be advised.*

Infinitive	Participle
<i>Pres.</i> monērī, <i>to be advised,</i>	
<i>Perf.</i> monitus esse, <i>to have been advised,</i>	<i>Perf.</i> monitus, <i>advised,</i>
<i>Fut.</i> monitum irī, <i>to be about to be advised;</i>	<i>Ger.</i> monendus, <i>to be advised, deserving to be advised.</i>

## 235.

## VOCABULARY

- aestas, ātis, f., *summer.*  
 aēstus, ūs, m., *heat.*  
 aetas, ātis, f., *life, age.*  
 deleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus, *destroy.*  
 forma, ae, f., *appearance.*  
 fulgor, oris, m., *brightness, lightning.*  
 īra, ae, f., *anger.*  
 lateō, ēre, uī, —— *lurk, be hidden.*  
 lūceō, ēre, lūxi, —— *shine.*  
 nātūra, ae, f., *nature.*  
 suspicio, ūnis, f., *suspicion.*  
 videor, ēri, vīsus sum (*passive of video*), *be seen, seem.*

## EXERCISES

236. 1. Lateatur, monerēris, completum esse. 2. Augēri, móitus sit, dēlētum esset. 3. Prohibitum irī, timendus, continerentur. 4. Doctus esses, delerētur, latuissēmus. 5. Illi latrōnes latēre videntur. 6. Duces statim moneantur. 7. Suspicioñes imperatōris multis rēbus auctae essent. 8. Hōc oppidum a Rōmānis dēlētum esse videtur. 9. Timōres nostri propter illud nōn augērentur. 10. In Italia aestus aestatis est maximus. 11. Lūna magnō fulgōre lūcet. 12. Propter haec tra ducis aucta esset. 13. Loca aperta a equitibus tenta essent.

237. 1. They seem to be hiding; let the place be filled up. 2. To have been destroyed; it would have been destroyed; to seem. 3. They would be terrified; we should be kept off. 4. The fears of the people would have been greatly increased. 5. The ditch seems to have been filled up by boys. 6. You would have been pained greatly by many things. 7. The attack of the barbarians should be withstood bravely.

## Lesson 42

### THIRD (CONSONANT) CONJUGATION

**238.**

*regō, I rule*

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.

**regō**

Pres. Inf.

**regere**

Perf. Ind.

**rēxi**

Perf. Pass. Part.

**rēctus**

#### ACTIVE VOICE

#### Indicative Mood

##### PRESENT TENSE

*I rule*

Singular

**regō**

Plural

**regimus**

##### IMPERFECT

*I was ruling, or I ruled*

Singular

**regēbam**

Plural

**regēbāmus**

**regis**

**regitis**

**regit**

**regēbās**

**regēbat**

**regēbātis**

**regēbant**

##### FUTURE

*I shall or will rule*

**regam**

**regēs**

**reget**

**regēmus**

**regētis**

**regent**

##### PERFECT

*I have ruled, or I ruled*

**rēxi**

**rēxistī**

**rēxit**

**rēximus**

**rēxistis**

**rēxerunt, or ēre**

##### PLUPERFECT

*I had ruled*

**rēxeram**

**rēxerās**

**rēxerat**

**rēxerāmus**

**rēxerātis**

**rēxerant**

##### FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall or will have ruled*

**rēxerō**

**rēxeris**

**rēxerit**

**rēxerimus**

**rēxeritis**

**rēxerint**

#### Subjunctive Mood

*May I rule, let him rule*

##### PRESENT

Singular

**regam**

**regās**

**regat**

Plural

**regāmus**

**regātis**

**regant**

## IMPERFECT

*I should rule, he would rule*

regerem	regerēmus
regerēs	regerētis
regeret	regerent

## PERFECT

*I may have ruled, or I have ruled*

rēxerini	rēxerīmus
rēxeris	rēxerītis
rēxerit	rēxerint

## PLUPERFECT

*I should have ruled, he would have ruled*

rēxissem	rēxissemus
rēxisſēs	rēxisſētis
rēxisset	rēxisſent

## Imperative

Pres. rege, rule thou;	regite, rule ye,
Fut. regitō, thou shall rule,	regitōte, ye shall rule,
regito, he shall rule;	reguntō, they shall rule.

## Infinitive

## Participle

Pres. regere, to rule,	Pres. regēns, ruling,
Perf. rēxisse, to have ruled,	
Fut. rectūrus esse, to be about to rule;	Fut. rectūrus, about to rule.

## Gerund

## Supine

Gen. regendī, of ruling,	
Dat. regendō, for ruling,	
Acc. regendum, ruling,	Acc. rectum, to rule,
Abl. regendō, by ruling;	Abl. rectū, to rule, be ruled.

## 239.

## VOCABULARY

- auxilia, órum, n. pl. auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.  
 divitiae, árum, f. plu. riches, wealth.  
 fāma, ae, f., report, reputation, fame.  
 grātia, ae, f., grace, favor, thanks.  
 Hispānia, ae, f., Spain.  
 in, into, prep. with acc.

- īnstruō, ere, ūxī, ūctus, draw up, arrange.**  
**iter, itineris, n., journey, march.**  
**litterae, ārum, f., a letter.**  
**mitto, ere, mīsī, missus, send.**  
**omnīnō, adv., altogether; in all.**  
**pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, put, place, establish.**  
**praesidium, ī, n., garrison.**  
**prōvincia, ae, f., province.**  
**redūcō, ere, dūxī, dūctus, lead back.**  
**relinquō, ere, līquī, līctus, leave behind.**

### EXERCISES

**240.** 1. Regēbant, Instruēbat, mittunt. 2. Pōnent, redūximus, relinquēns. 3. Posuimus, rēxerat, pōnant. 4. Mīsisset, posuissēs, relictūrus. 5. Redūcite, regendō, pōneret. 6. Litterās ad Caesarem mīserunt. 7. Legāti, milites in prōvinciam redūcite. 8. Auxilia in Hispāniā Citeriōrem (*i. e.*, Spain north of the river Ebro) statim mittet. 9. Cōsules legiōnes in mediā plānitie Instrūxerunt. 10. Erant omnīnō itinera duo inter montem et flūmen. 11. In eō locō auxilia relinquet. 12. In oppidō praesidium reliquisset. 13. Ad cōsulēm auxilia redūxissemus. 14. Lēgātōs ad senātūm cum divitiis mittant. 15. Hoc itinere ad rīpam flūminis milites reducat.

**241.** 1. He was ruling; he arranged the troops; he will send a messenger. 2. Let him place the standard; we will lead back the auxiliaries. 3. We left them in the town; he would have ruled. 4. Let us send our thanks to that country. 5. We should leave both cavalry and foot-soldiers in the province. 6. By ruling well a king holds the favor of the people. 7. Consuls, send your legions into Spain at once. 8. The leader seems to have drawn his troops up in the open plain.

## Lesson 43

### THIRD (CONSONANT) CONJUGATION, Continued

**242.** Passive Voice of **regō**.

**regor, I am ruled**

### PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.  
**regor**

Pres. Inf.  
**regī**

Perf. Ind.  
**rēctus sum**

## Indicative Mood

PRESENT TENSE		IMPERFECT	
<i>I am ruled</i>		<i>I was ruled</i>	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
regor	regimur	regēbar	regēbāmur
regeris, or re	regimini	regēbāris, or re	regēbāmini
regitur -	reguntur	regēbātur	regēbantur
FUTURE		PERFECT	
<i>I shall or will be ruled</i>		<i>I have been ruled, or I was ruled</i>	
regar	regēmur	rēctus sum	rēcti sumus
regeris, or re	regēmini	rēctus es	rēcti estis
regētūr	regentur	rēctus est	rēcti sunt
PLUPERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT	
<i>I had been ruled</i>		<i>I shall or will have been ruled</i>	
rēctus eram	rēcti erāmus	rēctus erō	rēcti erimus
rēctus erās	rēcti erātis	rēctus eris	rēcti eritis
rēctus erat	rēcti erant	rēctus erī	rēcti erunt

## 243.

## VOCABULARY

**committō, ere, mīsī, missus,** bring together; with proelium, join battle.

**cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus,** decide, determine.

**contendo, ere, tendī, tentum,** hurry, hasten.

**defendō, ere, fendi, fensus,** defend.

**gerō, ere, gessī, gestus,** carry on, perform; with bellum, wage.

**hic, here, at this place.**

**ignōminia, ae, f.,** disgrace, infamy.

**parṣimōnia, ae, f.,** economy.

**poena, ae, f.,** punishment, penalty.

**status, ae, f.,** statute.

**superior, ius,** higher.

**trādō, ere, didi, ditus,** hand over.

## EXERCISES

- 244.** 1. Relinquer, defendetur, reducēbar. 2. Gestum est, trāditum erat, positum erit. 3. Relinqueris, mittebāmur, reducēmini. 4. Mitte-mur, bellum gerētur, reducti sunt. 5. Proelium statim committētur. 6. Intereā duo oppida fortiter défendēbantur. 7. Hic proelium gestum

est quō omnis terra superāta est. 8. Rōmānī castellum dēfendere cōstituerunt. 9. Statua parva virō trādita erat. 10. Poena erat maxima et iustissima. 11. In locis superiōribus peditēs instruentur.

**245.** 1. Battle will be joined; he will hasten; hostages had been sent. 2. The citadel was defended; you will be led back; we will be left behind. 3. The sons of the leaders will be handed over as hostages. 4. They have decided to hasten to that town which is being bravely defended. 5. You with two cohorts will be left behind in the smaller camp. 6. Many wars have been waged bravely by the Roman people. 7. The generals had already decided to join battle. 8. The arms had been handed over by the enemy.

## Lesson 44

### THIRD (CONSONANT) CONJUGATION, Continued

**246.** Passive Voice of **regō**, continued.

#### Subjunctive Mood

##### PRESENT

*May I be ruled, let him be ruled*

Singular	Plural
regar	regāmur
regāris, or re	regāminī
regātūr	regantur

##### IMPERFECT

*I should be ruled, he would be ruled*

regerer	regerēmur
regerēris, or re	regerēminī
regerētūr	regerentur

##### PERFECT

*I may have been ruled, or I have been ruled*

rēctus sim	rēctī sīmus
rēctus sīs	rēctī sītis
rēctus sit	rēctī sint

##### PLUPERFECT

*I should have been ruled, he would have been ruled*

rēctus essem	rēctī essēmus
rēctus essēs	rēctī essētis
rēctus esset	rēctī essent

**Imperative**

*Pres. regere, be thou ruled,*      *regimini, be ye ruled,*  
*Fut. rēgitor, thou shalt be ruled,*      *rēguntor, they shall be ruled.*

**Infinitive**

*Pres. regī, to be ruled,*  
*Perf. rēctus esse, to have been  
ruled,*  
*Fut. rēctum irī, to be about to be  
ruled.*

**Participle**

*Perf. rēctus, ruled,*

*Ger. regendus, to be ruled, de-  
serving to be ruled.*

**247.****VOCABULARY**

**cōgō, ere, cōēgi, coāctus, force, compel.**  
**contrā, against, prep. with acc.**  
**dēdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, lead away.**  
**dūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, lead.**  
**expeditus, a, um, unencumbered, light-armed.**  
**incendō, ere, cendī, census, set on fire.**  
**instruō, ere, strūxi, strūctus, fit out.**  
**mūnitiō, ūnis, f., fortification.**  
**pigritia, ae, f., sluggishness, laziness, idleness.**  
**quā, where.**  
**spectō, āre, āvī, ātus, behold, see.**

**EXERCISES**

- 248.** 1. Deducātur, ducti essent, incensum esse. 2. Bellum gere-  
 rētur, proelium commissum esset. 3. Relinquerēmur, coācti essēmus,  
 traditi essētis. 4. Regendus, ductum irī, relinquitor. 5. Nāvēs à Caesare  
 melius instrūctae essent. 6. Aedificia statim incensa essent. 7. Mīlites  
 expediti ad oppidum oppugnātūm mittantur. 8. Omnia relinquere, quā  
 erant, coācti essētis. 9. Caesar pigritiā mīlitum impetum relinquere  
 coāctus est. 10. Tres legiōnēs expeditae in Galliam contra hostes ducantur.  
 11. In locis superiōribus proelium commissum esset.

- 249.** 1. Let the battle be joined; light-armed soldiers should have  
 been sent. 2. You would not have been given over as hostages; wars  
 would not be waged. 3. You would be forced to draw up the battle line.  
 4. Let the buildings, where the soldiers are, not be set on fire. 5. A  
 garrison would have been left in the fortification. 6. Because of the dis-  
 grace of the army we should have been forced to lead the army away. 7.  
 Let ten ships be fitted out at once with all things.

## Lesson 45

### FOURTH (i-) CONJUGATION

**250.** *audiō, I hear.*

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Pass. Partic.
<b>audiō</b>	<b>audire</b>	<b>audiū</b>	<b>auditus</b>

#### ACTIVE VOICE

#### Indicative Mood

##### PRESENT TENSE

*I hear*

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
<b>audiō</b>	<b>audiūmus</b>	<b>audiēbam</b>	<b>audiēbāmus</b>
<b>audiſ</b>	<b>audiētis</b>	<b>audiēbās</b>	<b>audiēbātis</b>
<b>audit</b>	<b>audiēunt</b>	<b>audiēbat</b>	<b>audiēbant</b>

##### FUTURE

*I shall or will hear*

<b>audiam</b>	<b>audiēmus</b>	<b>audiū</b>	<b>audiūmus</b>
<b>audiēs</b>	<b>audiētis</b>	<b>audiūstī</b>	<b>audiūstis</b>
<b>audiet</b>	<b>audiēnt</b>	<b>audiūvit</b>	<b>audiūvērunt, or ēre</b>

##### PLUPERFECT

*I had heard*

<b>audiveram</b>	<b>audiyerāmus</b>	<b>audiverō</b>	<b>audiverīmus</b>
<b>audiverās</b>	<b>audiyerātis</b>	<b>audiverās</b>	<b>audiyerātis</b>
<b>audiverat</b>	<b>audiyerant</b>	<b>audiverit</b>	<b>audiyerint</b>

#### Subjunctive Mood

##### PRESENT

*May I hear, let him hear*

Singular	Plural
<b>audiam</b>	<b>audiāmus</b>
<b>audiās</b>	<b>audiātis</b>
<b>audiat</b>	<b>audiānt</b>

##### IMPERFECT

*I should hear, he would hear*

<b>audirem</b>	<b>audiēmus</b>
<b>audiēs</b>	<b>audiētis</b>
<b>audiret</b>	<b>audiērent</b>

## PERFECT

*I may have heard, or I have heard*

audiverim	audiverimus
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit	audiverint

## PLUPERFECT

*I should have heard, he would have heard*

audivissem	audivissēmus
audivissēs	audivissētis
audivisset	audivissent

## Imperative

Pres. audi, hear thou,	audite, hear ye,
Fut. auditō, thou shalt hear,	auditōte, ye shall hear,
auditō, he shall hear;	audiuntō, they shall hear.

## Infinitive

Pres. audiēre, to hear,	Participle
Perf. audivisse, to have heard,	Pres. audiēns, hearing.

Fut. auditūrus esse, to be about to hear;	Fut. auditūrus, about to hear.
--	--------------------------------

## Gerund

## Supine

Gen. audiendī, of hearing,	
Dat. audiendō, for hearing,	
Acc. audiendum, hearing,	Acc. auditum, to hear,
Abl. audiendō, by hearing;	Abl. auditū, to hear, be heard.

## 251.

## VOCABULARY

- conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, come together.  
eōdem, adv., to the same place.  
ferē, almost, about, practically.  
impediō, īre, īvī (īlī), itus, impede, hinder.  
litterae, f. pl., literature.  
luxūria, ae, f., extravagance, luxury.  
mora, ae, f., delay.  
mūniō, īre, īvī, itus, fortify.  
musa, ae, f., muse (goddess).  
occāsiō, ḫnis, f., occasion, opportunity.  
reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus, discover.  
talis, e, such.  
tristitia, ae, f., sadness, grief.

**undique**, adv., from all parts or sides.

**vallum**, *i*, n., rampart, intrenchment.

**veniō, ire, vēni, ventum, come.**

**vestimentum, i**, n., garment.

### EXERCISES

- 252.** 1. Veniat, repperimus, mūniverunt. 2. Venerat, convenisse, mūniendō. 3. Impedietis, venite, mūniverās. 3. Muniēbatis, audiūsēmus, veniret. 5. Veniēdī, impedivissent, veniāmus. 6. Legiōnes mortis maximis nōndum convēnerunt. 7. Ferē omnēs principes ad concilium vēnissent. 8. Illōs nūntiōs qui eōdem convēnerunt audiāmus. 9. Galli occāsiōnēm nōn facile repperissent. 10. Talis mora milites Rōmānōs nōn impediūsset. 11. Omnia castella omnibus rēbus statim mūnīte. 12. E luxuriā maximā semper tristitia venit. 13. Castra vallō fossaque mūniant. 14. Vestimenta cōnsulū Rōmānōrum sunt pulcherrima. 15. Reliquas legiōnēs quae imbribus impediuntur exspectēmus.

- 253.** 1. They have fortified; he would have hindered; he discovers. 2. We were assembling; you will hear; let her come. 3. We should have found; he would come; by impeding. 4. The enemy came from all sides to the same place. 5. The muse of literature does not like riches and extravagance. 6. You would have found an opportunity easily in that place. 7. The cavalry will hinder the march of the enemy's army. 8. Let us listen to the report of the battle which the messenger is announcing.

## Lesson 46

### FOURTH (i-) CONJUGATION, Continued

- 254.** Passive Voice of **audiō**.

**audior**, *I am heard.*

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.

**audior**

Pres. Inf.

**audiri**

Perf. Ind.

**auditus sum**

#### Indicative Mood

##### PRESENT TENSE

*I am heard*

##### IMPERFECT

*I was heard*

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
<b>audior</b>	<b>audīmur</b>	<b>audiēbar</b>	<b>audiēbāmur</b>
<b>audīris, or re</b>	<b>audīmīnī</b>	<b>audiēbāris, or re</b>	<b>audiēbāmīnī</b>
<b>audītur</b>	<b>audiuntur</b>	<b>audiēbātūr</b>	<b>audiēbāntūr</b>

## FUTURE

<i>I shall or will be heard</i>	
audiār	audiēmūr
audiērīs, or re	audiēmīnī
audiētūr	audientur

## PERFECT

<i>I have been heard, or I was heard</i>	
auditūs sum	auditī sumus
auditūs es	auditī estis
auditūs est	auditī sunt

## PLUPERFECT

<i>I had been heard</i>	
auditūs erām	auditī erāmūs
auditūs erās	auditī erātīs
auditūs erat	auditī erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

<i>I shall or will have been heard</i>	
auditūs ero	auditī erimus
auditūs eris	auditī eritis
auditūs erit	auditī erunt

## Subjunctive Mood

## PRESENT

*May I be heard, let him be heard*

Singular	Plural
audiār	audiāmūr
audiērīs, or re	audiāmīnī
audiātūr	audiāntur

## IMPERFECT

<i>I should be heard, he would be heard</i>	
audirēr	audirēmūr
audirērīs, or re	audirēmīnī
audirētūr	audirēntur

## PERFECT

*I may have been heard, or I have been heard*

auditūs sim	auditī sīmūs
auditūs sis	auditī sītīs
auditūs sit	auditī sint

## PLUPERFECT

<i>I should have been heard, he would have been heard</i>	
auditūs essem	auditī essēmūs
auditūs essēs	auditī essētīs
auditūs esset	auditī essent

## Imperative

<i>Pres. audire, be thou heard,</i>	audiāmīnī, be ye heard,
<i>Fut. auditor, thou shalt be heard,</i>	<i>audiuntor, they shall be heard.</i>

Infinitive	Participle
<i>Pres. audīrī, to be heard,</i>	
<i>Perf. auditus esse, to have been heard,</i>	<i>Perf. auditus, heard,</i>
<i>Fut. auditum īrī, to be about to be heard;</i>	<i>Ger. audiendus, to be heard, de- serving to be heard.</i>

## 255.

## VOCABULARY

- angustiae, ārum,** f. pl., *a narrow pass.*  
**augur, is,** m. and f., *augur, soothsayer.*  
**circumveniō, īre, vēni, ventus,** *surround.*  
**comēs, comitis,** m. and f., *companion, comrade.*  
**extrā,** prep. with acc., *outside, beyond.*  
**idōneus, a, um,** *suitable.*  
**inveniō, īre, vēni, ventus,** *find, come upon.*  
**mox,** *soon.*  
**nihil,** indecl. n., *nothing.*  
**paene,** *almost, nearly.*  
**praeco, ūnis,** m., *crier, herald.*  
**prōcurrō, ere, cucurri, cursum,** *run forward.*  
**pulvis, pulveris,** m., *dust.*  
**refugium, i,** n., *refuge.*  
**regiō, ūnis,** f., *region.*

## EXERCISES

**256.** 1. Auditur, circumventum est, impedimur. 2. Inveniēbatur, impeditus erat, inventus esse. 3. Urbs mūnita erat, mūsa circumventa est, auditum īrī. 4. Reperiētur, circumventum esset, impedianter. 5. Inveniētur, audiāmur, inventi essetis. 6. Locus idoneus mox inveniētur. 7. Comes hāius pueri quem vidēs repertus est. 8. Castra maiōra magnis operibus mūnibantur. 9. Hostēs angustiis in montibus impediēntur. 10. Nihil de augure auditum erat. 11. Paene omnēs legati qui erant extra castra prōcucurrerunt. 12. Oppidum in colle altō mūniendum est. 13. Castellum fossa et vallō mūniātur. 14. Refugium statim inventum esset. 15. In illa insula a barbaris circumveniēris.

**257.** 1. Let us run forward; let us not be hindered; they are being heard. 2. It was surrounded; you were found; they had been heard. 3. It would be fortified; they would have been impeded; she had been found. 4. To be heard; having been found; to be about to be surrounded. 5. We were hindered especially by the narrow passes. 6. The Roman

legion would have been surrounded in the forest. 7. The heralds ran forward in the dust. 8. A suitable place in that region ought to be fortified.

## Lesson 47

### VERBS IN (-iō) OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

**258.** A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the present indicative in **iō**, **ior**, like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. They are inflected with the endings of the Fourth Conjugation, wherever those endings have two successive vowels. This occurs only in the Present System.

**Capiō, I take**

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind. <b>capiō</b>	Pres. Inf. <b>capere</b>	Perf. Ind. <b>cēpī</b>	Perf. Pass. Partic. <b>captus</b>
----------------------------	-----------------------------	---------------------------	--------------------------------------

#### ACTIVE VOICE

#### Indicative Mood

##### PRESENT TENSE

Singular <b>capiō, capis, capit;</b>	Plural <b>capimus, capitis, capiunt.</b>
---	---

##### IMPERFECT

<b>capiēbam, -iēbās, -iēbat;</b>	<b>capiēbāmus, -iēbātis, -iēbant.</b>
----------------------------------	---------------------------------------

##### FUTURE

<b>capiam, -iēs, -iet;</b>	<b>capiēmus, -iētis, -ient.</b>
----------------------------	---------------------------------

##### PERFECT

<b>cēpī, -istī, -it;</b>	<b>cēpimus, -istis, -ērunt, or ēre.</b>
--------------------------	---

##### PLUPERFECT

<b>cēperam, -erās, -erat;</b>	<b>cēperāmus, -erātis, -erant.</b>
-------------------------------	------------------------------------

##### FUTURE PERFECT

<b>cēperō, -eris, -erit;</b>	<b>cēperimus, -eritis, -erint.</b>
------------------------------	------------------------------------

#### Subjunctive Mood

##### PRESENT

<b>capiam, -iās, -iat;</b>	<b>capiāmus, -iātis, -iant.</b>
----------------------------	---------------------------------

## IMPERFECT

caperem, -erēs, -eret; caperēmus, -erētis, -erent.

## PERFECT

cēperim, -erīs, -erit; cēperīmus, -erītis, -erint.

## PLUPERFECT

cēpissem, -issēs, -isset; cēpissēmus, -issētis, -issent.

## Imperative Mood

## Singular

*Pres.* cape;

*Fut.* capitō,  
capitō;

## Infinitive

*Pres.* capere

*Perf.* cēpisse

*Fut.* captūrus esse

## Gerund

*Gen.* capiendī

*Dat.* capiendō

*Acc.* capiendum

*Abl.* capiendō

## Plural

capite.

capitōte,  
capiuntō.

## Participle

*Pres.* capiens

*Fut.* captūrus

## Supine

*Acc.* captum

*Abl.* captū

## 259.

## VOCABULARY

acciō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, receive.

capiō, ere, cēpī, captus, take, adopt, capture.

carpō, ere, carpsī, carptum, pluck, pick.

certē, surely.

constantia, ae, f., firmness, fortitude.

contemnō, ere, contemp̄sī, contemptum, disregard, despise.

dīripiō, ere, ripuī, reptus, plunder.

faciō, ere, fēcī, factus, make, do.

fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, flee.

interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, kill.

iungō, ere, iunxi, iunctum, join; foedus iungō, form an alliance;  
amīicitiam iungō, make friendship.

libertās, tātis, f.; liberty.

maiōrēs, um, m. pl., ancestors.

mandātum, ī, m., command, order.

## EXERCISES

**260.** 1. Accipit, capiebat, fecit. 2. Capiamus, fugeret, fugit. 3. Accipis; fugisti, capiendō. 4. Cepisses, fugerēmus, captūrus. 5. Multos flōres in silva carpsit. 6. Cum Gallis foedus iunxit. 7. Cum omnibus gentibus Galliae amicitiam nōn iungit. 8. Caesar in hostes rārsus subitō impetum faciet. 9. Barbari undique agrōs dīripuerunt. 10. Captivi in castris fūgissent. 11. Maiōres nostri libertatem semper amabant et servabant. 12. Imperātor pācem contempsit et multos interfecit. 13. Ad milites nostrōs fugiamus. 14. Mandata hūius hominis contemnere debemus. 15. Hostes in sīlam fūgissent. 16. Ex hōc oppidō magnam cōpiam frūmenti dīripuimus.

**261.** 1. Let us take; he was fleeing; they have received. 2. Let him take; he is fleeing; you are being received. 3. Let them plunder; you would have fled; she would take. 4. Let us form an alliance with many peoples. 5. The enemy would surely plunder the larger camp. 6. The Roman army has taken many captives. 7. We have received the commands of the leader. 8. She would have done many better things.

## Lesson 48

## VERBS IN (-iō) OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION, Continued

**262.** Passive Voice of **capiō**.**capior, I am taken**

## PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.

Pres. Inf.

Perf. Ind.

**capior****capi****captus sum**

## Indicative Mood

## PRESENT TENSE

Singular

Plural

**capior, caperis, capitur;****capimur, capimini, capiuntur.**

## IMPERFECT

**capiēbar, -iēbāris, -iēbātūr;****capiēbāmūr, -iēbāmīnī, iēbāntūr.**

## FUTURE

**capiar, iēris, -iētūr;****capiēmur, -iēmīnī, -ientūr.**

## PERFECT

**captus sum, es, est;****captī, sumus, estis, sunt.**

## PLUPERFECT

**captus eram, erās, erat;**      **captī erāmus, erātis, erant.**

## FUTURE PERFECT

**captus erō, eris, erit;**      **captā erimus, eritis, erunt.**

## Imperative Mood

## PRESENT

Singular

Plural

**capiar, -iāris, iātur;**      **capiāmur, -iāminī, -iantur.**

## IMPERFECT

**caperer, erēris, -erētur;**      **caperēmur, -erēminī, -erentur.**

## PERFECT

**captus sim, sīs, sit;**      **captī sīmus, sītis, sint.**

## PLUPERFECT

**captus essem, essēs, esset;**      **captī essēmus, essētis, essent.**

## Imperative Mood

*Pres.* **capere;**

**capimini.**

*Fut.* **capitor,**

**capitor;**

**capiuntor.**

## Infinitive

## Participle

*Pres.* **capī.**

*Perf.* **captus esse.**

*Perf.* **captus.**

*Fut.* **captum irī.**

*Ger.* **capiendus.**

## 263.

## VOCABULARY

**modestia, ae, f., moderation, modesty.**

**nātiō, ūnis, f., nation, tribe.**

**palūs, lūdis, f., marsh.**

**pōns, pontis, m., bridge.**

**rūrsus, again.**

**sapientia, ae, f., wisdom.**

**transfuga, ae, m., deserter.**

**Tullia, ae, f., Tullia, a woman's name.**

## EXERCISES

264. 1. Dīripiuntur, caperis, acceptus est. 2. Interficiēbantur, accipiebār, acciperis. 3. Captī essent, dīripuisse, capiar. 4. Accepti erātis, interficti essēmus, capiēmur. 5. In eō locō hostēs pontem fēcerant.

6. Mīlites subitō interfici essent. 7. Transfugae rūrsus capientur.  
 8. Ex illō oppidō maximum numerum iūmentōrum dīripiēbatur. 9.  
 Principes multarum natiōnum in palūdibus capti sunt. 10. Libertas a  
 maiōribus nostris accepta est. 11. Omnes transfugae interfici dēbent.  
 12. Tullia, filia rēgis, capta erat. 13. In eō flūmine pōns subitō factus  
 esset. 14. Haec mandata et nōn illa a mīlitibus accepta sunt. 15.  
 Aliud cōsilium subitō capiatur.

**265.** 1. You were plundered; they had been captured; she will be received.  
 2. Let them be taken; they are being plundered; you will be killed.  
 3. We will be received; he would have been killed; let me be captured.  
 4. The deserters should have been killed. 5. Many women and children of the enemy have been captured. 6. The lieutenant's camp would have been plundered by the enemy. 7. The envoys of many kings are being received by the general. 8. Your commands were not received by us.

## Lesson 49

### DEPONENT VERBS

**266.** Certain verbs, called Deponent, have, in the main, Passive forms with Active meaning.

In addition to the passive forms, they have the following Active forms: Future Infinitive, Present and Future Participle, Gerund and Supine.

The Gerundive always, the Perfect Passive Participle sometimes, have Passive meanings. Thus **sequendus**, *to be followed*; **adeptus**, *having been attained*.

These forms of deponent verbs are regular in their formation, and are classified in four conjugations, like regular verbs. The principal parts are:

	I. Conjugation	
<b>hortor</b>	<b>hortārī</b>	<b>hortātus sum</b>
	II. Conjugation	
<b>vereor</b>	<b>verērī</b>	<b>veritus sum</b>
	III. Conjugation	
<b>sequor</b>	<b>sequī</b>	<b>secūtus sum</b>
	IV. Conjugation	
<b>potior</b>	<b>potīrī</b>	<b>potītus sum</b>
	V. Conjugation (in -ior)	
<b>patior</b>	<b>patī</b>	<b>passus sum</b>

## Indicative Mood

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	III. (in -ior)
Pres.	mīror	vereor	sequor	largior	patior
	mīrāris	verēris	sequeris	largīris	pateris
	mīrātur	verētur	sequitur	largītur	patitur
	mīrāmur	verēmur	sequimur	largīmūr	patimur
	mīrāminī	verēminī	sequimini	largīminī	patimini
	mirantur	verēntur	sequuntur	largiuntur	patiuntur
Impf.	mīrābar	verēbar	sequēbar	largiēbar	patiēbar
Fut.	mīrābor	verēbor	sequar	largiar	patiar
Perf.	mīrātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	largītus sum	passus sum
Plup.	mīrātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	largītus eram	passus eram
F. P.	mīrātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	largītus erō	passus erō

## Subjunctive

Pres.	mīrer	verear	sequar	largiar	patiar
Impf.	mīrārer	verērer	sequerer	largiērer	paterer
Perf.	mīrātus sim	veritus sum	secūtus sim	largītus sim	passus sim
Plup.	mīrātus	veritus	secūtus	largītus	passus
	essem	essem	essem	essem	essem

## Imperative

Pres.	mīrāre	verēre	sequere	largire	patere
Fut.	mīrātor	verētor	sequitor	largītor	patitor

## Infinitive

Pres.	mīrāri	verēri	sequi	largīri	pati
Perf.	mīrātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	largītus esse	passus esse
Fut.	mīrātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	largītūrus	passūrus
	esse	esse	esse	esse	esse

## Participles

Pres.	mīrāns	verēns	sequēns	largiēns	patiēns
Fut.	mīrātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	largītūrus	passūrus
Perf.	mīrātus	veritus	secūtus	largītus	passus
Ger.	mīrandus	verendus	sequendus	largiendus	patiendus

## Gerund

mīrandī	verendī	sequendī	largiendī	patiendī
mīrandō, etc.	verendō, etc.	sequendō, etc.	largiendō, etc.	patiendō, etc.

## Supine

mīrātūm, -tū	veritūm, -tū	secūtūm, -tū	largītūm, -tū	passūm, -sū
--------------	--------------	--------------	---------------	-------------

## 267.

## Vocabulary

- adorior, oriri, ortus sum,** attack.  
**audeō, ēre, ausus sum,** dare.<sup>1</sup>  
**colloquor, i, locūtus sum,** converse, confer.  
**cōnor, āri, ātus sum,** endeavor, attempt.  
**ēgredior, i, gressus sum,** march out.  
**excidium, i, n.,** destruction.  
**iam,** adv., now, already; **non iam,** no more, no longer.  
**insidiae, ārum, f. pl.,** ambush, plot.  
**moror, āri, ātus sum,** tarry, delay.  
**nēmō, m.,** no one, dat., nemini, acc. **nēminem;** gen. and abl. not used.  
**paulum, adv.,** a little.  
**proficiſcor, i, fectus sum,** set out.  
**prōgredior, i, gressus sum,** advance, go forward.  
**resistō, ere, restiti, resist.**  
**revertor, i, reversus sum,** return.  
**Rhodanus, i, m.,** the Rhone.

## EXERCISES

- 268.** 1. Adoriēmur, audēbit, adortus est. 2. Ausi sunt, morāmur, cōnābar. 3. Collocāti erāmus, prōgressus es, colloquantur. 4. Morāta esset, ēgrederis, revertendō. 5. Profecti sumus, cōnēmur, revertāmur. 6. Nostrī paulum prōgressi revertēbantur. 7. Hostēs ex finib⁹ suis rūrsus profecti sunt. 8. Multi captivi ē castris ēgredi cōnabantur. 9. Insidias inter montem et flūmen verebamur. 10. Cōsules de salūte populi Rōmani colloquēbantur. 11. Nēmō hostium resistere audēbit. 12. Propter hās causās longius morati essēmus. 13. In hoc oppidum celeriter reverteris. 14. Equites magnō impetū agmen hostium adorti sunt. 15. Legati de excidiō urbis colloquuntur.

- 269.** 1. They were attacking; they dare; they had dared. 2. We were setting out; you will advance; he was trying. 3. We should have conferred; let us try; they marched out. 4. We shall try to attack the town. 5. No one dares to resist. 6. Having advanced a little, they greatly feared an ambush. 7. He speedily returned to the city.

<sup>1</sup> Some verbs, like **audeo**, have active forms in the Present System, but passive form elsewhere. These are called semi-deponent verbs.

## Lesson 50

### PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

**270.** There are two Periphrastic Conjugations, the Active and the Passive.

The Active is formed by combining the Future Active Participle with the forms of **sum**, and denotes an intended or future action.

**Amātūrus sum, I am about to love**

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INFINITIVE
<i>Pres.</i> amātūrus sum	amātūrus sim	amātūrus esse
<i>Imp.</i> amātūrus eram	amātūrus esseni	
<i>Fut.</i> amātūrus erō		
<i>Perf.</i> amātūrus fuī	amātūrus fuerim	amātūrus fuisse
<i>Plup.</i> amātūrus fueram	amātūrus fuissem	
<i>F. P.</i> amātūrus fuerō		

The Passive is formed by combining the Gerundive with the forms of **sum**, and denotes necessity or duty.

**Amandus sum, I must be loved**

<i>Pres.</i> amandus sum	amandus sim	amandus esse
<i>Imp.</i> amandus eram	amandus essem	
<i>Fut.</i> amandus erō		
<i>Perf.</i> amandus fuī	amandus fuerim	amandus fuisse
<i>Plup.</i> amandus fueram	amandus fuissem	
<i>F. P.</i> amandus fuerō		

### RULES OF SYNTAX

**271.** The agent in the passive periphrastic conjugation is expressed by the dative.

*mihi rēs prōvidenda est, the affair must be arranged by me.*

### 272. VOCABULARY

- benignitās, ātis, f., *kindness*.
- cautus, a, um, *cautious, careful*.
- colloquium, ī, n., *conversation*.
- conservō, āre, āvī, ātus, *preserve*.
- cruentus, a, um, *bloody, stained with blood*.
- dēdō, ere, dēdidī, itus, *give up, surrender*.
- liberō, āre, āvī, ātus, *set free*.
- loquor, ī, locūtus sum, *speak*.
- post, *after*, prep. with acc.

**recūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, refuse.**  
**remigrō, āre, āvī, ātus, go back.**  
**rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, ask.**  
**tot, so many, indecl.**

### EXERCISES

**273.** 1. Cōnservatūri sumus, locūtūrus sum, recūsatūrus erat. 2. Liberatūrus eram, liberatūri erant, liberandū sunt. 3. Sequendū est, trāditūrus fuisti, tradēndū est. 4. Profectūri fuērunt, dimicatūri fuimus, egressūri sunt. 5. Post hōc proelium mīlitēs illam urbēm sunt adortūri. 6. Peditēs ex castris subitō egressūri sunt. 7. Benignitās ducis mīlitibus est amanda. 8. Hae fēminaē quae sunt captāe liberandāe sunt. 9. Dē excidiō illius oppidū locūtūri erant. 10. Tot captivū ex castris sunt egressūri. 11. Inter omnēs natiōnēs pax cōfirmando est. 12. Isti mīlitēs in patriam remigratūri sunt. 13. Auxiliū nōndū est rogandum. 14. Multi mīlitēs cruentī sē dēdūtūri fuērunt. 15. Haec aedificia nōbis nōn diripiēnda sunt.

**274.** 1. We arē about to give up; he was about to speak. 2. He must be set free; we shall be about to speak. 3. You are about to go back; peace must be preserved. 4. Aid must not be refused by us. 5. We were about to march forth suddenly from the camp. 6. The enemy was on the point of surrendering itself to the Roman consul. 7. You are not going to speak about so many disasters.

### REVIEW

**275.** 1. Timōrēs nostri propter illud nōn aucti essent. 2. Auxilia in prōvinciam statim mittant. 3. Galli oppidum defendere cōstituerunt. 4. Interea castra fortiter defendantur. 5. Navēs statim instruerentur. 6. Hōs nūntiōs qui eōdem convēnerunt audīremus. 7. Angustiis in montibus impediēbamur. 8. Ex hōc oppido magnam cōpiam frūmenti diripiērunt. 9. Equites nostri illud oppidum expugnāvisse videbantur. 10. Principes multarūm natiōnum in palūdib⁹ erant capti.

## Lesson 51

### IRREGULAR VERBS

**276.** A number of verbs which have special irregularities are called Irregular. The most important of these are **sum, dō, ferō, volō, nōlō, mālō, eō, fiō**.

**277.** The conjugation of **sum** has been given. Its various compounds are conjugated in the same way. Examples are,

**Absum, abesse āfui āfutūrus, am absent.**

Pres. Partic. **absēns (-tis), absent.**

**adsum, adesse, adfui, adfutūrus, am present.**

**praesum, praeesse, praefui, praefutūrus, am in charge of.**

Pres. partic. **praesens (-tis), present.**

**prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus, be of benefit.**

(The preposition appears as **prod-** before a vowel).

**278. Conjugation of possum, be able.**

In its present system **possum** is a compound of **potis (pote)**, *able*, and **sum**. The perfect system and the participle **potēns** (used as an adjective) are from an obsolete verb **poteō**.

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS

**possum, posse, potui, can, be able**

#### Indicative Mood

##### Singular

*Pres.* **possum, potes, potest;**

*Imp.* **poteram, etc.**

*Fut.* **poterō, etc.**

*Perf.* **potui, etc.**

*Plup.* **potueram, etc.**

*Fut. Perf.* **potuerō, etc.**

##### Plural

**possumus, potestis, possunt.**

**poterāmus, etc.**

**poterimus, etc.**

**potuimus, etc.**

**potuerāmus, etc.**

**potuerimus, etc.**

#### Subjunctive Mood

##### Singular

*Pres.* **possim, possis, possit;**

*Imp.* **possem, etc.**

*Perf.* **potuerim, etc.**

*Plup.* **potuissem, etc.**

##### Plural

**possīmus, possītis, possint.**

**possēmus, etc.**

**potuerīmus, etc.**

**potuissēmus, etc.**

#### Infinitive

*Pres.* **posse.** *Perf.* **potuisse.**

#### Participle

*Pres.* **potēns** (as an adjective),  
*powerful.*

**279.**

#### VOCABULARY

**dēsum, dēesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus, be wanting, fail.**

**excēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, depart from.**

**fortūna, ae, f., fortune.**

- incommodum**, *i*, n., *disaster*.  
**iterum**, *again*, *a second time*.  
**longē**, adv., *far*.  
**potestās**, *ātis*, f., *power, opportunity*.  
**vulnus**, *eris*, n., *wound*.

### EXERCISES

**280.** 1. Poteram, potuerāmus, potuisti. 2. Potuisse, adfuērunt, afutūrus. 3. Potueris, poterunt absens. 4. Potui, potuerint, adesse. 5. Fortūna Rōmānis deerat. 6. Potestās pugnandi iterum défuit. 7. Homines qui adsunt ex castris excessūri sunt. 8. Ducēs nostri de incommodis colloqui nōn poterant. 9. Milites qui vulnera accēperunt aberunt.

**281.** 1. They were absent; he could; we can. 2. They would have been able; you had been able; to have been able. 3. They had been present; you are in charge; we should have been absent. 4. Let us be present; I had been in charge; we are present. 5. The horsemen were unable to depart from that place. 6. The opportunity of fleeing was not present. 7. We should have been able to set out.

## Lesson 52

### IRREGULAR VERBS, Continued

#### 282. Conjugation of **dō**, *I give*.

This verb is conjugated like any verb of the first conjugation except that the **a** is usually short. A is long only in the second person singular of the present indicative and present imperative and in the nominative singular of the present participle.

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS

<b>dō</b> ,	<b>dāre</b> ,	<b>dedi</b> ,	<b>dātus</b>
-------------	---------------	---------------	--------------

#### ACTIVE VOICE

#### Indicative Mood

<i>Pres.</i> <b>dō</b> , <b>dās</b> , <b>dat</b> ;	<b>dāmus</b> , <b>datis</b> , <b>dant</b> .
<i>Imp.</i> <b>dābam</b> , etc.;	<b>dābāmus</b> , etc.
<i>Fut.</i> <b>dābō</b> , etc.;	<b>dābimus</b> , etc.
<i>Perf.</i> <b>dedi</b> , etc.;	<b>dedimus</b> , etc.
<i>Plup.</i> <b>dederam</b> , etc.;	<b>dederāmus</b> , etc.
<i>Fut. Perf.</i> <b>dederō</b> , etc.;	<b>dederimus</b> , etc.

**Subjunctive Mood**

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>dem</b> , etc.;	dēmus, etc.
<i>Imp.</i>	<b>dărem</b> , etc.;	dărēmus, etc.
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>dederim</b> , etc.;	dederimus, etc.
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>dedissem</b> , etc.	dedissēmus, etc.

**Imperative Mood**

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>dā</b> ;	dăte.
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>dătō</b> ;	dătōte.
	<b>dătō</b> ;	dantō.

**Infinitive**

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>dăre</b>	dāns.
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>dedisse</b>	
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>dătūrus esse.</b>	dătūrus.

**Gerund**

<b>dandī</b> , etc.	<b>Supine</b>
	<b>dătum, dătū.</b>

The passive is inflected consistently with the short vowel; as **dări**, **dătur**, **dăbatur**, etc.

**283.****VOCABULARY**

- averto**, *ere*, *tī*, *versus*, *avert*, *turn away*.  
**iūsiūrandum**; gen. *iūris iūrandi*, n., *oath*.  
(Each word is declined separately)  
**lēnis**, *e*, *soft*, *mild*, *gentle*.  
**negōtium**, *i* (*ii*), n., *business*.  
**pecūnia**, *ae*, *f.*, *money*.  
**pūblicus**, *a*, *um*, *public*.  
**respōnsum**, *i*, n., *answer*.  
**stultus**, *a*, *um*, *foolish*, *silly*.  
**urbānus**, *a*, *um*, *of a city*, *refined*.  
**venia**, *ae*, *f.*, *permission*, *forgiveness*.

**EXERCISES**

- 284.** 1. *Dedi*, *dederō*, *dedissem*. 2. *Dabat*, *dabit*, *daret*. 3. *Dās*, *dedisse*, *dederis*. 4. *Datum erat*, *dabimus*, *dēmus*. 5. *Pecūnia pùblica cōnsulibus data erat*. 6. *Hostēs nōbis respōnsum stultum dedērunt*. 7. *Tibi venia data est*. 8. *Barbarī multōs obsides dedissent*. 9. *Inter omnēs qui aderant iūs iūrandum datum est*. 10. *Respōnsum lēne iram avertit*.

**285.** 1. We had given; you will give; he gave. 2. Having been given; to have given; I should have given. 3. He will have given; let us give; you will give. 4. It would have been given; let them give; it was given. 5. Public money was given them. 6. Many hostages should have been given them. 7. No answer at all will be given you.

## Lesson 53

### IRREGULAR VERBS, Continued

#### 286. Conjugation of *ferō*, *I bear*.

This verb has two distinct stems—the present stem **fer**—and the root **tol**—which appears in the perfect system as **tul**—and in the participle system as **lātūs**.

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS

<b>ferō</b>	<b>ferre</b>	<b>tuli</b>	<b>lātūs</b>
-------------	--------------	-------------	--------------

#### ACTIVE VOICE

#### Indicative Mood

##### Singular

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>ferō</b> ,	<b>fers</b> ,	<b>fert</b> ;
<i>Imp.</i>	<b>ferebam</b> ;		
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>feram</b> ;		
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>tuli</b> ;		
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>tuleram</b> ;		
<i>F. P.</i>	<b>tulerō</b> ;		

##### Plural

<b>ferimus</b> ,	<b>fertis</b> ,	<b>ferunt</b> .
<b>fērēbāmus</b> .		
<b>ferēmus</b> .		
<b>tulimus</b> .		
<b>tulerāmus</b> .		
<b>tulerimus</b> .		

#### Subjunctive Mood

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>feram</b> ;	<b>ferāmus</b> .
<i>Imp.</i>	<b>ferrem</b> ;	<b>ferrēmus</b> .
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>tulerim</b> ;	<b>tulerīmus</b> .
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>tulissem</b> ;	<b>tulissēmus</b> .

#### Imperative Mood

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>fer</b> ;	<b>ferte</b> .
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>fertō</b> ,	<b>fertōte</b> ,
	<b>fertō</b> ;	<b>feruntō</b> .

#### Infinitive

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>ferre</b> .	<i>Pres.</i> <b>ferēns</b> .
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>tulisse</b> .	
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>lātūrus esse</b> .	<i>Fut.</i> <b>lātūrus</b> .

#### Participle

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>ferēns</b> .
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>lātūrus</b> .

	Gerund	Supine
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>ferendi,</b>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>ferendō,</b>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>ferendum,</b>	<i>Acc.</i> lātum,
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>ferendō.</b>	<i>Abl.</i> lātū.
		PASSIVE VOICE
		PRINCIPAL PARTS
	<b>feror</b>	<b>ferri</b>
		<b>lātus sum</b>
		Indicative Mood
	Singular	Plural
<i>Pres.</i>	<b>feror, ferris, fertur;</b>	ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.
<i>Imp.</i>	<b>ferēbar;</b>	ferēbāmur.
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>ferar;</b>	ferēmur.
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>lātus sum;</b>	lāti sumus.
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>lātus erām;</b>	lāti erāmus.
<i>F. P.</i>	<b>lātus erō;</b>	lāti erimus.
		Subjunctive Mood
<i>P̄es.</i>	<b>ferar;</b>	ferāmur.
<i>Imp.</i>	<b>ferrer;</b>	ferrēmur.
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>lātus sim;</b>	lāti sīmus.
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>lātus essem;</b>	lāti essēmus.
		Imperative Mood
<i>Pres.</i>	<b>fere;</b>	ferimini.
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>fertor;</b>	ferunctor.
	<b>fertor;</b>	
	Infinitive	Participle
<i>Pres.</i>	<b>ferri.</b>	<i>Perf.</i> lātus.
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>lātus esse.</b>	<i>Ger.</i> ferendus.
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>lātum, iri.</b>	

Note the following Compounds—

<b>afferō</b>	<b>afferre</b>	<b>attulī</b>	<b>allātus</b>	<b>bring</b>
<b>auferō</b>	<b>auferre</b>	<b>abstulī</b>	<b>ablātus</b>	<b>take away</b>
<b>cōferō</b>	<b>cōferre</b>	<b>contulī</b>	<b>collātus</b>	<b>collect</b>
<b>īferō</b>	<b>īferre</b>	<b>ītulī</b>	<b>illātus</b>	<b>bring against</b>
<b>referō</b>	<b>referre</b>	<b>rettulī</b>	<b>relātus</b>	<b>bring back</b>
<b>sufferō</b>	<b>sufferre</b>	<b>sustulī</b>	<b>sublātum</b>	<b>endure.</b>

## 287.

## VOCABULARY

**adhūc**, up to this time, hitherto.

**afferō**, ferre, attuli, allātus, bring.

**arceō**, ēre, ui, . . . keep from, hinder.

**coerceō**, ēre, ui, itus, restrain, check.

**condiciō**, ūnis, f., condition, terms.

**cōnferō**, ferre, tuli, collātus, bring together; se cōnferre, betake one's self.

**impedimentum**, i, n., hindrance; plural, baggage.

**numquam**, never.

**ne . . . quidem**, not even; emphasizes the expression placed between the ne and the quidem.

**perferō**, ferre, tuli, lātus, carry through, convey, endure.

**protīnus**, forthwith, straightway.

**referō**, ferre, rettuli, relātus, bring back.

**subsidiū**, i, n., assistance.

**tumultus**, ūs, m., uprising.

## EXERCISES

- 288.** 1. Relati sunt, tulisse, referēns. 2. Afferet, perfertur, refert. 3. Latī essent, afferētur, affertur. 4. Contulisse, lātus esse, lātūrus. 5. Referendi, attulimus, ferendus. 6. Equites nōbis subsidium ferēbant. 7. Rōmāni se subitō in castra contulerunt. 8. Multi mūntii famam dē tumultibus ad nōs pertulerunt. 9. Calamitatē ferre bene nōn potest. 10. Mīlitēs impedimenta in ūnum lacum celeriter conferent. 11. Sine spē magnā tales labōrēs numquam pertulisset. 12. Magna cōpia frumenti ab sociis afferēbatur. 13. Nāvēs impedimenta et frumentum rettulerunt. 14. Nē hīc quidem nūntius famam dē calamitate attulit. 15. Potestas famam referendi nēminī data est.

- 289.** 1. To have borne; I bring together; you are bringing. 2. They brought back; he would have borne; you will bear. 3. By bearing; let them endure; he will bring. 4. We have borne; you would have borne; you would be bringing together. 5. The messengers brought back many reports about the calamity. 6. The grain should have been brought to us at once. 7. We can in no way endure disgrace. 8. The standards have been brought back with glory.

## Lesson 54

### IRREGULAR VERBS, Continued

**290.** Conjugation of **volō**, *I wish*, and its compounds.

**Nōlō**, *I am unwilling*, is a compound of **nē** and **volō**. **Mālō**, *I prefer*, is made up of **magis** and **volō**.

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS

<b>volō</b> ,	<b>velle</b>	<b>volui.</b>
<b>nōlō</b> ,	<b>nōlle,</b>	<b>nōlui.</b>
<b>mālō</b>	<b>mālle,</b>	<b>māluī.</b>

#### Indicative Mood

<i>Pres.</i> <b>volō</b> ,	<b>nōlō</b> ,	<b>mālō</b> ,
<b>vīs,</b>	<b>nōn vīs,</b>	<b>māvīs,</b>
<b>vult;</b>	<b>nōn vult;</b>	<b>māvult;</b>
<b>volumus,</b>	<b>nōlumus,</b>	<b>mālumus,</b>
<b>vultis,</b>	<b>nōn vultis,</b>	<b>māvultis,</b>
<b>volunt.</b>	<b>nōlunt.</b>	<b>mālunt.</b>
<i>Imp.</i> <b>volēbam.</b>	<b>nōlēbam.</b>	<b>nālēbam.</b>
<i>Fut.</i> <b>volam.</b>	<b>nōlam.</b>	<b>mālam.</b>
<i>Perf.</i> <b>volui.</b>	<b>nōlui.</b>	<b>māluī.</b>
<i>Plup.</i> <b>volueram.</b>	<b>nōlueram.</b>	<b>mālueram.</b>
<i>F. P.</i> <b>voluerō.</b>	<b>nōluerō.</b>	<b>māluerō.</b>

#### Subjunctive Mood

<i>Pres.</i> <b>velim.</b>	<b>nōlim.</b>	<b>mālim.</b>
<i>Imp.</i> <b>vellem.</b>	<b>nōllem.</b>	<b>māllem.</b>
<i>Perf.</i> <b>voluerim.</b>	<b>nōluerim.</b>	<b>māluerim.</b>
<i>Plup.</i> <b>voluissem.</b>	<b>nōluissem.</b>	<b>māluissem.</b>

#### Imperative Mood

<i>Pres.</i> <b>nōlī</b> ,	<b>nōlīte,</b>
<i>Fut.</i> <b>nōlītō</b> ,	<b>nōlītōte,</b>
	<b>nōlītō</b> , <b>nōluntō.</b>

#### Infinitive

<i>Pres.</i> <b>velle.</b>	<b>nōlle.</b>	<b>mālle.</b>
<i>Perf.</i> <b>voluisse.</b>	<b>nōluisse.</b>	<b>māluisse.</b>

#### Participle

<i>Pres.</i> <b>volēns.</b>	<b>nōlēns.</b>
-----------------------------	----------------

## 291.

## VOCABULARY

**accendō**, *ere, accendi, accensum, enkindle, rouse.*  
**aspectus**, *ūs, m., sight, look, appearance.*  
**dēserō**, *ere, serui, sertus, abandon, desert, neglect.*  
**discēdō**, *ere, cessī, cessūrus, depart.*  
**hūc**, *adv., hither.*  
**maritimus**, *a, um, of the sea, maritime.*  
**moriōr**, *īrī, moritūrus, die.*  
**ōra**, *ae, f., coast.*  
**quārē**, *adv., wherefore, why?*  
**scribō**, *ere, scripsi, scriptus, write; of laws, draw up.*  
**ūsus militāris**, *military experience.*

## EXERCISES

292. 1. Volumus, voluimus, malumus. 2. Nōn vultis, vultis, māvultis. 3. Vis, nōlueratis, maluerit. 4. Velles, nōluissetis, mālit. 5. Volebas, malles, māluit. 6. Iram militum accendere nōluit. 7. Cōnsul morīrī māvult. 8. Quārē hūc venire voluisti? 9. Ab ūrā maritimā discēdere nōluissēm. 10. Mīlites fortēs urbēm dēserere nōlent. 11. In hāc urbe manēre māluissēmus. 12. Nūntius ducem vidēre vult. 13. Quārē dē ūsū militāre tuō scribere nōn vis?

293. 1. They wished; he is unwilling; they will prefer. 2. We should have wished; to have preferred; I had been unwilling. 3. You wish; he will wish; he would have preferred. 4. Brave soldiers are always unwilling to withdraw. 5. Why did he prefer to proceed hither? 6. The leader will be unwilling to desert the place. 7. He does not wish to rouse the anger of the allies. 8. He will not wish to speak about his military experience.

## Lesson 55

## IRREGULAR VERBS, Continued

294. Conjugation of **fīō** (passive of **faciō**), *be made, be done, occur, or become.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS

<b>fīō</b> ,	<b>fieri</b> ,	<b>factus sum.</b>
--------------	----------------	--------------------

**Indicative Mood**

Singular	Plural
<i>Pres.</i> fiō, fis, fit;	fiimus, fītis, fiunt.
<i>Imp.</i> fiēbam;	fiēbāmus.
<i>Fut.</i> fīam;	fiēmus.
<i>Perf.</i> factus sum;	factī sumus.
<i>Plup.</i> factus eram;	factī erāmus.
<i>F. P.</i> factus erō;	factī erimus.

**Subjunctive Mood**

<i>Pres.</i> fīam;	fiāmus.
<i>Imp.</i> fierem;	fierēmus.
<i>Perf.</i> factus sim;	factī simus.
<i>Plup.</i> factus essem;	factī essēmus.

**Imperative Mood**

<i>Pres.</i> fī;	fīte.
------------------	-------

**Infinitive**

<i>Pres.</i> fierī.	
<i>Perf.</i> factus esse.	<i>Perf.</i> factus.
<i>Fut.</i> factum irī.	<i>Ger.</i> faciendus.

**295.****VOCABULARY**

**aptus, a, um, suitable, fit.**

**certus, a, um, sure.** N. B. phrase certior fierī, lit. *to be made more certain*, i. e., *to be informed*.

**claudō, ere, clausī, clausum, shut up, close, surround.**

**concurrus, ūs, m., a running together.**

**crēber, bra, brum, frequent.**

**dividō, ere, vīsī, vīsus, divide, separate.**

**hodiē, today.**

**libenter, willingly, with pleasure.**

**ob, on account of, prep. with acc.**

**per, through, by means of, prep. with acc.**

**perfuga, ae, m., deserter.**

**repentinus, a, um, sudden.**

**vincō, ere, vīci, victum, conquer.**

**EXERCISES**

- 296.** 1. Factum erat, fis, fīam. 2. Fīemus, factī estis, factus erō.  
 3. Fiēbatis, fiāmus, factī essemus. 4. Fī, factum irī, factus esse. 5. Fierēmus, factī erant, fiunt. 6. Ob multās causās crēbra proelia fiēbant.

7. Caesar de hoc Gallorum tumultū certior factus est. 8. Praedam libenter diviserunt. 9. Repentinī et magni concursūs prō castris fierbant. 10. De fuga repentinā Gallorum per perfugas nōs certiores facti sumus.

**297.** 1. We became; you are becoming; it will occur. 2. It would have happened; we should have become; let us become. 3. The consuls have been informed concerning the uprising. 4. Those barbarians will be made free today. 5. Sudden disasters occur frequently. 6. Because of many reasons he had not become the leader of the army. 7. Let us willingly become suitable soldiers.

## Lesson 56

### IRREGULAR VERBS, Continued

**298.** Conjugation of **eo**, *I go.*

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS

<b>eo</b> ,	<b>ire</b> ,	<b>ī(īvī)</b> ,	<b>itum</b>
-------------	--------------	-----------------	-------------

#### Indicative Mood

<i>Pres.</i> <b>eō, īs, it;</b>	<b>īmus, ītis, cunt.</b>
<i>Imp.</i> <b>ībam;</b>	<b>ībāmus.</b>
<i>Fut.</i> <b>ībō;</b>	<b>ībimus.</b>
<i>Perf.</i> <b>īvī;</b>	<b>īvimus.</b>
<i>Plup.</i> <b>īveram;</b>	<b>īverāmus.</b>
<i>F. P.</i> <b>īverō;</b>	<b>īverimus.</b>

#### Subjunctive Mood

<i>Pres.</i> <b>eam;</b>	<b>ēāmus.</b>
<i>Imp.</i> <b>īrem;</b>	<b>īrēmus.</b>
<i>Perf.</i> <b>īverim;</b>	<b>īverīmus.</b>
<i>Plup.</i> <b>īvissem;</b>	<b>īvissēmus.</b>

#### Imperative Mood

<i>Pres.</i> <b>ī;</b>	<b>īte..</b>
<i>Fut.</i> <b>ītō,</b>	<b>ītōte,</b>
<b>ītō;</b>	<b>cuntō.</b>

#### Infinitive

<i>Pres.</i> <b>īre.</b>	<b>īens,</b>
<i>Perf.</i> <b>īvisse.</b>	<b>Gen. euntis.</b>
<i>Fut.</i> <b>ītūrus esse.</b>	<b>Fut. ītūrus.</b>

#### Participle

<i>Pres.</i> <b>īens,</b>	<b>Gen. euntis.</b>
<i>Fut.</i> <b>ītūrus esse.</b>	<b>Fut. ītūrus.</b>

	Gerund	Supine
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>eundi,</b>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>eundō,</b>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>eundum,</b>	<i>Acc.</i> <b>itum,</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>eundō.</b>	<i>Abl.</i> <b>itū.</b>

### 299. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

1. Interrogative Sentences are of various sorts. They may contain no interrogative word.

**vis pugnare?** *do you want to fight?*

2. They may be introduced by an interrogative word, usually one of the following:

(a) by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb.

**quid agis?** *What are you doing?*

**cūr loquimur?** *Why do we speak?*

(b) by the enclitic **-ne** attached to the emphatic word, usually the first in the sentence.

**vidēsne me?** *Do you see me?*

(c) by **nōnne** expecting the answer *yes*.

**nōnne meministi?** *Don't you remember?*

(d) by **num**, expecting the answer *no*.

**num inficiari potes?** *You can't deny it, can you?*

### 300. VOCABULARY

**adeō, ire iī, itus, go to, visit.**

**circiter, adv., about.**

**circumeō, ire, iī, itus, go around, surround.**

**clam, secretly.**

**cur, why.**

**ineō, ire, iī, itus, enter upon; consilium ire, form a plan.**

**intereō, ire, iī, itūrus, perish.**

**-ne, enclitic interrogative particle, attached to emphatic word, and expecting either a negative or affirmative answer.**

**nōnne, interrogative particle expecting the answer *yes*.**

**num, interrogative particle expecting the answer *no*; in indirect questions, *whether*.**

**redeō, ire, iī, itūrus, return.**

**trāns, across, prep. with acc.**

**transeō, ire, iī, itus, cross.**

## **EXERCISES**

- 301.** 1. Īmus, adiisse, ierat. 2. Adiisse, adeāmus, rediimus. 3. Interitūrus, interiit, interierant. 4. Redibitis, redibas, itūrus esse. 5. In urbem redire vis? 6. Cūr flūmen trānsitūri sumus? 7. Nōnne hostēs transeundi initium fecerunt? 8. Num illi consilia de bellō clam inīre cōnancūr? 9. Trānseunte barbari hōc flūmen? 10. Omnes ex prōvincia in urbem redierant.

- 302.** 1. We are going; you will return; let us cross. 2. You would have perished; they had visited; he has formed a plan. 3. They will go around; we shall cross; let them visit. 4. They haven't surrounded the camp, have they? 5. You will cross the river quickly, won't you? 6. Why did so many nations form plans for war? 7. All would surely have perished.

Lesson 57

## **DEFECTIVE VERBS**

- 303.** Defective Verbs lack certain forms. Some of the most important are as follows:

### Conjugation of aiō, I say

	<b>Indicative</b>		<b>Subjunctive</b>
<i>Pres.</i>	aiō ais ait	— — aiunt	— — aiās aiat
<i>Imp.</i>	aiēbam aiēbās aiēbat	aiēbāmus aiēbātis aiēbant	— — —

## **Imperative**

## **Participle**

ai

### Conjugation of **inquam**, *I say*

### **Indicative**

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>inquam</b>	<b>iniquimus</b>	<i>Fut.</i>	—	—
	<b>inquis</b>	<b>inquitis</b>		<b>inquiēs</b>	
	<b>inquit</b>	<b>inquiunt</b>		<b>inquiet</b>	
<i>Imp.</i>	—	—	<i>Perf.</i>	<b>inquiī</b>	
	—	—		<b>inquiīstī</b>	
	<b>inquiēbat</b>	—		—	

**Imperative****inque****inquitō**

The following verbs are used chiefly in the perfect system.

**coepī**, *I have begun, I began.*   **memini**, *I remember.*   **ōdī**, *I hate.*

**Indicative****Perf.** **coepī****memini****ōdī****Plup.** **cooperam****memineram****ōderam****F. P.** **cooperō****meminerō****ōderō****Imperative****Sing.** **mementō****Plural** **mementōte****Infinitive****Perf.** **coepisse****meminisse****ōdisse****Fut.** **coeptūrus esse****ōsūrus esse.****Participles****Perf.** **coeptus, begun****ōsus****Fut.** **coeptūrus****ōsūrus**

Though Perfect in form, **memini** and **ōdī** are Present in sense. Similarly the Pluperfect and Future Perfect have respectively the Imperfect and Future meaning.

**304.****VOCABULARY**

**aiō**, —, —, —, say.

**coepī**, **coepisse**, *began, have begun.*

**duodecim**, indecl., *twelve.*

**eō**, adv., *thither, to that place.*

**incipiō**, *ere, cēpī, ceptus, begin.*

**inquam**, —, **inquīi**, —, say.

**memini**, **meminisse**, *remember.*

**ōdī**, **ōdisse**, *hate.*

**sinister**, *tra, trūm, left.*

**turpis**, *e, base.*

**unde**, *whence.*

**EXERCISES**

- 305.** 1. *Aiunt, inquiunt, aiēbamus.* 2. *Inquisti, ait, inquit.* 3. *Coepērunt, meminerat, ōderis.* 4. *Odisse, coepisses, ōdit.* 5. *Hostes eō, unde rediimus, proficiſci incipiunt.* 6. *Ariter duodecim mīlia*

peditum trānseundi initium fecerunt. 7. Barbari omnes iniūrias meminērunt quās maiōres sui pertulērunt. 8. Turpēs hominēs semper bonōs odērunt. 9. Cōsulēs trānseundi cōnsilium infre coepērunt. 10. Hostēs sinistrum cornū circumire incipiunt.

**306.** 1. He says; we said; you have said. 2. I hate; you hated; we have begun. 3. To be about to hate; you will have begun; they had begun. 4. The cavalry had begun to cross the river. 5. Bad men always remember injuries. 6. They are forming a plan of approaching the city. 7. The women and children of this town will always remember the deeds of the enemy.

## Lesson 58

### IMPERSONAL VERBS

**307.** Impersonal Verbs in Latin correspond to the English Impersonal with "it." Thus, **licet**, *it is lawful*; **oportet**, *it is fitting*. These verbs never have a personal subject, but may take an Infinitive, a Clause, or a Neuter Pronoun. Thus **hōc fieri oportet**, *it is necessary that this be done*; **hōc decet**, *this is fitting*. They are conjugated like other verbs, but are used only in the third person singular of the Indicative and Subjunctive, and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive.

**308.** Some of these verbs are:

accidit	accidere	accidit	<i>it happened</i>
decet	decēre	decuit	<i>it becomes</i>
licet	licēre	licuit	<i>it is permitted</i>
miseret	miserēre	miseritum est	<i>it excites pity</i>
oportet	oportēre	oportuit	<i>it is fitting</i>
paenitet	paenitēre	paenituit	<i>it causes regret</i>

The passive voice of some intransitive verbs is used impersonally. Thus,

curritur	lit. <i>it is run</i>	<i>people run</i>
pugnātum est	lit. <i>it was fought</i>	<i>the battle was fought</i>
ventum est	lit. <i>it has been come</i>	<i>people have come</i>
vivitur	lit. <i>it is lived</i>	<i>people live.</i>

### 309.

### VOCABULARY

**accēdō**, *ere*, **accessī**, **accessum**, *draw near, advance*.

**cēdō**, **cēdere**, **cessī**, **cessum**, *yield*.

**concurrō**, *ere*, **currī**, **concursum**, *run together*.

**dicō, ere, dixī, dictus, say.**

**melior, ius, better, comp. of bonus.**

**neglegō, ere, ēxi, ēctus, neglect.**

**profugiō, ere, fūgi, fugitūrus, flee, escape.**

**quandō, when?**

**quōd, whither, interrogative and relative adv.**

**recēdō, ere, recessi, recessum, go back, retreat.**

### EXERCISES

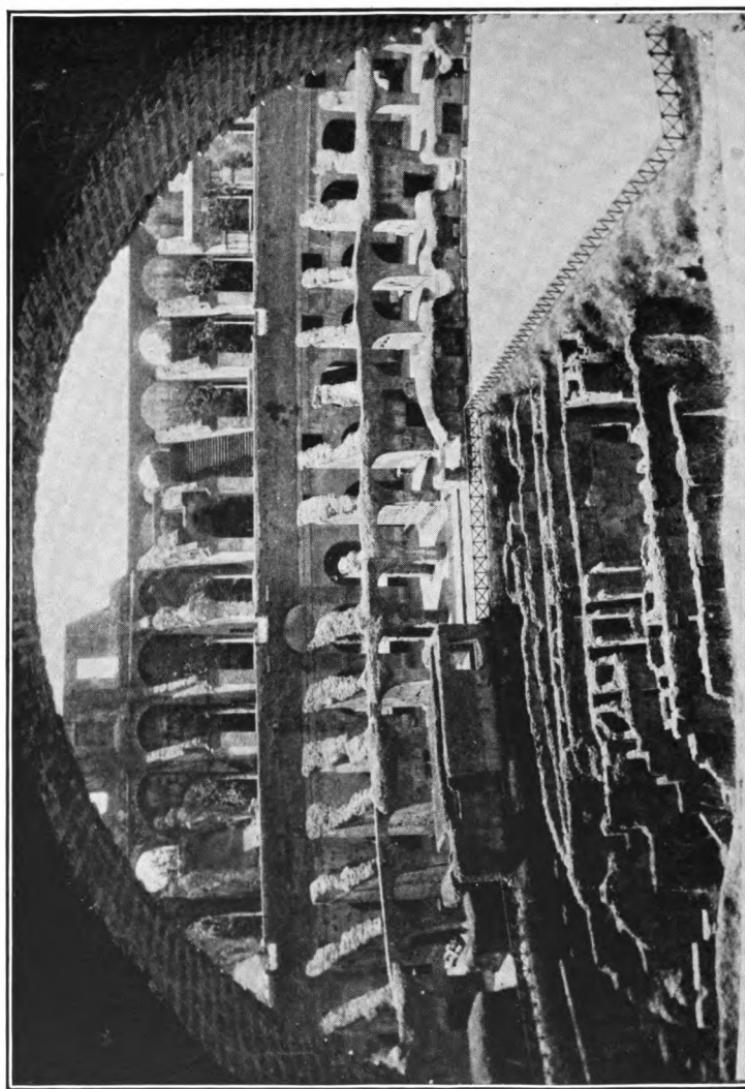
- 310.** 1. Audācter pugnātūm est. 2. Recedendūm est hostibūs.  
 3. Maximē ad signa concurredit. 4. Ad cōnsulēs nūntiis veniendum  
 est. 5. Quando ad urbēm redibis? 6. Mē paenitet hōc fēcisse. 7.  
 Nōn oportet cīvēs officia neglegere. 8. A meliōribus ad ducem curritur.  
 9. Quō nobis accēdendum est? 10. Eō vōbiſ profugiendum est. 11.  
 Licet rēs meliōrēs spērare. 12. Multa dixi quae dicere oportuit. 13.  
 Meliōrem puerum numquam vidi. 14. Omnibus audācter resistendum est.

- 311.** 1. We must fight bravely. 2. There was daring fighting  
 (=it was fought boldly) in that place. 3. You will never see a better  
 general. 4. It is permitted to write. 5. It is not fitting to neglect the  
 duties of a citizen. 6. When did the soldiers run (=cūrsum est., etc.)  
 to the lieutenants? 7. The enemy must come (use passive periphrastic  
 conj.) hither. 8. We must never yield.

### REVIEW

- 312.** 1. Omnes qui potuērunt adfuerunt. 2. Milites qui vulnera  
 accēperunt absunt. 3. Barbaris venia data est. 4. Inter omnes qui  
 aderunt iūs iūrandūm dabitur. 5. Rōmani impedimenta in unum locum  
 contulērunt. 6. Ab ora maritima discēdere nōlui. 7. In hāc urbe manēre  
 malui. 8. Dē fugā repentina hostium per perfugās dux certior factus  
 est. 9. Num hostes transeundi initium fēcerunt. 10. Legati nobiscum  
 dē pācis condicōnibus colloquēbantur.

**Photograph by permission of A. S. Cooley**



COLOSSEUM. INTERIOR THROUGH ARCH OF UPPER STAIRWAY ON NORTH SIDE.

## **PART II.—SYNTAX**



## Lesson 59

### CASES, GENERAL REMARKS AND REVIEW

Latin differs especially from English in what are called its cases.

The case of a noun or adjective is such a change in form as marks its relation to other words in a sentence. The English language no longer possesses a case-system, but the remnants of one may be seen in the strictly possessive case, *John's hat*, etc., and in certain pronouns: *he, him; who, whose, whom*, etc. German, however, still preserves its case-system.

In Latin the order of the words gives us little or no information as to the relation of a noun to the rest of the sentence. The exact relation or syntax of a noun is marked by its case. However, the number of cases in Latin is really only six, and since this number is far too small to express the number of relations which the language must describe, Latin also makes use of many prepositions.

#### The Nominative and Vocative Cases.

In general, the Nominative case may be said to indicate the subject of the verb. Without such a subject, expressed or understood, the verb is meaningless. Impersonal verbs alone approximate the idea of verbal action without a subject; e.g., *curritur, there is running*.

The uses of the Nominative may be defined in greater detail as follows:

**313.** The Subject of a Finite Verb (any form of the Indicative, Subjunctive, or Imperative) is in the Nominative Case.

*Cicerō scripsit, Cicero wrote.*

**314.** A noun used with, and explaining, another noun, denoting the same person or thing, is called an Appositive and is said to be in Apposition.

An Appositive agrees with its noun or pronoun in case, and, if possible, in number and gender.

*assentatiō adiūtrix vitiōrum, flattery, the promoter of evils.*

*P. Scipiō, pontifex maximus, Publius Scipio, pontifex maximus.*

*historia, magistra vītæ, history, the teacher of life.*

**315.** A noun connected with the subject by some form of the verb *sum* or other intransitive verb is called a Predicate Noun.

A Predicate Noun agrees in case and, whenever possible, in number and gender with the noun which it modifies.

*vīta rūstica parsimōniae magistra est, country life is the teacher of thrift*

**cōsulēs** *creantur Caesar et Servilius, Caesar and Servilius are elected consuls.*

**316.** The Vocative Case is the case of address, and is the same as the nominative except in the second declension, where it usually ends in **-e**.

**crēdite mihi, iūdices,** *believe me, judges.*

**nātē, mea magna potentia sōlus,** *my son, thou alone my great power.*

### 317.

### VOCABULARY

**adiūtrix, īcis,** f., *helper, promoter.*

**āmittō, ere, misī,** missus, *lose.*

**arcessō, ere, īvī,** itus, *summon.*

**armātūra, ae,** f., *equipment.*

**assentātiō, īnis,** f., *flattery.*

**auctōritās, ītis,** f., *authority.*

**cēterī, ae, a,** *the rest, the other.*

**creō, īre, īvī, ītus,** *create, elect.*

**cūstōdia, ae,** f., *custody.*

**cūstōs, īdis,** m. and f., *guard, keeper.*

**historia, ae,** f., *a narrative of past events, history.*

**praemium, ī,** m., *reward.*

**supersum, esse, fui,** *remain, be left.*

**tantus, a, um,** *so remain, be left.*

**vērus, a, um,** *true, genuine.*

### EXERCISES

**318.** 1. Galba lēgātus factus est. 2. Cēterī auxilium relicti sunt. 3. Galba, cōsul, multōs mīlites amisit. 4. Omnēs qui supersunt praemia accipient. 5. Mīlites Rōmāni, prō patria moriāmur. 6. Dux illōs, fortissimōs, arcessivit. 7. Cōsulēs, duces exercitūs, maiōrem auctōritatēm quam legātī habent. 8. Assentātiō numquam est adiūtrix amicitiae vērae. 9. Semper duo virī cōsulēs creantur. 10. Historia est cūstōs rērum gestārum.

**319.** 1. Brave citizens, you will receive great rewards. 2. The rest were left as guards of the city. 3. True friendship is the promoter of great things. 4. Good men hate flattery. 5. Many men were sent as envoys to the leader. 6. Those who remain will be true friends. 7. You will be elected consuls.

## Lesson 60

### GENITIVE CASE

**320.** The Genitive is used to complete or limit the meaning of nouns, adjectives, verbs, and adverbs. Its most important uses may be classified as follows:

#### Genitive of Possession

**321.** The Genitive of Possession is used to denote ownership.

**potentia Pompei,** *Pompey's power.*

**domus Ciceronis,** *Cicero's house.*

#### Subjective Genitive

**322.** The Subjective Genitive denotes the subject of an action implied in a noun.

**Caesaris adventus,** *the arrival of Caesar.*

**timorēs liberōrum,** *the fears of the children.*

#### Objective Genitive

**323.** The Objective Genitive denotes the object of an action implied in a noun or an adjective.

**cupidō glōriae,** *desire for glory.*

**cupidus rērum novārum,** *desirous of a revolution.*

#### Genitive of the Whole

**324.** The Genitive of the Whole denotes the whole from which a part is taken. The part may be expressed by a noun, adjective, or adverb.

**eōrum ūna pars,** *one part of them.*

**plūs auctōritātis,** *more authority.*

**satis ēloquentiae, sapientiae parum,** *enough eloquence, too little wisdom.*

#### Genitive of Material

**325.** The Genitive of Material denotes that of which something consists or is made. Strictly speaking it is a genitive of the whole.

**talētum aurī,** *a talent of gold.*

**acervus frūmentī,** *a pile of grain.*

#### Appositional Genitive

**326.** The Genitive is sometimes used to define a word of general meaning. This is called the Appositional Genitive.

**Trōiae urbem,** *the city (of) Troy.*

**nōmen amīcitiae,** *the name (of) friendship.*

**Genitive of Quality or Description**

**327.** The Genitive is sometimes used with a noun to denote a quality of that noun. This is known as the Genitive of Quality or Description.

*vir magnae virtutis, a man of great virtue.  
adulescens nullius consilii, a youth of no judgment.*

**Genitive of Specification**

**328.** The Genitive of Specification is used with a few nouns and many adjectives to denote that with reference to which a quality exists.

*praestantia virtutis, preeminence in virtue.  
feroces linguae, bold of tongue.  
peritus belli, skilled in war.*

**329.****VOCABULARY**

- acervus, *i*, m., *heap, pile.*  
admīror, *ārī*, *ātus sum, wonder at, admire.*  
ancora, *ae*, f., *anchor.*  
ēloquentia, *ae*, f., *eloquence.*  
flāgitō, *āre, āvī, ātus*, *demand.*  
imperium, *i*, n., *rule, command.*  
levis, *e*, *light.*  
magister, *tri*, m., *master.*  
modus, *i*, m., *manner, kind.*  
nōnnullus, *a*, um, *some.*  
pābulum, *i*, n., *forage.*  
plūs, comp. of *multus.*  
**Pompeius, Pompei**, m., *Pompey, a man's name.*  
**quantus, a, um**, *how much, how great?*  
**satis, enough**, indeed.

**EXERCISES**

**330.** 1. Pompei potentia maior quam Caesaris nōn erat. 2. Ancorae nāvium amissae erant. 3. Caesar plūs imperii flagitāvit. 4. Ille satis eloquentiae nōn habet. 5. Nōbis cūstodiām captivōrum trādiderat. 6. Tantum pābuli superest. 7. Timōres liberōrum et feminārum quae aderant maximī erant. 8. In castris acervōs frūmenti vīdimus. 9. Pedites levīs amatūrae arcessēmus. 10. Quantum pābuli populus hāius oppidī vōbis trādidi?. 11. Urbs Rōmae pulcherrima est.

**331.** 1. Pompey's soldiers are very brave. 2. We greatly admire the man's eloquence. 3. How much grain was in the fields? 4. Did you

receive enough money? 5. Some horsemen of the Roman army remained with us. 6. Piles of grain were seen in the field. 7. Fear of the enemy impeded the attack. 8. The victory of our soldiers, men of daring, will be most pleasing. 9. Rome was a city of this kind.

## Lesson 61

### GENITIVE CASE; Continued

#### Genitive of Charge or Penalty

**332.** Verbs of accusing, condemning, and acquitting take a genitive of the charge.

**accusātus est proditiōnis,** *he was accused of treason.*  
**capitis condemnārī,** *to be condemned to death.*

#### Genitive with "interest"

**333.** With interest the person or thing concerned is denoted by the Genitive. If, however, the person concerned is expressed in English by a pronoun, the Latin uses the ablative singular feminine of the corresponding possessive adjective, i.e., **meā, tuā, nostrā, vestrā, or suā.**

**patris interest,** *it concerns the father.*  
**meā interest,** *it concerns me.*

#### Genitive with Verbs of Plenty or Want

**334.** The genitive is sometimes used with verbs, as it is with adjectives meaning plenty or want.

**implentur Bacchī,** *they are filling themselves with wine.*  
**egeō cōnsili,** *I need advice.*

Verbs of *Remembering, Forgetting, or Reminding.*

**335.** **Meminī** and **reminiscor**, when they mean *to be mindful of;* **memini**, meaning *to mention;* and **obliviscor**, meaning *to be unmindful of,* take the genitive.

**336.** **Meminī** and **reminiscor**, meaning literally *to remember, to retain in mind,* and **oblivivisces**, meaning literally *to forget,* take the accusative.

**animus praeteritorum meminit,** *the mind remembers the past.*

**Achillem, cūius suprā meminimus,** *Achilles, whom I mentioned above.*

**Cinnam meminī,** *I remember Cinna.*

**tōtam causam oblitus est,** *he forgot the whole case.*

### Genitive with Impersonal Verbs

**337.** The impersonal verbs **miseret**, *it rouses pity*; **paenitet**, *it causes regret*; **piget**, *it disgusts*; **pudet**, *it shames*; and **taedet**, *it wearies*, take the accusative of the person affected, and the genitive of the cause of the feeling.

**pudet mē tuī**, *I am ashamed of you.*  
**eōrum nōs miseret**, *we pity them.*

**338.**

### VOCABULARY

- accūsō**, *āre, āvī, ātus*, *call one to account, accuse.*
- beneficiū**, *ī*, *n.*, *kindness, favor.*
- contumēlia**, *ae*, *f.*, *insult.*
- dēfectiō**, *ōnis*, *f.*, *revolt.*
- etiam**, *also.*
- imperitus**, *a, um*, *inexperienced.*
- interest**, *it concerns.*
- oblīscor**, *ī*, **oblitus sum**, *be unmindful, forget.*
- piget**, *it disgusts.*
- plēnus**, *a, um*, *full.*
- prīstinus**, *a, um*, *pristine, former.*
- prōditiō**, *ōnis*, *f.*, *betrayal, treason.*
- pudet**, *it shames.*
- reminiscor**, *ī*, *remember.*
- taedet**, *it wearies.*

### EXERCISES

**339.** 1. Cor bonum plenum est beneficiōrum. 2. Multi mīlites prōditiōnis accūsatī sunt. 3. Nostrā interest. 4. Cīvium interest. 5. Omnium hārum contumeliārum miminerimus. 6. Prīstinōrum beneficiōrum oblīscuntur. 7. Illītus dēfectiōnis mīlites paenitet. 8. Captivōrum nōs miseret. 9. Vitae omnium periculōrum plēnae sunt. 10. Malōrum prīstinōrum oblīscāmūr.

**340.** 1. He has been accused of the insult. 2. It greatly concerns you. 3. Let us remember the valor of our ancestors. 4. You will never be unmindful of his favors. 5. We are disgusted with this. 6. He always pitied captives. 7. Good men regret this war.

## Lesson 62

### DATIVE CASE

The Dative is usually used either to denote an indirect object or a person or thing interested in the action of the verb.

Its various uses may be classified as follows:

#### Indirect Object with Transitive Verbs

**341.** Transitive verbs take the accusative of the Direct Object and the dative of the Indirect Object.

**rēgī haec dīcite,** *tell the king this.*

**hanc pecūniā mīhi dāt,** *he gives me this money.*

#### Indirect Object with Intransitive Verbs

**342.** Many intransitive verbs take the dative, especially those signifying *favor*, *help*, *injure*, *please*, *displease*, *trust*, *distrust*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *envy*, *threaten*, *believe*, *persuade*, and the like.

**amicīs cōfidō,** *I trust my friends.*

**huic legiōnī Caesar et indliserat et cōfidēbat,** *Caesar had indulged this legion and had confidence in it.*

#### Indirect Object with Compound Verbs

**343.** The Dative of the Indirect Object is used with many verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **circum**, **con**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **sub**, and **super**.

**fīnitimī bellūm īferre,** *to make war on one's neighbors.*

**exercituī praeſuit,** *he was in command of the army.*

**344.**

#### VOCABULARY

**cōfidō**, *ere*, *fīsus sum*, semi-dep., *trust*.

**faveō**, *ēre*, *favī*, *fautus*, *favor*.

**indulgeō**, *ēre*, *indulsi*, *indultus*, *be kind*, *īndulge in* (a thing).

**īferō**, *ferre*, *tulī*, *illātus*, *bring upon*.

**intersum**, *esse*, *fūi*, *futūrus*, *be present*.

**mulier**, *eris*, f., *woman*.

**noceō**, *ēre*, *ui*, *itūrus*, *injure*, *harm*.

**parātus**, a, um, *ready*, *prepared*.

**parcō**, *ere*, *pepercī*, *parsūrus*, *spare*.

**persuādeō**, *ēre*, *suāsī*, *suāsus*, *persuade*.

**placeō, ēre, ui,** *placitūrus, please.*

**praeficiō, ere, fēci,** *fectus, put in charge.*

**praeſum, esse, fuī,** *futūrus, be in charge of.*

**rēs pūblica,** gen. **reī pūblicae,** *f., state, commonwealth.*

**sermō, ūnis,** *m., conversation.*

### EXERCISES

**345.** 1. Militibus haec dīcite. 2. Caesar mulieribus et liberis indulgebat. 3. Reī pūblicae nocēbitis. 4. Cōnsulēs castris quae mīlites sēcerant legātūm praeſēcerunt. 5. Barbarīs bellum inferre paratī sumus. 6. Caesar his militibus propter virtūtem maxime cōfidit. 7. Tales hominēs nōbīs nōn placent. 8. Parcīte semper, mīlites, fēminīs et liberīs. 9. Dūces nūllīs militibus verbīs suis persuadēre possunt. 10. Lēgati sermōnī eius interfuerunt.

**346.** 1. I especially trusted them. 2. They had already given the soldiers the rewards. 3. He tried to be kind to his enemies also. 4. The barbarians did not always spare the women and children. 5. You will be in charge of the fortification which we have made. 6. Let us persuade our fellow citizens with these words. 7. Caesar put a lieutenant in charge of the smaller camp. 8. Who can bring war upon Italy? 9. The leader's plans pleased no one.

## Lesson 63

### DATIVE CASE, Continued

#### Dative of Reference

**347.** The Dative of Reference is used to denote the person to whom a statement refers or of whom it is true, or to whom it is of interest.

**cōnsurrēxērunt omnēs illī,** *all rose in his honor.*

**interclūdere hostibūs commeātūm,** *to cut off the supplies of the enemy.*

#### Dative of Possession

**348.** The dative is used with forms of **sum** to denote the possessor.

**tibi est liber,** *you have a book* (lit., *a book is to you*).

**contrōversia mihi fuit cum avunculō tuō,** *I had a debate with your uncle.*

### Dative of Agent

**349.** The dative is used with the gerundive to express the agent.

**haec nōbis agenda sunt,** *these things must be done by us.*

**mihi eundum est,** *I must go.*

### Dative of Purpose or Tendency

**350.** The dative is often used to express the purpose or tendency of an action. This is often used with another dative (Reference), denoting the person concerned.

**cecinis receptui,** *he gave the signal for a retreat.*

**id mūneri misit,** *he sent it as a present.*

**nōbis sunt odiō,** *they are an object of hatred to us* (literally, *they are as a hated to us.*)

### Dative with Adjectives

**351.** The dative is used with adjectives denoting *friendliness, hostility, likeness, unlikeness, equality, nearness, relation, fitness, etc.*

**par similisque cēteris,** *equal to and like the rest.*

**castris idoneum locum dēlegit,** *he selected a place suitable for a camp.*

## 352. VOCABULARY

**adversus, a, um, adverse.**

**canō, ere, cecini, cantus, sing, play.**

**commeātus, ūs, m., supplies.**

**conspectus, ūs, m., view, sight.**

**dēligō, ere, lēgi, lectum, choose out, select.**

**facinus, facinoris, n., crime.**

**interclūdō, ere, clūsi, clūsus, cut off, hinder.**

**munus, eris, n., duty, favor, gift.**

**odium, i, n., hatred.**

**pēs, pedis, m., foot.**

**prōiciō, ere, iēci, iectus, throw, cast.**

**proximus, a, um, nearest, next.**

**receptus, ūs, m., retreat.**

**ripa, ae, f., bank (of a river).**

**tēlum, i, n., javelin.**

**ūsus, ūs, m., use, service.**

### EXERCISES

- 353.** 1. Pompeius Caesarī commeātum interclūdere nōn potest.
2. Hostibus nōn sunt equites. 3. Barbarī receptui canent. 4. Caesar multis odiō erat. 5. Mīlitēs, fortiter nōbis dīmicandum est. 6. Castris

idōneum locum nōn possumus dēligere. 7. Mīlites lēgatis suīs inimici sunt. 8. Quae poena huic facinorū pār est? 9. Ventī adversī nautīs nōn placent. 10. Cōnsilia h̄tius hominis mihi magnō usui erant. 11. Patrēs et filiī semper amandī sunt.

**354.** 1. The Romans had large armies. 3. The soldiers did many things in his honor. 3. Shields and javelins must be given the soldiers by us. 4. We must go (=it must be gone by us;) at once to the camp. 5. This general always selects a place suitable for a cavalry battle. 6. The most suitable place for the camp is next the sea. 7. The cavalry was not a great service to us here.

## Lesson 64

### ACCUSATIVE CASE

The Accusative is usually used to complete the meaning of a transitive verb by denoting the immediate object of its action. It has several varying uses, however, all of which may be arranged as follows:

#### Direct Object

**355.** The Direct Object of a verb is in the accusative case. It may denote that which is produced or that which is affected.

**librum scripsit, he wrote a book.**

**oppida sua omnia incendunt, they burn all their towns.**

#### Accusative of Exclamation

**356.** The accusative is used in exclamations.

**mē miserūm! wretched me! testis ēgregiōs! fine witnesses!**

#### Two Accusatives. Direct Object and Predicate Accusative.

**357.** Verbs meaning *to make, choose, call, show, etc.*, may take two accusatives, one the direct object, the other a predicate accusative.

**Hamilcarem imperātōrem fēcērunt, they made Hamilcar general.**

**ducem sē praeboot, he offered himself leader.**

**358.** A predicate accusative may be an adjective as well as a noun.

**hostēs hōc iter periculōsum reddiderant, the enemy had made this road dangerous.**

## 359.

### VOCABULARY

**alacer, cris, cre, eager.**

**dictātor, ūris, m., dictator.**

**efficiō, ere, fēcī, factus, make, render.**

- ēgregius, a, um, excellent, eminent.**  
**frāter, tris, m., brother.**  
**hiemō, āre, āvi, ātus, pass the winter.**  
**iūdex, icis, m., judge.**  
**opportūnus a, um, fit, opportune.**  
**periculōsus, a, um, dangerous.**  
**praetor, ūris, m., praetor.**  
**privātus, a, um, private.**  
**-que, and, enclitic conjunction.**  
**reddō, ere, reddidi, redditus, give back, render.**  
**sentiō, īre, sēnsi, sēnsus, feel.**  
**tempus, oris, n., time.**  
**timidus, a, um, fearful, afraid.**

### EXERCISES

**369.** 1. Equitātum omnem ante sē misit. 2. Nōs miserōs! 3. Urbem Rōmam vocant. 4. Populus Rōmānus Caesarem dictatōrem fecerunt. 5. Eius verba mīlites ad pugnam alacriōres effecerant. 6. Omnes hunc hominem malum iūdicant. 7. Templa aedificiaque privāta incident. 8. Omnes dolōrem sentiunt. 9. Multae calamitatēs ducem timidum reddiderunt. 10. Eius frātem ēgregium iūdicaverant. 11. Tempus opportūnum dēligamus. 12. Quem praetōrem appellant est iūdex.

**361.** 1. What a calamity! 2. They have burned all the temples and private buildings. 3. The Roman people made that man praetor. 4. The enemy made that road dangerous. 5. This man was chosen (as) leader. 6. That thing made the soldiers more eager for battle. 7. Let us be brave and daring.

## Lesson 65

### ACCUSATIVE CASE, Continued

#### Two Accusatives. Person and Thing

**362.** Some verbs meaning *to ask, demand, teach, conceal*, etc., take two accusatives, one of the Person, the other of the Thing.

**mē sententiam rogāvit, he asked me my opinion.**

**tē litterās doceō, I teach you the letters.**

**iter omnēs cēlat, he conceals his march from everyone.**

### Two Accusatives With Compound Verbs

363. Verbs compounded with **circum** or **trans** may take two accusatives, one depending on the verb, the other on the preposition.

*eōs sua praesidia circumdūxit, he led them around his fortifications.*

*flūmen exercitum tradūxit, he led his army across the river.*

### Accusative of Limit of Motion

364. The limit of motion is expressed by the accusative with a preposition.

*lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt, they send envoys to Caesar.*

*ad Italiam vēnit, he came to Italy.*

365. With names of towns; small islands; **domum, home;** **domōs, homes;** and **rūs, country,** the preposition is regularly omitted.

*rus ibō, I shall go to the country.*

*domōs suās discēdunt, they scatter to their homes.*

*Rōmam contendit, he hastens to Rome.*

### Accusative of Extent

366. Extent of time or space is regularly expressed by the accusative.

*quadrāgintā annōs vīxit, he lived for forty years.*

*fossae quīndecim pedes lātae, trenches fifteen feet wide.*

### 367. VOCABULARY

**ac (atque), and, and also;** ac never used before vowels.

**Athēnae, ārum, f., Athens.**

**bīduum, ī, n., two days.**

**circumducō, ere, dūxi, ductus, lead around.**

**cottidiē, adv., every day, daily.**

**domus, ūs, f., house, home.**

**ēdoceō, ēre, ui, ēdoctus, teach.**

**Hibērus, ī, m., Hiberus, a river in Spain.**

**interim, in the meanwhile.**

**obtineō, ēre, ui, tentus, occupy, hold.**

**ops, opis, f., power, help (nom. sing. never used); in plu., resources.**

**passus, ūs, m., paces (five feet).**

**petō, ere, ivī, (ii), itus, seek, request.**

**polliceor, ērī, itus sum, promise.**

**rēgnūm, ī, n., kingdom.**

**sescentī, ae, a, six hundred.**

**trādūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, lead across.**

### EXERCISES

**368.** 1. Me cōsilia sua cēlavit. 2. Milites castra circumdācet. 3. Tē multa ēdocet. 4. Lēgatus interim cōpias flūmen tradūxit. 5. Caesar cottidiē Haeduōs omnia, quae pollicitī erant, flagitabat. 6. Ad prōvinciam proficiscāmur. 7. Bīdūm in his locis mānsit. 8. Mē sententiam rogāvit. 9. Paucōs milites domum redūxit. 10. Quando Āthenās redibit? 11. Rōma ab illō locō sescentōs passūs abest. 12. Haec turris trīginta pedēs alta est. 13. Decem mīlia passuum reducti erāmus.

**369.** 1. I asked him many things. 2. We have advanced ten miles from Rome. 3. The barbarians have concealed their march from the Romans. 4. Caesar would have led his troops across the Ebro. 5. We will remain in Italy for two years. 6. Let us go to Rome at once. 7. I demanded of him the money which he owed me. 8. He held the kingdom for a short time. 9. Will he be able to teach us many things? 10. When did they return home?

## Lesson 66

### ABLATIVE CASE

**370.** The Ablative has the functions of three originally distinct cases—the true Ablative or from-case, the Instrumental or with-case, and the Locative or place-where-case.

It gives additional information about the mode of the action of the verb, in addition to those presented by the direct and indirect object. Its sphere of action is very great, since it can express the source, cause, instrument, time, place, manner, circumstances, of the action of the verb, as well as the point from which motion takes place.

We may detail the uses of the Ablative as follows:

### TRUE ABLATIVE USES

#### Ablative of Separation

**371.** Verbs or adjectives denoting separation take the ablative with or without a preposition. The preposition is usually omitted with words of freeing, depriving, and lacking.

**tē ab eō liberō,** *I free you from him.*

**oppugnātiōne desistunt,** *they cease from the siege.*

**omnibus rēbus ēgēre,** *to be in want of everything.*

### Ablative of Agent

372. The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **a** or **ab**.

**ab senātū amīcus appellātus erat**, *he had been called friend by the senate.*

**a Caesare accūsātus est**, *he was accused by Caesar.*

### Ablative of Comparison

373. Comparative adjectives are regularly followed by **quam** and a substantive in the same case as the first thing compared. However, the second thing compared may be put in the ablative and the **quam** omitted.

**nihil est virtūte amābilis**, *nothing is more lovely than virtue.*

**patria mihi vītā cārior est**, *to me my fatherland is dearer than life.*

374. The comparatives **plūs**, **minus**, **amplius**, and **longius** may take the ablative, but they usually have the force of **plūs quam**, **minus quam**, **amplius quam**, and **longius quam**.

**tēcum plūs annum vīxit**, *he lived with you more than a year.*

### Ablative of Cause<sup>1</sup>

375. The Ablative is used to denote Cause. The Ablative of Cause is sometimes used with a preposition, **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**.

**ille timōre**, *ego rīsū corruī*, *he collapsed from fear, I from laughter.*

**multa glōriæ cupiditātē fēcit**, *he did many things because of his love of glory.*

**ab irā**, *on account of anger.*

### 376.

### VOCABULARY

**amābilis**, *e*, *worthy of love, lovely.*

**amplius**, *more.*

**amplus**, *a*, *um*, *great, glorious.*

**corruō**, *ere*, *ui*, *— fall down, collapse.*

**dēsistō**, *ere*, *stiti*, *— cease.*

**dissēnsiō**, *ōnis*, *f.*, *disagreement.*

**egeō**, *ēre*, *ui*, *— need, lack.*

**expellō**, *ere*, *puli*, *pulsus*, *drive out.*

**nāscor**, *i*, *nātus sum*, *be born.*

**obsidiō**, *ōnis*, *f.*, *siege.*

**occidō**, *ere*, *cīdī*, *cīsus*, *kill.*

---

<sup>1</sup> This ablative is partly Separative and partly Instrumental.

**oppugnātiō, ūnis, f., siege.**

**possessiō, ūnis, f., possession.**

**repellō, ere, repulī, repulsus, drive back, repel.**

**rīsus, ūs, m., laughter.**

**septingentī, ae, a, seven hundred.**

**servitūs, ūtis, f., servitude, bondage.**

**vīgintī, twenty, indecl.**

### EXERCISES

- 377.** 1. Rōmant auxiliō maximē egent. 2. Socit dissensiōne desti-  
terunt. 3. Eōs a barbaris liberabimus. 4. Pompeius a Caesare repulsus  
est. 5. Patria mihi vīta carior est. 6. Plūs mīle hostēs possessiōnibus  
nostrīs expulsi sunt. 7. Impetum hostium repellere dissensiōnibus nōn  
possumus. 8. Quae mulier est melior matrē? 9. Nēmō hostes ab his  
mūnitioībus prohibere poterit. 10. Illud oppidum obsidiōne liberāvimus.  
11. Plus vīgintī hominēs occisi sunt. 12. Diū atque acriter a nostrīs  
pugnatūm est. 13. Quid melius est quam virtūs? 14. Eōs a servitūte  
liberēmus.

- 378.** 1. The enemy were driven from their camp by the Romans.  
2. What is more glorious than a great victory? 3. For many causes the  
fortification collapsed. 4. The horses were in need of forage. 5. More  
than a thousand infantry men were killed in that battle. 6. Many men  
will be freed from bondage by us. 7. Because of a disagreement seven  
hundred soldiers withdrew from the army. 8. We are especially in need of  
grain.

## Lesson 67

### ABLATIVE CASE, Continued

#### INSTRUMENTAL USES

#### Ablative of Accompaniment

- 379.** Accompaniment is regularly expressed by the ablative with the  
preposition **cum**.

**cum Pānsā vīxi, I have lived with Pansa.**

**nōbiscum hostēs contendērunt, the enemy fought with us.**

#### Ablative of Manner

- 380.** The ablative is used to denote the manner in which an act is  
performed. If the noun is unaccompanied by an adjective, the preposition  
**cum** is also used.

**reliquias cum cura exsecutus est,** he followed up the remainder carefully.  
**fieri nullum pacto potest,** it can be done in no way.

### Ablative of Quality

**381.** The ablative of a noun modified by an adjective is used to denote a quality. This construction may be used attributively or predicatively.

**vir magnā virtute,** a man of great courage.  
**statūrā fuit humili,** he was of low stature.

### Ablative of Means

**382.** The ablative is used to denote the means or instrument by which an act is done.

**exercitus interitus est ferrō,** the army was destroyed by the sword.

**383.** The Ablative of Means is also used with the following:

(a) The deponents **ūtor**, I use; **fruor**, I enjoy; **fungor**, I perform; **potior**, I am master of; and **vescor**, I feed on. **vitā fruitur**, he enjoys life. **lacte et carne vescēbantur**, they lived on milk and meat.

(b) **Opus est** and **usus est**, there is need. **duce opus est**, there is need of a leader.

(c) Verbs meaning to fill, and adjectives meaning full. **fossam aggere explent**, they fill the trench with earth.

### 384.

### VOCABULARY

**addūcō**, ere, dūxi, **ductus**, lead on, impel.

**conficiō**, ere, fēci, **fectus**, exhaust.

**dētrimentum**, i., n., loss, damage.

**dignitās**, ātis, f., dignity, rank.

**ēruptiō**, ūnis, f., sally.

**fruor**, i., **fructus sum**, enjoy.

**fungor**, i., **functus sum**, perform, execute.

**gravitās**, ātis, f., heaviness, violence.

**lacessō**, ere, **lacessīvi**, **lacessītus**, harass.

**lapis**, idis, m., stone.

**nocturnus**, a, um, at night.

**perveniō**, ire, vēni, **ventum**, come, arrive.

**potior**, potīrī, **potitus sum**, take possession of, acquire.

**ratiō**, ūnis, f., reason.

**recipiō**, ere, cēpī, **ceptus**, take back; with reflexive **se**, to retreat.

**ūtor**, i., **ūsus sum**, use.

**vescor**, **vescī**, feed, eat.

**EXERCISES**

**385.** 1. Hic homo magna gravitate loquitur. 2. Cum exercitu Rōmam sē recēpit. 3. Ad urbem vōbiscum properābimus. 4. Magnā celeritāte opus est. 5. Equi pabulō vescuntur. 6. Vir magna dignitate fuit. 7. Exercitum cum magnō dētrimentō contrā hostēs adduxit. 8. Navēs his causis ad portum sē recipere coactae sunt. 9. Aestate maximē fruimur. 10. Fossās lapidibus complēbunt. 11. Impetū nocturnō facile castris potiti sunt. 12. Helvetiī summa celeritate ad fīnes Gallōrum pervenērunt.

**386.** 1. The envoys spoke with dignity. 2. Because of the many attacks the army was exhausted. 3. The enemy advanced against the town with great loss. 4. He executed the commands of the leader quickly. 5. The inhabitants of the town harassed our men with stones. 6. Because of his desire for glory he did many bad things. 7. They were unable to withdraw without great loss. 8. Let us enjoy the many things of life in a good manner.

**Lesson 68****ABLATIVE CASE, Continued****INSTRUMENTAL USES, Continued****Ablative Absolute**

**387.** Two words in the ablative, usually a noun or pronoun and a participle, are often used in a loose connection with a sentence to express any one of a number of ideas.

Two nouns or an adjective and a noun may also be used in the ablative absolute construction.

**388.** The main ideas expressed by the Ablative Absolute are the following:

(a) Time.

**Lepidō et Tullō cōnsulibus**, when Lepidus and Tullus were consuls or in the consulship of Lepidus and Tullus.

(b) Cause.

**nūllō adversante rēgnū obtinuit**, since no one opposed him, he secured the throne.

(c) Manner.

**incitatō equō sē hostibūs obtulit**, with his horse at full speed he rushed upon the enemy.

(d) Condition.

**omnes virtūtēs iacent, voluptāte dominante,** all virtues lie prostrate, if pleasure reigns supreme.

(e) Concession.

**perditis omnibus rēbus pugnābant,** although everything was lost, they fought on.

**Ablative of Price**

**389.** The ablative is used with verbs of buying and selling to denote the price.

**dēnāriīs tribus aestimāvit,** he valued it at three denarii.

**Ablative of Degree of Difference**

**390.** The ablative is used with comparatives and words implying comparison to show the degree of difference.

**ūnō diē longiōrem mēnsem faciunt,** they made the month longer by a day.

**Ablative of Specification**

**391.** The ablative of specification is used to denote that in respect to which something is or is not true.

**hominēs nōn rē sed nōmine,** men not in fact but in name.

**392.** The ablative of specification is used with **dignus, worthy,** and **indignus, unworthy.**

**amicī dignī amicitā,** friends worthy of friendship.

**393.****VOCABULARY**

**adversō, āre, āvī, ātus, oppose.**

**aestimō, āre, āvī, ātus, determine, estimate.**

**ante, adv., before.**

**antecēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, precede.**

**coniūrātiō, ūnis, f., conspiracy.**

**dignus, a, um, worthy.**

**emō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus, buy.**

**indignus, a, um, unworthy.**

**Gallus, ī, m., a Gaul.**

**nihilō, abl., by nothing.**

**paulō, abl., by a little.**

**post, adv., afterwards.**

**salvus, a, um, safe, sound.**

**solvō, ere, solvī, solūtus, loose;** of ships, unmoor; **naves solvere, set sail.**

**talentum, ī, n., a talent** (not a coin, but a certain number of pounds of gold or silver equivalent to about \$1200.00).

**vēndō, ere, vēndidī, vēnditus, sell.**

## EXERCISES

- 394.** 1. M. Messalla et M. Pisone cōsulibus coniūratiōnem fecerunt  
 2. Multis adversantibus flūmen trānsibimus. 3. Vivō Caesare, rēs  
 pūblica salva erat. 4. Servum magnō pretiō emīt. 5. Illōs agrōs decem  
 talentis vēndidit. 6. Haec turris decem pedibus altior est. 7. Hic  
 homō paulō quam ille altior est. 8. Rōmāni omnibus populi Italiae  
 virtute praestabant. 9. Militēs qui fortiter dīmicāverunt honore digni  
 sunt. 10. Nēmō Caesare auctōritate superabat. 11. Ventō magnō,  
 nāvēs solvunt. 12. Caesare duce, Rōmāni agrōs Gallōrum vexāverunt et  
 oppida eōrum cēpērunt.

- 395.** 1. Although the winds opposed, they tried to set sail. 2. In the  
 consulship of M. Messala and M. Piso a few conspiracies took place. 3.  
 Since no one opposed them they set out at once. 4. He will sell this building  
 for a talent. 5. The tower is ten feet higher than the fortification.  
 6. These men whom you have seen are worthy of friendship. 7. Our  
 soldiers surpassed all in courage. 8. When all the enemy had been over-  
 come, the general returned to winter quarters.

## Lesson 69

## Ablative Case, Continued

## LOCATIVE USES

## Ablative of Place

- 396.** The place where a thing is or is done is usually expressed by the  
 ablative with **in**.

**in urbe habitat, he lives in the city.**

Names of towns, however—except singulars of the First and Second  
 Declensions take the ablative without a preposition.

**Cūmīs, at Cumae. Carthagine, at Carthage.**

- 397.** Place from which is regularly expressed by the ablative with the  
 preposition **ab, de, or ex.**<sup>1</sup>

**ab Italiā profectus est, he set out from Italy.**

Names of towns, however; **domo, from home; rure, from the country,**  
 use the ablative without a preposition.

**Calibus profectus est, he set out from Cales.**

<sup>1</sup> Place from which is, strictly speaking, a "True Ablative," but it is taken up here for the sake of convenience.

**Ablative of Time**

**398.** The time when or within which anything takes place is expressed by the ablative.

*superiore aestate, in the previous summer.*

*proximis comitiis, at the last election.*

**399.** Extent of time is sometimes expressed by the ablative. The accusative is usual, however.

**totā nocte ierunt,** *they went during the whole night.*

**Locative Case**

**400.** The Locative Case denotes place where. It occurs regularly in the singular names of towns and small islands of the First and Second Declensions, and also in a few special words, like **domī**, *at home*; **humī**, *on the ground*; **bellī** and **militiae**, *in war*; **rurī**, *in the country*.

**Rōmae, at Rome, Corinthī, at Corinth.**

**401.****VOCABULARY**

**Aprilis, e, adj., of April.**

**dēspērō, āre, āvī, ātus, despair.**

**habitō, āre, āvī, ātus, dwell, reside.**

**kalendae, āruī, f., kalends (first of the month).**

**restituō, ere, uī, ūtus, restore.**

**triduum, ī, n., three days.**

**tertius, a, um, third.**

**vigilia, ae, f., watch (of the night).**

**EXERCISES**

**402.** 1. In illa urbe duōs annōs habitabamus. 2. In exercitū Caesaris saepe erant dissensiōnes. 3. Rōma in Galliam contendeb̄. 4. Rōmam tertīō dī redib̄o. 5. Tertiā vigilia ē castris profecti sumus. 6. Kalendis Aprilibus coniūratōnem reperērunt. 7. Rōmae aedificia pulchra sunt. 8. Rōma Corinthum exercitus contendet. 9. Athēnīs triduum morābimur. 10. Eō tempore cīvēs omnes dē suā salūte dēspērabant.

**403.** 1. They will delay three days in Athens. 2. On the island are large trees and pretty flowers. 3. On the first (Kalends) of April I saw you and your friends at Rome. 4. Let us hasten from Rome into Gaul. 5. On that night we will return to Corinth. 6. At the first watch the consul set out with all his troops. 7. In what year were you consul? 8. For many days we despaired of our safety. 9. In a short time he restored the town and villages which he had destroyed.

## Lesson 70

### SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES

**404.** Adjectives and participles are often used as substantives in the plural. The masculine denotes persons, the neuter denotes things.

**nostri**, *our men.*

**varium et mūtabile semper femina**, *woman is alawys a variable and changeable thing.*

**bona**, *good things.*

**405.** Adjectives are often used where English uses the adverb.

**invitus fēcī**, *I did it unwillingly.*

### Comparatives and Superlatives

**406.** Comparatives and Superlatives are often used when they do not denote a definite comparison; the comparative having the idea of *rather somewhat, too*; the superlative signifying *very*.

**senectūs est nātūrā loquācior**, *old age is by nature rather talkative.*  
**vir fortissimus**, *a very brave man.*

**407.** The superlative is used with **quam**, or **quam** and a form of **possum**, to denote the highest degree possible.

**quam mātūrrimē**, *as early as possible.*

**quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam contendit**, *he hastens into Gaul by the longest possible marches.*

**408.** When two qualities are compared, both adjectives or adverbs are in the comparative, or, if **magis** is used, both are kept in the positive.

**verior quam grātior**, *more true than agreeable.*

**Celer disertus magis est quam sapiēns**, *Celer is more eloquent than wise.*

**409.** Certain adjectives are used in agreement to denote a part of an object: as **medius**, *middle of*; **reliquus**, *rest of*; **extrēmus**, *last part of*; **imus**, *bottom of*; **summus**, *top of*.

**summus mōns**, *the top of the mountain.*

**in colle mediō**, *on the middle of the hill.*

### VOCABULARY

**abeō, īre, iī, itūrus**, *go away.*

**crēdō, ere, didī, ditum**, *believe.*

- extrēmus, a, um, extreme, end of.**  
**hiems, is, f., winter.**  
**hortor, ārī, ātus sum, exhort.**  
**invitus, a, um, unwilling, reluctant.**  
**loquax, ācis, talkative, loquacious.**  
**mātūrus, a, um, right, proper, speedy.**  
**ōrātor, ōris, m., orator.**  
**plēriquo, aeque, aque, most.**  
**prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, advance.**  
**respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsus, answer, reply.**  
**sapiens, entis, wise.**  
**senectus, ūtis, f., old age.**

### EXERCISES

**411.** 1. Nostri fortēs sunt. 2. Plēraque illi placent. 3. Invitī haec crēdunt. 4. Eruptiō nostrōrum erat subitissima. 5. Via gravior erat. 6. Numerus mīlitum quam maximus sit. 7. Haec femina pulchrior quam grātior est. 8. Ille ūrātor loquax magis est quam sapiens. 9. In summō colle nostri fortiter resistēbant. 10. Multī mediā nocte ex castris ēgressi sunt.

**412.** 1. The enemy made the attack unwillingly. 2. Our (men)<sup>1</sup> will not believe such (things). 3. The march was rather difficult. 4. The trees on the island are very beautiful. 5. Such people are more talkative than wise. 6. On the middle of the mountain is a building. 7. We will set out with the longest possible marches.

### REVIEW

**413.** 1. Caesar et Servilius cōnsulēs creābantur. 2. Cōsulēs, duces exercitūs magnam auctōritātem habent. 3. Timorēs mīlitum in castris maximī erant. 4. Barbarōrum illōs miseret. 5. Caesar feminīs et liberīs semper parcēbat. 6. Ille nōbis magnō usui erat. 7. Nos miserōs! Templā aedificiaque nostra incendunt. 8. Magistrī nōs multa ēdochēbunt. 9. Nōnne Caesar Rōmam redibit? 10. Plūs vīgintī hominēs aderunt. 11. Hic homo magnā celeritāte ad urbēm properābit. 12. Illōs agrōs magnō pretiō vēnidit. 13. Mīlitibus dīmicantibus, ille Rōmam properābat.

---

<sup>1</sup> Do not translate words in parentheses.

## Lesson 71

### SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS

**414.** The ending of the verb denotes the person. Therefore personal pronouns are expressed as subjects of verbs only in case of emphasis or contrast.

**ego rēgēs ētēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcītis,** *I drove out kings, you are bringing in tyrants.*

**415.** The genitive singular of the personal pronouns (i.e., **meī**, **tuī**) and of the reflexive (i.e., **sui**) is usually used as an objective genitive. The possessive adjectives **meus**, **tuus**, and **suus** are regularly used instead of the possessive genitive.

**416.** The genitives plural **nōstrī** and **vestrī** are used only as objective genitives; the forms **nōstrum** and **vestrum** as genitives of the whole.

**habētis ducem memorem vestrī, oblītum suī,** *you have a leader mindful of you, forgetful of himself.*

**nēmō vestrum,** *no one of you.*

**417.** The possessive adjectives (commonly called pronouns) are usually used only for the purpose of clearness.

**mātrem amō,** *I love my mother.*

**tuam mātrem amō,** *I love your mother.*

### Alius and Alter

**418.** **Alius** means *another* of a group of more than two. **Alter** means either *one* or *the other* of two, or the *second* in a series.

The phrases **alius . . . alius**, and **alter . . . alter** are used correlativey, meaning respectively *one . . . another*, *the one . . . the other*.

The plural **aliū . . . aliū** is translated *some . . . others*.

**dīvitiās aliū praeponunt, aliū potentiam,** *some prefer wealth, others power.*

### 419.

### VOCABULARY

**coniciō, ere, coniēcī, coniectus, hurl.**

**differō, ferre, distulī, dilātus, differ.**

**exitus, ūs, m., exit, passage.**

**fidūcia, ae, f., confidence.**

**institūtum, i, n., institution.**

**laus, laudis, f., praise.**

**memor, oris, mindful.**

**mereor, ērī, meritus sum, deserve.**

**misericordia, ae, f., pity.**

**perdō, ere, didī, ditus, lose.**

**premō, ere, pressī, pressus, press, crowd.**

**subeō, īre, ī, itūrus, approach.**

### EXERCISES

**420.** 1. Ducas nostrī laus nōbis grāta erat. 2. Multī nostrum morientur. 3. Omnes nōs misericordia vestrī movebāmur. 4. Semper este nostrum memorēs. 5. Pater maximam laudem merētur. 6. Quae plūs quam māter tua laudem merētur? 7. Hōrum filiōrum alter occisus,<sup>1</sup> alter captus est. 8. Aliud loquitur, aliud sentit. 9. Omnes populi institutīatis atque legib⁹ inter sē differunt. 10. Milites in castris sēse premēbant.

**421.** 1. I will withdraw at once, you will advance. 2. We were greatly moved by your recollection of us. 3. No one of us will ever deserve such praise. 4. Not even at that time did any one of you withdraw. 5. The ships of the enemy crowded themselves in the passage of the harbor. 6. Some will hurl javelins, others will approach the fortification. 7. One has been killed, the other has been freed. 8. On that very night this captive fled to his own (people).

## Lesson 72

### GENERAL REMARKS ON MOODS

By a mood is meant a special form assumed by the verb to indicate the particular shade of thought that an author wishes to convey to his readers, or a speaker to his hearers.

I. Thus the indicative mood, as its name implies, is used to point out (**indicat**) a fact, stated by the author on his own responsibility. The fact is, was, or shall be true in itself, whether anyone ever notices it or not; e.g., *he is well, he was well, he will be well.*

II. The imperative mood is used not to point out a fact, but to command or will a fact; e.g., *go ye.*

III. The difference between these two moods is clear. The infinitive mood is hardly a mood at all, but rather the verb used as a noun, e.g., *vidēre, the act of seeing.* In Latin, however, it is very widely used as the mood of indirect discourse.

---

<sup>1</sup>*Est* is to be supplied from the following *captus est.*

IV. The subjunctive is the mood which causes the most trouble in the study of Latin. In Latin it has many varied uses, while in English it hardly exists at all.

Thus in Latin the subjunctive is used not to point out a fact, but to add to the simple statement of the indicative some further idea of *uncertainty* or *possibility*. In general it is used to express something which we regard as a mere conception of the mind, such as

- (a) That which we purpose or wish to be a fact.
- (b) That which we refer to as the result of another fact.
- (c) That which we state on authority other than our own.

It should be remembered that conjunctions do not govern mood. The choice of the mood should be made chiefly on a consideration of the sense of the passage, and not because of the presence of certain conjunctions.

All the many uses of the subjunctive which will follow may be summed up under the foregoing three general heads.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

#### Hortatory Subjunctive

**422.** The subjunctive is used to express an exhortation. The negative is **nē**.

*amēmus patriam, let us love our fatherland.*  
*nē cāmus, let us not go.*

#### Deliberative Subjunctive

**423.** The subjunctive is used in questions of a purely rhetorical nature, implying the impossibility of the thing mentioned and expecting no answer. The present tense is used for present time, the imperfect, rarely the perfect, for past time. The negative is **non**.

*quid igitur faciam? what then shall I do?*  
*quid facerem? what was I to do?*  
*ego nōn venirem? was I not to come?*

**424.**

### VOCABULARY

**adeō**, adv., *so much, to such a degree.*

**cōnsidō**, ere, *sēdi, settle.*

**cūra**, ae, f., *trouble, care.*

**cūrō**, āre, āvī, ātus, *care for, take care of.*

**dīmittō**, ere, *mīsi, missus, let go.*

**disciplina**, ae, f., *discipline.*

**laedō**, ere, *laesī, laesus, hurt, injure.*

**nē**, *not.*

**retineō, ēre, ui, tentus, retain.**  
**sūmō, ere, sūmpsi, sūmptus, take.**  
**tegō, ere, texi, tectus, cover.**

### EXERCISES

**425.** 1. Omnes cūrās hodiē dīmittāmus! 2. Mōres et disciplinam maiōrum nostrōrum semper retineāmus! 3. Nemo feminas aut liberōs laedat! 4. Galli in prōvinciā Rōmāna nē cōnsidant! 5. Ego nōn omnia tegerem? 6. Quid igitur loquātur? 7. Quid facerēmus? 8. Germānōs a Rhēnō prohibeāmus! 9. Rōmam contendāmus!

**426.** 1. Let us not let this opportunity go! 2. Let them take care of all their own affairs! 3. Let us all return home! 4. What were they to say? 5. Shall we not defend the fatherland? 6. Let us never forget our friends!

## Lesson 73

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

#### Continued

#### Optative Subjunctive

**427.** The subjunctive is used to express a wish. The negative is **nē**.

The present tense is used where the wish is represented as possible, i.e., in future time; the imperfect for a wish unattained in present time; and the pluperfect for a wish unattained in past time.

The present tense may be preceded by **utinam**; the imperfect and pluperfect are regularly preceded by **utinam:** (**utinam**) **sint beāti**, *may they be blessed.*

**utinam Clōdius viveret**, *would that Clodius were alive.*

**utinam nē vēnisset**, *would that he had not come.*

#### Potential Subjunctive

**428.** The potential subjunctive is used to express ideas set forth by English *may, should or would*; i.e., possibilities, softened assertions, etc. The negative is **nōn**.

The present and perfect denote a present or future possibility; the imperfect a past possibility.

**hoc vōbis incrēdibile videātur**, *this may seem to you incredible.*

**nōn facile dixerim**, *I could not easily say.*

**hoc quis arbitrārētur**, *who would have thought this?*

429.

## VOCABULARY

- comprehendō**, ere, dī, sus, seize.  
**cōsūmō**, ere, sūmpsi, sūmptus, use up.  
**dō**, dāre, dedī, datus, give, render.  
**impūne**, adv., with impunity.  
**intelligō**, ere, lēxi, lēctus, know, understand.  
**iūs**, iūris, n., right, power.  
**opera**, ae, f., assistance.  
**patior**, ī, passus sum, suffer.  
**paullātim**, little by little, gradually.  
**praeclārus**, a, um, splendid, grand.  
**utinam**, affirmative particle.

## EXERCISES

**430.** 1. Omnes suspicōnēs inter amicōs àvertantur! 2. Utinam eōs vīdissēmus! 3. Utinam omnes salvī domum redeāmus! 4. Fortūnam facilius reperiās quam retineās. 5. Omnia in eō locō vidēres. 6. Quis talia arbitrātur? 7. Utinam nē opēs suās cōnsūmpsisset! 8. Utinam talia nē passi essent! 9. Utinam hanc aestātem in his operibus nē cōnsūmpsissēmus!

**431.** 1. They may approve your plans. 2. Would that they had given me an opportunity! 3. You might have found many dangers there. 4. May we never leave our fatherland! 5. Would that he had not abandoned his duty! 6. He may see his parents in Rome. 7. May they bring us assistance at once!

## Lesson 74

## COMMANDS

## Affirmative

**432.** Affirmative commands or requests are expressed by the imperative.

**proficiscere; ēdūc tēcum omnēs tuōs, depart; take out with you all your companions.**

**mihi ignōscē, pardon me.**

## Negative

**433.** Negative commands or prohibition may be expressed in any one of three ways.

(a) **nōlī** or **nōlīte** with the infinitive.

- (b) **cavē** or **cavēte** (**nē**) with the present subjunctive.  
 (c) perfect subjunctive with **nē**.

**nōlī hoc putāre**, *don't think this.*

**cavē** (**nē**) **fēstīnēs**, *do not be in a hurry.*

**nē audiveris**, *hear not.*

### 434.

### VOCABULARY

- dictum**, *i*, n., *word, utterance.*  
**ērudio**, *ire*, *īvī* or *īi*, *ītus*, *instruct, teach.*  
**familiāris**, *e*, *intimate, familiar.*  
**fīniō**, *īre*, *īvī* or *īi*, *ītus*, *limit, bound, end.*  
**flētus**, *ūs*, m., *weeping.*  
**ignoscō**, *ere*, *nōvī*, *nōtus*, *pardon, excuse.*  
**ingenium**, *i*, n., *talent, natural disposition.*  
**lacrimae**, *ārum*, f., plu., *tears.*  
**lēniō**, *īre*, *īvī*, or *īi*, *ītus*, *mollify, mitigate.*  
**ornātus**, *ūs*, m., *ornament, dress.*  
**plōrō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, *weep.*

### EXERCISES

**435.** 1. *Nōbīs*, *militēs*, *operam date.* 2. *Relinquite hunc locum statim*, *et domum redite!* 3. *Omnibus qui adsunt ignōscite.* 4. *Rōmam nōlī festināre.* 5. *Dicta tua nē fīniveris.* 6. *Cave plōrēs calamitates.* 7. *Labōrēs captivōrum lēnite.* 8. *Talia nē ērudiveris.* 9. *Omnēs ornātūs dīmitte.*

**436.** 1. *Pardon all the soldiers who were absent.* 2. *Excuse his words as much as possible.* 3. *Do not advance to the town.* 4. *Let them mitigate the labors of those men.* 5. *Let us excuse the weeping even of men.* 6. *Do not withdraw from that place now.*

## Lesson 75

### TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

#### 437.

#### Sequence of Tenses

The use of the various tenses of the subjunctive in independent sentences has been given under each of the different kinds of independent subjunctives.

The use of the tenses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses depends on the following laws known as Sequence of Tenses.

The tenses of the indicative and subjunctive are divided into two classes; primary or principal, and secondary or historical.

Under primary or principal tenses come the present, future, present perfect, and future perfect indicative; and the present and perfect subjunctive.

Under secondary or historical are the imperfect, historical perfect, and pluperfect indicative; and the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive.

Note that the perfect indicative has two uses, as a present perfect denoting action just completed in present time; and as a historical perfect denoting definite past action.

In subordinate clauses which take the subjunctive, only primary tenses may follow primary tenses in the main clause; and only secondary tenses may follow secondary tenses in the main clause.

The present and imperfect subjunctive denote incomplete action, the perfect and pluperfect completed action, just as in the indicative.

**438.** Thus indirect questions always take the subjunctive in Latin, and the various rules of Sequence of Tenses are illustrated by the following examples.

#### Primary or Principal Sequence

(a) Incomplete Action in the Subordinate Clause.

*rogō quid faciās, I ask what you are doing.*

*rogābō quid faciās, I shall ask what you are doing.*

*rogāverō quid faciās, I shall have asked what you are doing.*

(b) Completed Action in the Subordinate Clause.

*rogō quid fēcerīs, I ask what you have done.*

*rogābō quid fēcerīs, I shall ask what you have done.*

*rogāverō quid fēcerīs, I shall have asked what you have done.*

#### Secondary or Historical Clause

(a) Incomplete Action in the Subordinate Clause.

*rogābam quid facerēs, I asked what you were doing.*

*rogāvī quid facerēs, I asked what you were doing.*

*rogāveram quid facerēs, I had asked what you were doing.*

(b) Completed Action in the Subordinate Clause.

*rogābam quid fēcissēs, I asked what you had done.*

*rogāvī quid fēcissēs, I asked what you had done.*

*rogāveram quid fēcissēs, I had asked what you had done.*

### 439.

#### VOCABULARY

*coniungō, ere iūnxī, iūnetus, unite.*

*consuētūdō, inis, f., custom, habit.*

**Crassus**, *i.*, *m.*, *Crassus* (*a man's name*).  
**existō**, *ere*, *exstiti*, *exstītūm*, *arise*.  
**magnitūdo**, *inis*, *f.*, *size*, *extent*.  
**mōtus**, *ūs*, *m.*, *revolt*.  
**pietās**, *ātis*, *f.*, *affection*, *piety*.  
**remaneō**, *ēre*, *mānsi*, *mānsūrus*, *remain*.  
**sciō**, *īre*, *scīvī*, *scītus*, *know*.  
**societās**, *ātis*, *f.*, *association*, *alliance*.  
**ūtilitās**, *ātis*, *f.*, *advantage*.

### EXERCISES

**440.** 1. *Sciunt quae exstiterint.* 2. *Videbāmus quās mūnitionēs hostes facerent.* 3. *In illo locō trēs hōras remanēte.* 4. *Scient quid factum sit.* 5. *Castra in locīs superiōribus pone.* 6. *Duōs exercitūs nē coniūnxeris.* 7. *Scivimus quae legiō castra dēfendisset.* 8. *Nōn scivimus in quibus castrīs mīlitēs Rōmāni essent.* 9. *Videāmus quae nūntiū nūntient.* 10. *Utinam operā tuā ūsus essem!*

**441.** 1. *Do not tell the extent of the revolt.* 2. *Let us see what the alliance of the Gauls has accomplished.* 3. *The advantages of an alliance should be many.* 4. *We knew what disasters the enemy had suffered.* 5. *They will know at once what the general thinks.* 6. *They knew what advantages they had received from the state.* 7. *We should scarcely believe you.*

## Lesson 76

### CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

**442.** Purpose is usually expressed by a subjunctive clause introduced by **ut** if affirmative, by **nē** if negative.

The rules of sequence of tenses are followed strictly as in all subordinate subjunctive clauses.

**oportet ēsse, ut vīvas, nōn vīvere ut edas**, *you should eat, that you may live, not live that you may eat.*

**portās clausit, nē quam oppidāni iniūriam acciperent**, *he closed the gate, in order that the townspeople might not receive any injury.*

**443.** The subjunctive is used in relative clauses to express purpose.

**lēgātūm mittit, quī Caesarem videat**, *he sends his lieutenant to see Caesar.*

**habēbam quō cōnfugerem**, *I had a place where I could take refuge.*

**444.** When a purpose clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, it is always introduced by **quō**.

**adūtā mē, quō id fīat facilius,** *help me in order that this may be done more easily.*

### RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC.—CAUSAL CLAUSES

#### Clauses of Characteristic

**445.** When the antecedent of a relative pronoun is indefinite, and the clause expresses some quality or characteristic of it, the subjunctive is used.

**secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castrīs continērent,** *storms followed which kept our men in camp.*

**446.** The Clauses of Characteristic are used especially after such words and phrases as **tālis, sōlus, dignus, indignus, sunt qui, nemo est qui, unus est qui**, etc.

**sunt qui dicant,** *there are those who say.*

**ūnus est sōlus inventus qui dissidēret,** *only one man was found who disagreed.*

#### Causal Clauses

**447.** Clauses introduced by **quod, quia, and quoniam, because**, take the indicative if the reason is given as a fact and on the authority of the writer or speaker himself; if not given as a fact or given on the authority of some one else, the subjunctive is used.

**quia nātūra mūtārī nōn potest, idcīrō vērae amīctiae sempiternae sunt,** *because nature cannot change, therefore true friendships are everlasting.*

**noctū ambulābat in pūblicō Themistoclēs quod somnum capere nōn posset,** *Themistocles used to walk in public at night, because (he said) he could not get to sleep.*

**448. Cum** meaning *since* takes the subjunctive.

**Haedui cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt,** *since the Haedui could not defend themselves, they sent deputies to Caesar.*

**449.**

#### VOCABULARY

**appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātus, approach.**

**commūtātiō, ūnis, f., change.**

**cōsistō, ere, cōnstitū, consist.**

**cum, because, since.**

**dēspiciō, ere, exī, ectus, despise.**

**iūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, swear, take oath.**

**nē, lest, that . . . not.**

**obsidēō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, blockade.**

**paucitās, ātis, f., fewness, small number.**

**quō, in order that; regularly used when followed by a comparative.**

**quod, because.**

**quoniam, īasmuch as, conj.**

**ūnus, a, um, one, alone.**

**ut, that, in order that.**

### EXERCISES

450. Caesar in Galliam festīnavit, nē tantae natiōnēs coniungerentur.  
 2. Omnes remanēbunt ut suspicīōnem timōris vītent. 3. Oppidum mānūvimus quō hostibus facilius resisterēmus. 4. Nūntium Rōmam misit qui omnia nūntiāret. 5. Sunt qui tālia dicant. 6. Multi sunt qui haec sciant. 7. Hostēs acriter pugnābant, quod fēminaē et liberī eōs accēndēbant. 8. Mīlites ad Caesarem vēnērunt quod lēgatōs dēspicerent. 9. Germāni appropinquant, cum Rōmānōs propter paucitatem dēspiciant. 10. Magna commūtatiō rērum facta est quoniam Caesar vēnit.

451. 1. They are approaching the camp that they may attack it.  
 2. We fortified the place that it might be defended more easily. 3. There are soldiers who always fight bravely. 4. The Germans sent envoys to ask for peace. 5. Because they saw the great number of men they did not attack. 6. The leader accuses his soldiers because (=on the ground that) they did not resist the enemy. 7. There was no one who did not take oath.

## Lesson 77

### CLAUSES OF RESULT.—CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

#### Result Clauses

452. Result is regularly expressed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut**. The negative is **nōn**.

**sunt ita multī, ut eōs carcer capere nōn possit, they are so many that a prison can not hold them.**

#### Concessive Clauses

453. Clauses introduced by **quamquam**, *although*, take the indicative.

**quamquam festinās, nōn est mora longa,** although you are in a hurry, the delay is not long.

**454.** *quamvis* and *cum*, meaning *although*, take the subjunctive.

**senectūs quamvis nōn sit gravis, tamen aufert viriditātem,** although old age is not burdensome, nevertheless it takes away one's energy.

**cum prīmī ūndīnēs concidissent, tamen reliquī resistēbant,** although the first ranks gave way, yet the rest resisted.

### 455.

### VOCABULARY

**ardeō, ēre, -rsī, -rsus,** *take fire, kindle.*

**carcer,** *eris, m., prison, jail.*

**comperiō, īre, peri,** *pertus, find out.*

**famulus, ī,** *m., servant, attendant.*

**festus, a, um,** *solemn, festive.*

**impendeō, ēre, —, —,** *overhang, threaten.*

**ordo, inis, m.,** *order, rank or line (of soldiers)*

**perpaucus, a, um,** *very little, very few.*

**renovo, āre, āvī, ātus,** *renew.*

**sublevō, āre, āvī, ātus,** *relieve.*

**tam,** *so (of degree).*

**viriditās, ātis, f.,** *freshness, vigor.*

### EXERCISES

**456.** 1. Nōn tam barbari sunt, ut haec nōn sciant. 2. Rōmāni angustiās obsidebunt, ut hostēs ex finib⁹ suis exire nōn possint. 3. Quamquam nostri proelium renovāverunt, Galli non discesserunt. 4. Quamvis in una virtute omnis spēs salutis cōsisteret, impetum sustinere nōn potuerunt. 5. Duce⁹ sociōs accūsant quod ab eis nōn subleventur. 6. Quamquam latro in carcere erat, omnēs timēbant. 7. Impetus statim factus est ut perpauci hostium fugerent. 8. Galli castra obsēderant nē nūntiū exire possent. 9. Adulēscētes viriditātem habent quae nōn est in senectūte. 10. Cum causam comperire nōn possent, aedificia omnia subitō ardēbant.

**457.** 1. Who is there that (=who) is so foolish. 2. Romans are so brave that they fear no one. 3. Let us make the attack suddenly so that the enemy will be greatly terrified. 4. Although the town was well fortified, the people did not defend it. 5. Such words were spoken by the delegates that Caesar dismissed them at once. 6. The general decided to send delegates to him to ask for a conference.

## Lesson 78

### TEMPORAL CLAUSES

#### Temporal Clauses with **cum**

**458.** **Cum**, meaning *when*, takes the indicative if the clause refers to present or future time.

**Rōmae videor esse cum tuās litterās legō**, *I seem to be in Rome when I read your letter.*

**459.** When **cum**, meaning *when*, refers to past time, the indicative is used when the time is merely defined; but the subjunctive is used when some circumstance connected with it is stated.

The difference is the same as that between the relative clause of fact and the relative clause of characteristic.

This distinction, however, is not always followed strictly by Roman writers.

**eō cum veniō, praetor quiescēbat**, *when I got there, the praetor was resting.*

**cum inambulārem in xystō, ad mē Brūtus venit**, *while I was walking in the portico, Brutus came to me.*

#### Temporal Clauses with **postquam**, **ubi**, etc.

**460.** **Postquam**, *after*; **ubi**, *ut*, *when*; and **simul ac** (**simul atque**), **cum primum**, *as soon as*, referring to a past occurrence, take the indicative, usually the perfect.

**postquam Caesar pervenit, obsidēs poposcit**, *after Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages.*

**simul atque intrōductus est, rem cōnfēcit**, *as soon as he was brought in, he finished the affair.*

### 461.

### VOCABULARY

**animadvertisō**, *ere, vertī, versus, notice.*

**cognōscō**, *ere, nōvī, nitus, learn, become acquainted with.*

**cum**, *when, conjunction.*

**ēiciō, ere, ēiēci, ēiectus**, *thrust out; sē eicere, rush forth.*

**exeō, ire, iū, exitūrus**, *go out, go forth.*

**factiō, ūnis, f., faction.**

**gaudeō, ēre, gāvisus sum**, *rejoice, delight in.*

**incendium, i., n., fire, conflagration.**

**ōmen, inis, n., foreboding.**

**postquam**, *after, conjunction.*

**postrēmō**, adv., *at last, in the end.*

**quaerō**, **ere**, **quaesīvī**, **quaesītus**, *inquire, seek.*

**simul ac** (**atque**), *as soon as.*

**subdūcō**, **ere**, **dūxī**, **ductus**, *withdraw.*

### EXERCISES

- 462.** 1. Postquam milites id animadverterunt, e castris exierunt.  
 2. Cum omnia cognōvit, sē eicere voluit. 3. Simul ac īmen malōrum cognōverunt, pācem petiverunt. 4. Cum Caesar ad oppidum accēderet, populus statim sē subdūcebat. 5. Ubi dux e militibus quaesīvit, incendī causam repperit. 6. Cum Caesar Rōmam vēnisset, duae factōnes in Gallis factae sunt. 7. Caesar cum veniet, omnia cognōscet. 8. Postrēmō ut milites nostri ex castris sē eiēcerunt, hostes ex agris exibant. 9. Cum hōc dixisset, omnes gāvisti sunt.

- 463.** 1. After the soldiers crossed the river, they pitched camp.  
 2. When he learned everything, he went away. 3. As soon as the cavalry rush forth from the camp, the enemy withdraw into the forest. 4. All will rejoice greatly, when they notice these things. 5. When Caesar comes, he will seek the cause of the conflagration. 6. As soon as the women and children withdrew, they made the attack.

### REVIEW

- 464.** 1. Ea ipsā nocte hic captīvus ad suos fugit. 2. Alius vōs laudabit, aliis culpabit. 3. Disciplinae maiōrum meminerimus. 4. Quid igitur dicerēmus. 5. Utinam hanc aestātem in his operibus nē cōsumpsissēmus. 6. Vestrīs legatis, milites, operam date. 7. Nē calamitates plōraveris. 8. Nōnnulli remanebant ut suspicioṇem timōris vitarent. 9. Videāmus quae pueri dicant. 10. Impetus statim facietur nē hostēs fugiant.

## Lesson 79

### TEMPORAL CLAUSES, Continued

- 465.** Clauses introduced by **dum**, **donec**, **quoad**, and **quam diū**.

**Dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**, and **quam diū**, meaning *as long as, while*, take the indicative, usually the same tense as that of the main verb.

**hostēs populi Rōmānī fuimus, quoad nostra arma nōs tūtāri poterant**, *we were enemies of the Roman people, as long as our arms could protect us.*

**Dum**, meaning *as long as, while*, usually takes the present indicative, regardless of the tense of the main verb.

**Dum, dōnec, and quoad**, meaning *until*, take the subjunctive when referring to time after that of the main verb, but the indicative when referring to time before that of the main verb.

**dōnec rediit, mānsimus**, *we remained until he came.*  
**dum veniat ibi opperībere**, *you shall wait here until he comes.*

## 466.

## VOCABULARY

**adversārius**, *iī, m., adversary.*

**agō, ere, ēgī, actus**, *do.*

**anima**, *ae, f., air, the breath of life.*

**communiō, ire, ivī or iī, itus**, *fortify strongly.*

**convīva, ae, m., or f., guest.**

**dōnec**, *until.*

**dum, while, until, as long as.**

**itaque, and thus, therefore.**

**iūcundus, a, um, adj., agreeable, pleasant, delightful.**

**magistrātus, ūs, m., magistrate.**

**Massilia, ae, f., Marseille.**

**perficiō, ere, fēci, factus, accomplish.**

**silentium, iī, n., silence.**

**tamen, nevertheless, yet.**

## EXERCISES

- 467.** 1. Dum Rōmāni haec perficiunt, Galli adorti sunt. 2. Quoad nōbīs anima erit, pugnābimus. 3. Itaque exspectāvimus dum nūntii a Caesare pervenirent. 4. Dum lēgātū exspectāmus, castra commūniūmus. 5. In oppidō silentium erat, dōnec milites ex castris pervenerunt. 6. Magistrātus ibi remānsit, dum exercitū vīdit. 7. Dux Massiliae exspectāvit dum navēs convenirent. 8. Silentium agāmus, donec omnia cognoscāmus.

- 468.** 1. They will not go away, until they see the general. 2. While they were keeping silence, we were strongly fortifying the camp. 3. As long as there were two factions in the state, there was not peace. 4. He waited two days until you should come. 5. As long as our adversaries did not attack, we kept quiet. 6. Nevertheless let us withdraw before the enemy arrives.

## Lesson 80

### SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

**469.** A Substantive Clause is one which is used as a noun. As a noun it may be used in any case, although its use as either the subject or object of a verb is most common.

### SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH VERB IN INDICATIVE

**470.** *Quod*, meaning *that* or *the fact that*, introduces the only common substantive clause with the verb in the indicative.

*accidit perincommodē quod eum nūquam vīdistī, it happened very unfortunately that you did not see him anywhere.*

### SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH VERB IN SUBJUNCTIVE

**471.** Clauses with the subjunctive are used as objects of verbs meaning *to command, induce, advise, ask, allow, decide, strive, accomplish, etc.* The connective is *ut* or *nē*.

*petō quaesōque ut tuōs mēcum servēs, I ask and beg that you save your friends together with me.*

**472.** Verbs of *hindering* are followed by the subjunctive in a substantive clause introduced by *nē, quīn, or quōminus*.

*prohibuit quōminus in unum coirēmus, he kept us from coming together.*

*impedior nē plūra dicam, I am prevented from saying more.*

**473.** Expressions of *doubting* or *ignorance* with a negative expressed or implied take a substantive clause with the subjunctive introduced by *\*quīn*. The most common expressions of this kind are, *nōn dubitō, nōn dubium est, quis dubitat, quis ignōrat, etc.*

*quis ignōrat quīn tria Graecōrum genera sint? who does not know that there are three kinds of Greeks?*

*nōn dubitat quīn brevī sit Trōia peritūra, he does not doubt that Troy is soon to fall.*

### 474.

### VOCABULARY

*concēdō, ere, cessī, cessurūs, grant.*

*dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētus, decree, decide.*

*magnificentia, ae, f., grandeur, splendor, greatness.*

*obtemperō, āre, āvī, ātus, obey.*

*permittō, ere, misī, missus, permit.*

**praecipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus, enjoin.**

**quīn, but that.**

**quōminus, from (only with verbs of hindering).**

**reiciō, ere, reiēci, reiectus, hurl back.**

**schola, ae, f., school.**

**sequor, ī, secūtus sum, seek, follow.**

**transportō, āre, āvi, ātus, transport.**

### EXERCISES

**475.** 1. Quod milites mandatis nōn obtemperāvērunt, mihi nōn placet. 2. Postulō ut haec omnia flant. 3. Dux mīlitibus praecēpit nē ullum omnīnō telum in hostēs reicerent. 4. Nōn dubitō quīn pueri a schola iam redierint. 5. Décrētum est ut exercitus flāmen trānsportārētur. 6. Omnes prohibuit nē excēderent. 7. Hostes prohibuit quōminus in unum cofrent. 8. Nūntiō praecēpit ut Rōmam statim contendēret. 9. Nōbis persuāsit ut Rōmae sex diēs manēremus. 10. Nōn dubitō quīn fuerit maxima virtūte.

**476.** 1. The general commanded the soldiers to take the town. 2. They did not doubt but that the Romans had already withdrawn. 3. You permitted the enemy to ravage the towns and fields. 4. The senate decreed that the war should be carried on. 5. The fleet of the enemy prevented us from transporting the grain. 6. I do not doubt but that the cavalry followed the enemy.

### Lesson 81

#### SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH SUBJUNCTIVE, Continued

**477.** Verbs meaning to wish and to desire are followed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **nē**. The most common verbs of this kind are **optō, volō, and mālō**.

**optō ut beātus sis, I want you to be happy.**

**478.** Verbs meaning to fear (**timeō, metuō, vereor**) are followed by the subjunctive introduced by **nē** or **ut**. Note carefully that after verbs of fearing **nē** means *that, lest*; and **ut** means *that not*.

**timeō nē hōc faciat, I fear lest he does this (or will do this).**

**timeō ut hoc faciat, I fear that he will not do this.**

**479.** Verbs meaning *to bring about, to accomplish*, take the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **ut non**. These are substantive clauses of result.

**haec rēs commeātūs ut portārī possent efficiēbat, this thing brought it about that provisions could be carried.**

Clauses with the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **ut non** are often used as the subject of impersonal verbs.

**accidit ut omnēs Hermae dēicerentur, it happened that all the Hermae were thrown down.**

**vērum nōn est; sequitur ut falsum sit, it is not true; it follows that it is false.**

## 480.

## VOCABULARY

**clādēs, is, f., destruction, defeat.**

**ēdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, lead forth.**

**lēgātiō, ūnis, f., embassy.**

**lūdibrium, ī, n., mockery, sport; habeō in ludibriō, deride, mock.**

**optō, āre, āvi, ātus, desire.**

**plebs, is, f., common people.**

**praetereā, besides.**

**prīmō, first, firstly.**

**rescindō, ere, scidi, scissus, tear down.**

**sic, so, in this way.**

**tergum, ī, n., back.**

**vertō, ere, verti, versus, turn; terga vertere, flee.**

**vinculum, ī, n., bond, fetter.**

## EXERCISES

**481.** 1. Optō ut lēgatiō quam prīmū redeat. 2. Praetereā veritus sum nē Galli nōs in ludibriō habērent. 3. Gravitas periculi fecit ut celeriter terga verterēmus. 4. Sic eōdem diē accidit ut dux Rōmānus suōs ēdūceret. 5. Plebs optavit nē tribūnis vincula essent. 6. Prīmō timuit nē aedificium rescidissent. 7. Sic effecit ut populus cladem nōn cognōseret. 8. Maxime optāmus nē magistratūs illas contrōversiās habeant. 9. Accidit ut eo diē in urbe nōn remaneret. 10. Vereor ut socii nostri impetum hostium sustineant.

**482.** 1. I desire that all return home. 2. It happened that resources were lacking. 3. They brought it about that the general was informed of everything. 4. I greatly fear that the allies will flee. 5. He feared that our men would not endure the attack of the enemy. 6. Thus it happened that the embassy returned to Rome within a few days. 7. They fear lest the enemy will this night cross the river.

## Lesson 82

### INDIRECT QUESTIONS

**483.** Indirect Questions take the Subjunctive, and depend on verbs of *asking*, *inquiring*, and the like.

Indirect questions may be introduced by,

(a) Interrogative Pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs.

**rogō tē ubi fuerīs et quid fēcerīs, I ask you where you were and what you did.**

(b) The Particles **-ne**, **num**, without distinction of meaning. The Particle **nōnne** is used only after **quaerō**.

**Pūblilius itūrusne sit et quandō ex Alediō scire poteris, whether Pūblilius intends to go and when, you can learn from Aledius.**

**quaerō ā tē nōnne oppressam rem pūblicam putēs, I ask you whether you do not think the state is burdened.**

Note how the introductory particles of indirect questions differ from those of direct questions.

### 484.

### VOCABULARY

**cōsequor, sequī, secūtus sum, pursue, overtake.**

**dē tertiā vigiliā, at about the third watch** (a watch was equal to a fourth of the night).

**dēnique, adv., finally, at last.**

**explōrātor, ūris, m., scout.**

**in animō habeō, mihi est in animō, I have in mind, intend.**

**inter sē dare, to exchange, give each other.**

**praemittō, ere, mīsī, missus, send ahead, dispatch.**

**spatiū, ī, n., space, time, opportunity.**

### EXERCISES

**485.** 1. Gallis erat in animō iter per prōvinciam facere. 2. Cūr cohortēs ex castrīs ēducere vultis? 3. Caesar ab explōrātōribus rogavit ubi essent hostēs. 4. Dux ab hostibus quaeſivit nōnne in animō habērent obsidēs inter sē dare. 5. Ab captivis quaeſivit quantae civitātes in armis essent. 6. Rogāvimus num esset spatiū. 7. Dēnique vidimus quid hostēs facerent. 8. Legati Gallōrum nōb̄is dixerunt quae sibi in animō essent. 9. Germāni a duce Rōmānō rogāvērunt cūr in suōs finēs prōcessisset. 10. Germāni a duce Rōmānō rogāvērunt: "Cur in nostrōs finēs prōcessisti?"

**486.** 1. He asked whether the scouts returned to camp at about the third watch. 2. Caesar asked the envoys what they wished. 3. Do you know whether anyone is going to Rome? 4. When was the battle fought? 5. He asked when the battle was fought. 6. We soon found where the enemy was. 7. The Gauls dispatched envoys who should exchange hostages. 8. Let us ask the messenger what towns the enemy has captured.

## Lesson 83

### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

**487.** A Conditional Sentence has two parts, the Protasis or condition, and the Apodosis or conclusion. The Protasis or condition is regularly introduced by *sī, if; nisi, unless; or sīn, but if.*

There are three kinds of conditions, used as follows:

#### 488. SIMPLE CONDITIONS

Simple Conditions merely state a case, and imply nothing as to its reality or fulfilment. They may be in present, past, or future time, and have in each case the proper tense of the indicative.

*sī hōc facis, bene est, if you do this, it is well.*

*sī hōc facies, bene erit, if you do this (lit., if you will do this) it will be well.* (Sometimes called *future more vivid.*)

*sī hōc fecisti, bene fuit, if you did this, it was well.*

#### 489. CONDITIONS OF POSSIBILITY

The Condition of Possibility states a case as being possible in some future time. The verbs in both parts of the sentence are in the subjunctive and are usually translated with the auxiliaries should and would respectively.

*sī deus tē interroget, quid respondeās? if a god should ask you, what would you answer?*

*sī hōc faciās, bene sit, if you should do this, it would be well.*

#### 490. CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT

Conditions Contrary to Fact state situations which do not exist. The subjunctive is used in both clauses, the imperfect for a contrary to fact condition in present time, the pluperfect for a contrary to fact condition in past time.

*sī hōc facerēs, benē esset, if you did this, it would be well.*

**si amicus meus adesset, gaudērem,** if my friend were present, I would rejoice.

**si hōc fecisses, bene fuisseſt,** if you had done this, it would have been well.

**nisi tū amisissēs, numquām recēpiſſem,** unless you had lost it, I would never have found it.

## 491.

## VOCABULARY

**adventus, ūs,** m., approach, arrival.

**aeternus, a, um,** everlasting, eternal.

**apud,** prep. with acc., among, with.

**autem,** conj. (never first in a sentence), but, however.

**honor, òris,** m., honor.

**immortālis, e,** immortal.

**incertus, a, um,** uncertain.

**inde,** adv., thence, thereupon.

**mandō, āre, āvī, ātus,** assign.

**nisi,** unless.

**opprimō, ere, pressī, pressus,** overwhelm.

**pateō, ēre, patui,** lie open.

**provideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus,** provide, take care.

**valeō, ēre, ui,** itūrus, avail, prevail.

**vīs (vis), f., violence;** pl., vīrēs, ium, strength.

## EXERCISES

492. 1. Si post mortem est vīta aeterna, mors nōn est timenda.  
 2. Si equites statim cōsequentur, magnum hostium numerum occident.  
 3. Si amici nostri Rōmae sunt, laeti sumus. 4. Helvēti flāmen Rhodanum trānsiissent, nisi dux Rōmānus in Galliam contendisset. 5. Rēs pūblica oppressa esset, nisi cōſul valuisset. 6. Si via pat̄eret, Galli in prōvinciam iter facerent. 7. Si hostibus vīrēs sint, oppugnent. 8. Si haec mihi mandārēs, laetus essem. 9. Si autem ē castris discesseris, ab hostibus interficiēris. 10. Plūrēs Gallōrum occisi essent, si nostri celerius cōſecūti essent.

493. 1. If you should go to Athens, you would see many beautiful buildings. 2. If we return to Rome, we will be happy. 3. If the soul is immortal, death is not to be feared. 4. If my authority had not been uncertain, I would have received more honor. 5. If a general commands, the soldier obeys. 6. If the soldiers are brave, there is always hope of victory. 7. If the leader fortifies the town well, no one will be afraid. 8. If he were brave, he would talk less.

## Lesson 84

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*Orātiō Obliqua*).

**494.** The words or thoughts of a person may be given directly (direct discourse), just as he spoke or thought, or they may be given indirectly (indirect discourse), in the words of some one else.

**495.** When given indirectly, the words or thoughts of a person depend or are the object of some verb of *saying*, *thinking*, *knowing*, *perceiving*, etc.

Thus we have Direct Discourse in, *Caesar said, "The die is cast"*; but Indirect Discourse in, *Caesar said that the die was cast*.

**496.** In Latin, declarative sentences in Indirect Discourse change their main clause to the infinitive with a subject accusative, and all subordinate clauses take the subjunctive.

### DIRECT DISCOURSE

**sī iterum experīrī volunt, parātus sum dēcertārē, if they wish to try again, I am ready to fight it out.**

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**Ariovistus respondit, sī iterum experīrī velint, sē parātum esse dēcertārē, Ariovistus replied that if they wished to try again, he was ready to fight it out.**

### TENSES OF INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**497.** Tenses of the infinitive in indirect discourse denote time not by themselves but with reference to the verb on which they depend.

(a) The present infinitive denotes the same time as that of the verb on which it depends.

**dicit sē labōrārē, he says that he is working.**

**dixit sē labōrārē, he said that he was working.**

(b) The perfect infinitive denotes time previous to that of the verb on which it depends.

**dicit sē labōrāvisse, he says that he has worked.**

**dixit sē labōrāvisse, he said that he had worked.**

(c) The future infinitive denotes time after that of the verb on which it depends.

**dicit sē labōrātūrum esse, he says that he will work.**

**dixit sē labōrātūrum esse, he said that he would work.**

**TENSES OF SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE**

**498.** The tenses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse follow the regular principles of Sequence of Tenses.

**dicunt sē lēgātōs vidēre, quī adfuerint,** *they say that they saw the ambassadors who were present.*

**dixérunt sē lēgātōs vidēre, quī adfuissent,** *they said that they saw the ambassadors who had been present.*

**499.****VOCABULARY**

**adveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, arrive.**

**arbitrō, ārī, ātus sum, consider.**

**audiō, īre, īvī, ītus, hear.**

**Dīviciācūs, ī, m., Diviciacus, a powerful Haeduan.**

**ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, reveal, disclose.**

**incolō, ere, uī, cultus, inhabit.**

**īnferior, ius, inferior.**

**īnfirmus, a, um, weak.**

**modo, just, just now.**

**neque (nec), nor.**

**pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus, rout, defeat.**

**renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, bring back word, report.**

**EXERCISES**

**500.** 1. Dicunt Dumnorīgem esse summa audācia. 2. Dicit sē sc̄re illa esse vēra. 3. Existimāsne hās legiōnēs, quae modo advēnerint, Infirmās esse? 4. Renūntiāvērunt maximās natiōnēs a Caesare pulsās esse. 5. Dīxit milītēs quōs sēcūm habuisset fortissimōs fuisse. 6. Caesar dicit suōs flūmen, quod altissimum sit, trānsire nōn posse. 7. Num putāvistis eōs qui fortēs essent discessūrōs esse? 8. Arbitrō nūntium, qui a Caesare missus sit, ab hostib⁹ tenērī. 9. Nemō putavit eōs, qui hōc oppidum incoluissent, discessisse. 10. Dīviciācūs Caesarī dīxit sē velle dē hīs rēbus cum eō agere.

**501.** 1. He says that this is the river which the Gauls crossed. 2. I think that our men are holding inferior positions. 3. He announced that the enemy had been routed. 4. I hear that the town which the Gauls inhabit is being fortified. 5. He says that the man whom we see is his friend. 6. He said that the man whom we saw was his friend. 7. It was reported that the general would fortify the hill which he had seized.

## Lesson 85

### THE INFINITIVE

**502.** The infinitive is used as the subject of **est** and various impersonal verbs. When so used, the infinitive may have a subject accusative and may take a predicate noun or adjective.

**longum est ea dicere,** *the telling of these things is a long story.*

**eōs hōc nōmine appellārī fās est,** *it is right that they be called by this name.*

**503.** The infinitive without the subject accusative is used as the object of many verbs, to complete their meaning. These are known as Complementary Infinitives. The most common verbs which take this infinitive are **volō, mālō, nōlō; debeō, ought; audeō, dare; and statuō, decide.**

**bellum cum Germānis gerere constituit,** *he decided to wage war with the Germans.*

**504.** The infinitive with the subject accusative is used as the object of many verbs;

(a) Verbs meaning to *say, think, know, perceive.* This is the regular construction of principal clauses in indirect discourse. See previous lesson.

(b) Verbs meaning to *order, compel, forbid, permit, or teach.* The verbs **iubeō, I order, and vetō, I forbid,** are very common.

**tertiā aciem castra mūnīre iussit,** *he ordered the men of the third line to fortify the camp.*

### 505.

### VOCABULARY

**comparō, āre, āvī, ātus, get ready.**

**cōnstat, stāre, stitit, it is evident.**

**cōsuēscō, ere, suēvī, suētum, become accustomed.**

**dispōnō, ere, posuī, positus, distribute.**

**iubeō, ēre, iussi, iussus, order.**

**nanciscor, ī, nactus sum, procure.**

**necessē est, it is necessary.**

**opus est, it is necessary.**

**praestat, it is better.**

**statuō, ere, uī, ūtus, decide.**

**studeō, ēre, uī, ——, be eager for (with dative); novīs rēbus studērē, to be eager for a revolution.**

### EXERCISES

**506.** 1. Laudari est gratum. 2. Incolas ē oppidō exire iussit. 3. Opus est copiam frumenti ad castra mitti. 4. Caesar legatum auxilium mittere iussit. 5. Constat magnum numerum barbarorum ad oppidum venisse. 6. Dux plurēs milites nancisci statuit. 7. Galli agrōs vastare consueverunt. 8. Consul nūntium cum decem equitibus in Galliam contendere iubebit. 9. Necesse est impedimenta comparare. 10. Illi milites ex hibernis egredi nōn ausi sunt. 11. Consulēs praesidia disponere statuerunt. 12. Officium est militum prō patriā fortiter pugnare et moriri.

**507.** 1. I decided to get the troops ready. 2. To be brave in battle is the duty of every one. 3. It is better to procure more aid. 4. He ordered us to summon the messengers. 5. It is necessary to fortify the camp with a wall. 6. It is evident that many soldiers arrived in the night. 7. It was easy to capture the town. 8. The general had decided to storm the town on the march.

## Lesson 86

### PARTICIPLES

**508.** Participles are verbal adjectives. As adjectives, they modify nouns and agree with them in gender, number, and case. As verbs, they have voice and tense, and govern cases.

### TENSE OF PARTICIPLES

**509.** A participle denotes time with reference to that of the verb in its own clause.

The present participle denotes an action as going on at the time of the action of the verb.

**pugnāns occiditur, he is killed while fighting.**

**audiēbam tē loquentem, I heard you speaking.**

The perfect participle shows an action already completed at the time of the action of the verb.

**audītus, sedeō, having been heard, I sit down.**

**audītus sēdi, having been heard, I sat down.**

**audītus sedēbō, having been heard, I will sit down.**

### USE OF PARTICIPLES

Participles are often equivalent to an English subordinate clause, expressing a variety of relations, such as time, cause, means, manner, condition, etc.

**longius prōsequī veritus, ad Cicerōnem pervenit,** because he feared to follow further, he came to Cicero. (Cause.)

**flentēs implorābant,** they begged with tears. (Manner).

**mente ūti nōn possumus, cibō et pōtiōne complēti,** if filled with food and drink, we cannot use our mind. (Condition.)

The perfect participle often expresses an idea which in English would be put in a coordinate clause.

**multōs vicōs captōs incendit,** he captured and burned many villages (lit., he burned many villages captured).

## 510.

### VOCABULARY

**cernō, ere, —, —, perceive.**

**circum, prep. with acc., around.**

**cōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus, see.**

**diligentia, ae, f., diligence, carefulness, industry.**

**experior, īrī, pertus sum, try, test.**

**interimō, ere, ēmī, emptus, destroy, kill.**

**latus, eris, n., side, flank.**

**mūrus, ī, m., wall.**

**oculus, ī, m., eye.**

**permovereō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, influence, arouse.**

**persequor, ī, secūtus sum, follow up.**

**submittō, ere, mīsī, missus, send, despatch.**

**tueor, ērī, —, —, guard, watch.**

### EXERCISES

- 511.** 1. Videbam eum id agentem. 2. Milites missōs nōn culpavit.  
 3. Caesar cōsul factus in Galliam contendit. 4. Galli his rēbus permōti  
 obides miserunt. 5. Multos hostium captōs interēmit. 6. Nostrī  
 hostēs circum mūrum prōgredientes cernunt. 7. Diligentiam vestram  
 saepe expertus, vōs nunc ad turrim tuendam vocō. 8. Hostēs latera  
 adorientes vidimus. 9. Dux hostēs pulsōs persequetur. 10. Sociīs,  
 quos implorantes cōspexit, subsidium submisit.

- 512.** 1. (Since) the captive (had been) condemned (he) was killed.  
 2. (Though) wounded, he fought for a long time. 3. Our men were  
 killed (while) fighting bravely. 4. When he had been informed of this,  
 he hastened to Rome. 5. The general captured (participle) the town and  
 fortified it. 6. The leaders of the Gauls (who were) captured will be sent  
 to Rome.

## Lesson 87

## GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

**513.** The Gerund is a verbal noun. As a verb it governs cases, and as a noun it itself may be used in the constructions of the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases. In form, it is the neuter singular of the future passive participle.

*ars vivendi, the art of living.*

*studiosus tē audiendi, desirous of hearing you.*

*mēns discendō alitur, the mind is nourished by learning.*

**514.** The Gerundive is a verbal adjective. As a verb it governs cases, and as an adjective it agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun it modifies. In form, it is the singular and plural of all genders of the future passive participle.

*initia sunt cōnsilia urbis dēlendae, plans have been formed for destroying the city.*

*dīes rogātiōni ferendae, the day for proposing the measure.*

**515.** Either the gerund or gerundive construction may usually be used to express the same idea.

*cupidus poetam audiendi, desirous of hearing the poet* (Gerund).

*cupidus poetae audiendi, desirous of hearing the poet* (Gerundive).

*dēlector ūrātōrēs legendō, I am delighted with reading the orators* (Gerund).

*dēlector ūrātōribus legendīs, I am delighted with reading the orators* (Gerundive).

## THE SUPINE

**516.** The Supine in **-um** is used with verbs of motion to express purpose, and it may take any construction that the verb from which it is derived may.

*lēgātōs mittunt rogātūm auxiliū, they send envoys to ask for help.*

*nōn Grāis servitūm mātribus ibō, I shall not go to be a slave to the Greek matrons.*

**517.** The Supine in **-ū** is used with adjectives as an ablative of specification. It never takes a dependent case.

*terribilēs višū formae, figures terrible to see.*

*mirābile dictū, wonderful to tell.*

## 518.

## VOCABULARY

- ad multam noctem**, *till late at night.*  
**administrō, āre, āvī, ātus, perform.**  
**aliēnus, a, um, unfavorable.**  
**causā, abl., for the sake of; always preceded by the genitive.**  
**cohortor, ārī, ātus sum, encourage, exhort.**  
**cōnsector, ārī, ātus sum, follow up.**  
**dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, point out, show, mention.**  
**effugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, escape.**  
**explorō, āre, āvī, ātus, examine.**  
**praedō, ūnis, m., robber.**  
**signa inferō, charge (literally, bear the standards against).**  
**tūtus, a, um, safe.**  
**versor, ārī, ātus sum, he engaged in.**

## EXERCISES

**519.** 1. Legatus finem loquendi fecit. 2. Legati ad pacem petendam vēnerunt. 3. Galli de bellō Rōmāns inferendō cōnsilia faciebant. 4. Tempus hostibus ad signa inferenda alienum fuit. 5. In castris mūniendis versabatur. 6. Effugiendi causa omnia faciebat. 7. Principes Gallorum ad Caesarem vēnerunt auxilium petitum. 8. Haec rēs est difficilis dēmōstratū. 9. Ad multam noctem in his rēbus administrandis versabatur. 10. Quaerunt quid optimum factū sit. 11. De hostibus cōnectandis colloquāmur.

**520.** 1. This is easier to say than to do. 2. The ambassadors were sent to Rome to seek peace. 3. For many days he was engaged in following up the enemy. 4. For the sake of examining the enemy's position he sent out very many scouts. 5. This place was unfavorable for fighting. 6. Many kings are desirous of carrying on wars.

## REVIEW

**521.** 1. In castris silentium erat, donec Caesar Rōmā pervenit. 2. Cōsules exspectāvērunt dum nāvēs convenirent. 3. Postulavit ut militēs mandatis suis obtemperārent. 4. Hostēs prohibuērunt nē Rōmam statim contenderemus. 5. Cōsules effēcerunt ut socii clādem nōn cognōscerent. 6. Veritus sum nē omnia amitterēmus. 7. Nōs rogavit quid fecissēmus. 8. Si a castellō discessissemus, ab hostibus interfectus essēs. 9. Caesar arbitrabatur hās civitātes sibi amicās futūras esse. 10. Bellī inferendī causa in prōvinciam trānsiit.

**PRINCIPAL RULES OF SYNTAX**

1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.
2. A noun used with and explaining another noun, denoting the same person or thing, is called an appositive, and is said to be in apposition.
3. An appositive agrees with its noun or pronoun in case, and, if possible, in number and gender.
4. A noun connected with the subject by some form of the verb **sum** or other intransitive verb is called a predicate noun.
5. A predicate noun agrees in case and, whenever possible, in number and gender, with the noun which it modifies.
6. The vocative case is the case of address, and is the same as the nominative except in the second declension, when it usually ends in **-e**.
7. The genitive of possession is used to denote ownership.
8. The subjective genitive denotes the person who does the act indicated by the noun on which it depends.
9. The objective genitive denotes the object of an action implied in a noun or an adjective.
10. The genitive of the whole denotes the whole from which a part is taken.
11. The appositional genitive is used to define a word of general meaning.
12. The genitive of quality is used with a noun to denote a quality of that noun.
13. The genitive of specification is used with a few nouns and many adjectives to denote that with reference to which a quality exists.
14. Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, and *acquitting* take a genitive of the charge.
15. With **interest** the person or thing concerned is denoted by the genitive. If, however, the person concerned is expressed in English by a pronoun, the Latin uses the ablative singular feminine of the corresponding possessive adjective.
16. The genitive is sometimes used with verbs and adjectives, meaning *plenty* or *want*.
17. **Memini** and **reminiscor**, when they mean to be *mindful of*; **memini**, meaning to *mention*, and **obliviscor**, meaning to be *unmindful of*, take the genitive.
18. **Memini** and **reminiscor**, meaning literally to *remember*, to *retain in mind*, and **obliviscor**, meaning literally to *forget*, take the accusative.
19. The impersonal verbs **miseret**, **paenitet**, **piget**, **pudet**, and

**taedet** take the accusative of the person affected, and the genitive of the cause of the feeling.

20. Transitive verbs take the accusative of the direct object, and the dative of the indirect object.

21. Many intransitive verbs take the dative especially those signifying *favor, help, injure, please, displease, trust, distrust, command, obey, serve, resist, indulge, spare, pardon, envy, threaten, believe, persuade*, and the like.

22. The dative of the indirect object is used with many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub, and super.**

23. The dative of reference is used to denote the person to whom a statement refers or of whom it is true, or to whom it is of interest.

24. The dative is used with forms of **sum** to denote the possessor.

25. The dative is used with the gerundive to express the agent.

26. The dative is often used to express the purpose or tendency of an action. This is often used with another dative (Reference), denoting the person concerned.

27. The dative is used with adjectives denoting *friendliness, hostility, likeness, unlikeness, equality, nearness, relation, fitness*, etc.

28. The direct object of a verb is in the accusative case.

29. The accusative is used in exclamations.

30. Verbs meaning to *make, choose, call, shew*, etc., may take two accusatives, one of the direct object, the other of the predicate accusative.

31. A predicate accusative may be an adjective as well as a noun.

32. Some verbs meaning to *ask, demand, teach, conceal*, etc., take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing.

33. Verbs compounded with **circum** or **trans** may take two accusatives, one depending on the verb, the other on the preposition.

34. The limit of motion is expressed by the accusative with a preposition.

35. With names of towns, small islands, **domus**, and **rūs** the preposition is regularly omitted.

36. Extent of time or space is regularly expressed by the accusative.

37. Verbs or adjectives denoting separation take the ablative with or without a preposition. The preposition is usually omitted with words of *freeing, depriving, and lacking.*

38. The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**.

39. The comparative adjectives are regularly followed by **quam** and a substantive in the same case.

40. The ablative is used to denote cause. The ablative of cause is sometimes used with a preposition, **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**.

41. Accompaniment is regularly expressed by the ablative with the preposition **cum**.

42. The ablative is used to denote the manner in which an act is performed. If the noun is unaccompanied by an adjective, the preposition **cum** is also used.

43. The ablative of a noun modified by an adjective is used to denote a quality. This construction may be used attributively or predicatively.

44. The ablative is used to denote the means or instrument by which an act is done.

45. The ablative of means is used with **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, and **vescor**.

46. The expressions **opus est** and **ūsus est** take the ablative.

47. Verbs meaning to *fill* and adjectives meaning *full* take the ablative.

48. Two words in the ablative, usually a noun or pronoun and a participle, are often used in a loose connection with a sentence to express any one of a number of ideas, such as *time*, *cause*, *manner*, *condition*, *concession*, etc.

49. The ablative is used with verbs of *buying* and *selling* to denote the price.

50. The ablative is used with comparatives and words implying comparison to show the degree of difference.

51. The ablative of specification is used to denote that in respect to which something is or is not true.

52. The ablative of specification is used with **dignus** and **indignus**.

53. The place where a thing is or is done is usually expressed by the ablative with **in**.

54. Names of towns, however, except singulars of the first and second declensions take the ablative without a preposition.

55. Place from which is regularly expressed by the ablative with the preposition **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**.

56. Names of towns, however, **domus** and **rūs**, use the ablative without a preposition.

57. The time when or within which anything takes place is expressed by the ablative.

58. The locative case denotes place where. It occurs regularly in the singular names of towns and small islands of the first and second declensions, and also in a few special words, like **domī**, **humī**, **bellī**, **militiae**, and **rūri**.

59. The subjunctive is used to express an exhortation. The negative is **nē**.

60. The subjunctive is used in questions of a purely rhetorical nature, implying the impossibility of the thing mentioned and expecting no answer. The negative is **nōn**.

61. The optative subjunctive is used to express a wish. The negative is **nē**.

62. The potential subjunctive is used to express ideas set forth by English *may*, *should*, or *would*. The negative is **nōn**.

63. Affirmative commands or requests are expressed by the imperative.

64. Negative commands or prohibition may be expressed by **nōli**, or **nōlīte** with the infinitive, by **cavē** or **cavēte** (**nē**) with the present subjunctive, or by the perfect subjunctive with **nē**.

65. According to the rules of tense sequence, the principal tenses of the indicative are followed by the principal tenses of the subjunctive; the historical by the historical.

66. Purpose is usually expressed by a subjunctive clause introduced by **ut** if affirmative, by **nē** if negative.

67. The subjunctive is used in relative clauses to express purpose.

68. When a purpose clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, it is always introduced by **quōd**.

69. When the antecedent of a relative pronoun is indefinite, and the clause expresses some quality or characteristic of it, the subjunctive is used.

70. Causal clauses take the indicative if the reason is given on the authority of the writer or speaker himself; the subjunctive if given on the authority of some one else.

71. **Cum** meaning *since* takes the subjunctive.

72. Result is regularly expressed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut**. The negative is **nōn**.

73. Clauses introduced by **quamquam** take the indicative.

74. **Cum** meaning *when* takes the indicative if the clause refers to present or future time.

75. When **cum**, meaning *when*, refers to past time, the indicative is used when the time is merely defined; but the subjunctive is used when some circumstance connected with it is stated.

76. **Postquam**, *after*; **ubi**, **ut**, *when*; and **simul ac** (**simul atque**), **cum primum**, *as soon as*, referring to a past occurrence, take the indicative, usually the perfect.

77. **Dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**, and **quamdiū**, meaning *as long as*, *while*, take the indicative; usually the same tense as that of the main verb.

78. **Dum**, meaning *as long as, while*, usually takes the present indicative, regardless of the tense of the main verb.

79. **Dum, dōnec, and quoad**, meaning *until*, take the subjunctive when referring to time after that of the main verb, but the indicative when referring to time before that of the main verb.

80. **Quod**, meaning *that or the fact that*, introduces the only common substantive clause with the verb in the indicative.

81. Clauses with the subjunctive are used as objects of verbs meaning to *command, induce, advise, ask, allow, decide, strive, accomplish*, etc. . The connective is **ut** or **nē**.

82. Verbs of hindering are followed by the subjunctive in a substantive clause introduced by **nē, quīn, or quōminus**.

83. Expressions of doubting or ignorance with a negative expressed or implied take a substantive clause with the subjunctive introduced by **quīn**.

84. Verbs meaning to *wish* and to *desire* are followed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **nē**.

85. Verbs meaning to *fear* are followed by the subjunctive introduced by **nē** or **ut**. Remember that after verbs of fearing **nē** means *that, lest*; and **ut** means *that not*.

86. Verbs meaning to *bring about, to accomplish* take the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **ut nōn**.

87. Clauses with the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **ut nōn** are often used as the subject of impersonal verbs.

88. Indirect questions take the subjunctive, and depend on verbs of *asking, inquiring*, and the like.

89. A conditional sentence has two parts, the protasis or condition, and the apodosis or conclusion. The protasis or condition is regularly introduced by **sī, if; nisi, unless; or sīn, but if**.

90. Simple conditions merely state a case, and imply nothing as to its reality or fulfilment. They may be in present, past, or future time, and have in each case the proper tense of the indicative.

91. The condition of possibility states a case as being possible in some future time. The verbs in both parts of the sentence are in the subjunctive and are usually translated with the auxiliaries *should* and *would* respectively.

92. Conditions contrary to fact state situations which do not exist. The subjunctive is used in both clauses, the imperfect for a contrary to fact condition in present time, the pluperfect for a contrary to fact condition in past time.

93. Declarative sentences on being put into indirect discourse change

their main clause to the infinitive with a subject accusative, and all subordinate clauses take the subjunctive.

94. Tenses of the infinitive in indirect discourse denote time not by themselves, but with reference to the verb on which they depend.

95. The infinitive is used as the subject of *est* and various impersonal verbs. When so used, the infinitive may have a subject accusative and may take a predicate noun or adjective.

96. The infinitive without the subject accusative is used as the object of many verbs, to complete their meaning. These are known as complementary infinitives.

97. The infinitive with the subject accusative is used as the object of many verbs.

98. A participle denotes time with reference to that of the verb in its own clause.

99. The gerund is a verbal noun. As a verb it governs cases, and as a noun it itself may be used in the various constructions of each case.

100. The gerund is a verbal adjective. As a verb it governs cases, and as an adjective it agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun it modifies.

101. The supine in *-um* is used with verbs of motion to express purpose.

102. The supine in *-ū* is used with adjectives as an ablative of specification.



**PART III**  
**LATIN FOR TRANSLATION**



## Latin Prayers

### THE SIGN OF THE CROSS

1. In nomine Patris, et Filii, et Spiritus Sancti. Amen.

### THE LORD'S PRAYER

2. (See Introduction).

### THE ANGELICAL SALUTATION

3. Ave Maria, grātia plēna; Dominus tēcum; benedicta tu in mulieribus, et benedictus fructus ventris tuī, Iēsus. Sancta Maria, Māter Dei, ora p̄ nob̄is peccatōribus, nunc et in hora mortis nostrarē. Amen.

### THE APOSTLES' CREED

4. Crēdo in Deum, Patrem omnipotentem, Creatōrem caeli et terrae. Et in Iēsum Christum, Filiū eius unicum, Dominum nostrum; qui conceptus est dē Spīritū Sanctō, natus ex Mariā Virgine, passus sub Pontio Pilatō, crucifixus, mortuus, et sepultus; dēscendit ad inferōs; tertīa die resurrēxit a mortuis; ascendit ad caelos, sedet ad dextram Dei Patris omnipotentis; inde venturus est iudicare vivōs et mortuōs. Crēdo in Spīritum Sanctum, sanctam Ecclesiām Catholicām, Sanctōrum communīōnem, remissiōnem peccatōrum, carnis resurrectiōnem, vitam aeternām. Amen.

### GLORIA PATRI

5. Glōria Patri, et Filiō, et Spīritū Sanctō. Sicut erat in principio, et nunc, et semper, et in saecula saeculōrum. Amen.

### THE CONFITEOR

6. Confiteor Deō omnipotenti, bēatae Mariæ semper virgini, bēatō Michaeli archangelō, bēatō Ioanni Baptistae, sanctis apostolis Petrō et Paulō, et omnibus sanctis, quia peccavī nimis, cōgītatiōne, verbō, et opere, meā culpā, meā culpā, meā maximā culpa. Ideo precor bēatam Mariam semper virginem, bēatum Michaelem archangelum, bēatum Ioannem Baptistam, sanctōs apostolōs Petrum et Paulum, et omnēs sanctōs, ora p̄ mē ad Dominum Deum nostrum.

Misereatur mei omnipotens Deus, et dimissis peccatis meis, perdūcat mē ad vitam aeternā. Amen.

Indulgentiam, absolutionem, et remissionem peccatōrum meōrum, tribuat mihi omnipotens et misericors Dominus. Amen.

7.

**SALVĒ REGINA**

Salvē, Regina, Māter misericordiae;  
 Vita, dulcedo, et spēs nostra, salve.  
 Ad tē clāmāmus, exulēs filii Hevae;  
 Ad tē suspirāmus, gementēs et flentēs in hac lacrymārum valle.  
 Eia, ergō, Advocāta nostra,  
 Illōs tuōs misericordes oculōs ad nōs converte;  
 Et Iesum, benedictum fructum ventris tuī,  
 Nōbis post hōc exilium ostende.  
 O clemens, O pia, O dulcis Virgo María.

V. Orā prō nōbīs, sancta Dei Genitrix,  
 R. Ut digni efficiāmur prōmissiōnibus Christi.

**MEMORĀRE**

8. Memorāre, O piissima Virgo María, nōn esse auditum a saeculō, quemquam ad tua currentem praesidia, tua implorantem auxilia, tua petentem suffrāgia, esse dērelictum. Ego, tāli animātus confidentiā, ad tē, Virgo Virginum, Māter, currō; ad te veniō, cōram tē gemēns peccātor assistō. Nōlī, Māter Verbi, verba mea dēspicere, sed audi propitia et exaudi. Amen.

**ORĒMUS**

9. Gratiā tuam, quae sumus, Domine, mentib⁹ nostris infunde; ut qui, angelō nuntiante, Christi filii tuī incarnatiōnem cognōvimus, per passiōnem eius et crucem ad resurrectiōnis gloriā perducāmur; per eundem Christum Dominum nostrum. Amen.

**Latin Hymns**

10.

**TANTUM ERGŌ**

Tantum ergō Sacrāmentum  
 Venerēmur cernui:  
 Et antiquum documentum  
 Novō cēdat rītu:  
 Praestet fidēs supplēmentum  
 Sensuum dēfectū.

Genitōrī, Genitōque  
 Laus et iubilatiō,  
 Salūs, honor, virtūs quōque  
 Sit et benedictiō:  
 Prōcēdenti ab utrōque  
 Compar sit laudatiō.

## 11.

DE NATIVITATE DOMINI<sup>1</sup>

Puer natus in Bethlehem,	De matre natus Virgine
Unde gaudet Ierusalem.	Sine virili semine;
Hic iacet in praesepio,	Sine serpentis vulnere
Qui regnat sine termino.	De nostrō vēnit sanguine;
Cognovit bōs et asinus	In carne nobis similis,
Quod puer erat Dominus.	Peccatō sed dissimilis;
Reges de Saba veniunt	Ut redderet nos homines
Aurum, tūs, myrrham offerunt.	Deo et sibi similes.
Intrantēs domum invicem	In hoc natāli gaudeo
Novum salūtant Principem.	Benedicāmus Dominō.

Laudētur sancta Trinitas,  
Deo dicāmus grātias.

## 12.

DE RESURRECTIONE DOMINI<sup>2</sup>

Pōne luctum, Magdalēna,	Tolle vultum, Magdalēna,
Et serena lacrimas;	Redivīvum obstupe;
Nōn est iam Simōnis coena,	Vide frons quam sit amoena,
Nōn cūr fletum exprimas;	Quinque plagas aspice;
Causae mille sunt laetandi,	Fulgent sicut margaritae,
Causae mille exultandi:	Ornamenta novae vitae:
Alleluia resonet.	Alleluia resonet.
Sūme rīsum, Magdalēna,	Vive, vive, Magdalēna,
Fronis nitescat lūcida;	Tua lux reversa est,
Dēmigrāvit omnis poena,	Gaudiis turgescat vēna,
Lux coruscat fulgida;	Mortis vis abstera est;
Christus mundum liberāvit,	Moesti procul sunt dolores,
Et de morte triumphavit:	Laeti redeant amores:
Alleluia resonet.	Alleluia resonet.
Gaude, plaudē, Magdalēna,	
Tumbā Christus exit,	
Tristis est peracta scēna,	
Victor mortis rediit;	
Quem dēflebas morientem,	
Nunc arridē resurgentem:	
Alleluia resonet.	

<sup>1</sup> This poem was written by Henricus Pistor, a theologian who lived in Paris at the end of the fourteenth and the beginning of the fifteenth centuries.

<sup>2</sup> Written by Peter the Venerable, who in 1122 was elected Abbot of Clugny in Burgundy.

## 13.

IN PASSIONE DOMINI<sup>1</sup>

Quam dēspectus, quam dēiectus,  
Rex caelorum est effectus,  
Ut salvaret saeculum;  
Esurivit et sitivit,  
Pauper et egēnus ivit  
Usque ad patibulum.

Recordare paupertatis,  
Et extrēmae vilitatis,  
Et gravis supplici.  
Si es compos ratiōnis,  
Estō memor passiōnis,  
Fellis et absinthii.

Cum dēductus est immensus,  
Et in cruce tunc suspensus,  
Fūgerunt discipuli.  
Mandū, pedes perfōderunt,  
Et acētō pōtaverunt  
Summum Rēgem saeculi;

Cūius oculi beati  
Sunt in cruce obscurati,  
Et vultus expalluit:  
Suō corpori tunc nūdo  
Nōn remansit pulchritudo,  
Decor omnis aufugit.

Qui haec audīs, ingemisce,  
Et in istis planctum misce,  
Et cordis moestitiās:  
Corpus ange, corde plange,  
Mentem frange, manū tange  
Christi mortis saevitas.

Virum rēspice dolōrum,  
Et novissimum virōrum,  
Fortem ad supplicia.  
Tibi grātum sit et aequum  
Iam in cruce mortē secum,  
Compati convicia.

Crucifice, fac mē fortē,  
Ut libenter tuam mortem  
Plangam, dōnec vixerō.  
Tēcum volō vulnerārī,  
Te libenter amplexārī  
In cruce dēsiderō.

## 14.

## DE CRUCE DOMINI

Crux avē benedicta!  
Per tē mors est dēvicta,  
In tē pependit Deus,  
Rex et Salvātor meus.  
Tu arborum rēgina,  
Salutis medicina,  
Pressōrum est levamen,  
Et tristium solamen.

Ō sacrōsanctum lignum!  
Tū vitae nostrae signum,  
Tulisti fructum Iēsum  
Humanū cordis ēsum  
Dum crucis inimicōs,  
Vocabis, et amicōs,  
O Iēsu, Fili Det,  
Sis, örō, memor met.

<sup>1</sup> Written by St. Bonaventure, a member of the Franciscan Order and a famous theologian of the thirteenth century.

## 15.

DE NOVISSIMO IUDICIÓ<sup>1</sup>

Dies irae, dies illa	Iudex ergo quum sedebit,
Solvet saeculum in favilla,	Quidquid latet, apparebit,
Teste David cum Sibylla.	Nil inultum remanebit.
Quantus tremor est futurus,	Quid sum miser tum dicturus,
Quando Iudex est venturus,	Quem patrōnum rogaturus,
Cuncta stricte discussurus.	Quum vix iustus sit securus?
Tuba mirum spargens sonum	Rex tremenda maiestatis,
Per sepulchra regiōnum	Qui salvandos salvās grātis,
Cōget omnes ante thronum.	Salve mē, fons pietatis.
Mors stupēbit et natūra,	Recordare, Iesu pie,
Quum resurget creatūra,	Quod sum causa tuae viae:
Iudicant responsura.	Nē mē perdas illa diē!
Liber scriptus prōferetur,	Quaerens mē sedisti lassus,
In quo tōtum continetur,	Redemisti crucem passus:
De quo mundus iudicetur.	Tantus labor nōn sit cassus.
Iuste Iudex ultiōnis,	Preces meae nōn sunt dignae,
Dōnum fac remissiōnis	Sed tū bonus fac benigne
Ante diem ratiōnis.	Nē perenni cremer igne
Ingemiscō tanquam reus,	Inter ovēs locum praestā,
Culpa rubet vultus meus:	Et ab haedis mē sequestrā,
Supplicantī parce, Deus.	Statuēns in parte dextra.
Qui Mariam absolvisti,	Confutatis maledictis,
Et latrōnem exaudisti,	Flammis acribus addictis,
Mihi quoque spem dedisti.	Vocā mē cum benedictis.
Ōrō supplex et acclinis Cor contritum quasi cinis: Gere cūram mei finis.	

<sup>1</sup> Written by Thomas of Celano, a scholar and friend of St. Francis of Assisi, and one of the earliest members of the order founded by him in 1208.

## Selections from Nepos<sup>1</sup>

### HANNIBAL

*His greatness as a general, and his hatred of the Romans*

**16.** Hannibal, Hamilcaris filius, Karthaginiensis. Si verum est, quod nemō dubitat, ut populus Rōmānus omnes gentēs virtūte superarit, nōn est infitiandum<sup>2</sup> Hannibalem tantō praestitisse ceterōs imperatōres prudētia, quantō populus Rōmānus antecēdat fortitudine cūntas natiōnēs. Nam quotiēscumque<sup>3</sup> cum eō<sup>4</sup> congressus est in Ītaliā, semper discessit superior. Quod<sup>5</sup> nisi domi ciuit̄ suōrum invidia debilitātus<sup>6</sup> esset, Rōmānōs vidētur superare potuisse.<sup>7</sup> Sed multōrum obtrēctatiō<sup>8</sup> dēvicit tūfus virtūtem.

Hic autem velut<sup>9</sup> herēditate relictum odium<sup>10</sup> paternum<sup>11</sup> erga<sup>12</sup> Rōmānōs sic cōservavit, ut prius animam quam id<sup>13</sup> deposuerit; qui quidem, cum patriā pulsus esset et alienārum opum indigeret,<sup>14</sup> numquam dēstiterit animō bellare cum Rōmānis.

---

<sup>1</sup> Born in town of Ticinum (Pavia) in Northern Italy, about B. C. 100. Died about B. C. 24. An essayist rather than a historian.

<sup>2</sup> Infitor, arī, atus, sum, deny.

<sup>3</sup> quotiēscumque, as often as.

<sup>4</sup> eō, i. e., populō Rōmānō.

<sup>5</sup> Quod nisi, unless then.

<sup>6</sup> debilitō, are, avī, atus, weaken.

<sup>7</sup> would have been able.

<sup>8</sup> obtrēctatiō, ónis, f., jealousy.

<sup>9</sup> velut herēditate, by inheritance as it were.

<sup>10</sup> odium, f. n., hatred, grudge.

<sup>11</sup> paternus, a, um, of a father; here his father's.

<sup>12</sup> erga, towards.

<sup>13</sup> id, i. e., odium.

<sup>14</sup> indigēret, needed.

*Hannibal's Vow*

17. Nam<sup>1</sup> ut<sup>1</sup> omittam Philippum, quem absens hostem reddidit Rōmānis, omnium iis temporibus potentissimus rēx Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditatē incendit<sup>2</sup> bellandi, ut usque a rubro<sup>3</sup> mari arma cōnatus sit inferre Italiae. Ad quem cum legati venissent Rōmāni, qui de eius voluntatē explorarent darentque<sup>4</sup> operam cōnsiliis clandestinis<sup>5</sup> ut Hannibalem in suspicionem regi<sup>6</sup> adducerent, tamquam<sup>7</sup> ab ipsis corruptus alia<sup>8</sup> atque antea sentiret, neque id frustra fecissent, idque Hannibal comperisset sēque ab interioribus cōnsiliis sēgregari<sup>9</sup> vidisset, tempore<sup>10</sup> datō adiit ad rēgem, eique cum multa de fide suā et odio in Rōmānos commemorasset, hoc adiūnxit. "Peter meus," inquit, "Hamilcar, puerulō<sup>11</sup> mē, utpote<sup>12</sup> nōn amplius novem annos nato,<sup>13</sup> in Hispaniam imperator proficisciens Karthagine, Iovi optimō maximō hostias<sup>14</sup> immolavit. Quae divina rēs dum cōficiēbatur, quaesivit a mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficisci. Id cum libenter accēpisset atque ab eo petere<sup>15</sup> coepisset nē dubitaret ducere, tum ille, 'faciam,' inquit, 'si mihi fidem, quam postulō, dederis.' Simul mē ad aram<sup>16</sup> adduxit, apud quam sacrificare<sup>17</sup> instituerat, eamque ceteris remōtis tenentem iūrare iussit, numquam mē in amicitia cum Rōmānis fore. Id ego iūsiūrandum patri datum usque ad hanc aetatem ita cōservavī, ut nēminī dubium esse dēbeat, quin reliquō tempore eadem mente sim futūrus. Quare si quid amīcē<sup>18</sup> de Rōmānis cōgitabis nōn imprudenter feceris si mē<sup>19</sup> cēlaris; cum quidam bellum parābis, te ipsum frustraberis<sup>20</sup> si nōn mē in eo principem posueris."

<sup>1</sup> ut omittam, *to omit.*<sup>2</sup> Hannibal is understood as subject.<sup>3</sup> ruber, rubra, rubrum, *red.*<sup>4</sup> darent operam, *try.*<sup>5</sup> clandestinus, -a, -um, *hidden, secret.*<sup>6</sup> regi, *in the king's eyes.*<sup>7</sup> tamquam, *as if.*<sup>8</sup> alia atque antea sentiret, *felt differently than before.*<sup>9</sup> sēgregō, are, avi, atus, *separate, exclude.*<sup>10</sup> tempore, *chance.*<sup>11</sup> puerulus, I, m., *little boy.*<sup>12</sup> utpote, *namely, as being.*<sup>13</sup> nātō, agrees with me.<sup>14</sup> hostia, ae, f., *victim.*<sup>15</sup> petere nē dubitaret, *beg him not to hesitate.*<sup>16</sup> āra, ae, f., *altar.*<sup>17</sup> sacrificō, are, avi, atus, *sacrifice.*<sup>18</sup> amīcē, adv., from amīcus.<sup>19</sup> mē, *from me.*<sup>20</sup> fruſtror, ari, atus sum, *deceive, trick.*

*Hannibal's campaign in Spain, and his march over the Alps*

18. Hac igitur quā diximus aetate cum patre in Hispāniam proiectus est; cuius post obitum, Hasdrubale imperatōre suffectō,<sup>1</sup> equitatui omni praeiuit. Hoc quoque interfectō, exercitus summam imperiū ad eum dēlulit. Id<sup>2</sup> Karthaginem dēlatum publice comprobatum<sup>3</sup> est. Sic Hannibal minor quinque et vīginti annīs natus imperatōr factus proximō trienniō<sup>4</sup> omnes gentes Hispāniae bellō subēgit;<sup>5</sup> Saguntum foederatam<sup>6</sup> civitatem, vī expugnāvit, třes exercitūs maximōs comparāvit. Ex his unum in Africam misit, alterum cum Hasdrubale fratre in Hispānia reliquit, tertium in Ītaliā sēcum duxit. Saltum<sup>7</sup> Pyrenaeum trānsiit. Quācumque<sup>8</sup> iter fecit, cum omnibus incolis cōfīxīt; nēminem nisi vīctum dīmisit. Ad Alpēs posteāquām vēnit, quae Ītaliā ab Galliā sēiungunt,<sup>9</sup> quās nēmō umquam cum exercitū ante eum praeter Herculem Grāium trānsierat (quō factō is hodie saltus Grāius appellatur), Alpicōs cōnantes prohibēre trānsitū<sup>10</sup> concidit, loca patefecit, itinera māniit,<sup>11</sup> effēcit ut eā<sup>12</sup> elephantis ḥrnatus<sup>13</sup> ire posset, quā anteā ūnus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere.<sup>14</sup> Hac cōpiās trādūxit in Ītaliāque pervēnit.

<sup>1</sup> sufficiō, ere, fēci, fectus, *appoint instead.*

<sup>2</sup> Id, i. e., his appointment.

<sup>3</sup> comprobō, are, āvi, atus, *approve.*

<sup>4</sup> triennium, i., n., *a period of three years.*

<sup>5</sup> subēgit, *subdued.*

<sup>6</sup> foederatūs, a, um, *allied.*

<sup>7</sup> Saltum, *mountain range.*

<sup>8</sup> quācumque, quāecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whatever.*

<sup>9</sup> sēiungō, ere, iūni, iānctus, *separate.*

<sup>10</sup> trānsitus, ūs, m., *passage.*

<sup>11</sup> māniit, *built.*

<sup>12</sup> eā . . . qua, *there . . . where.*

<sup>13</sup> ḥrnatus, *with its load.*

<sup>14</sup> rēpō, ere, rēpsi, rēptum, *creep.*

*The victories in Italy*

19. Cōfluxerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Corneliō Scipiōne cōsule eumque pepulerat. Cum hōc eōdem Clastidi<sup>1</sup> apud Padum dēcernit sauciumque inde ac fugātum dimittit. Tertiō idem Scipiō cum collegā Tiberiō Longō apud Trebiam aduersus eum vēnit. Cum iis manum cōseruit;<sup>2</sup> utrōsque prōfligavit. Inde per Ligures Appenninum trānsiit, petens Etrūriam. Hōc itinere adeō gravi morbo adficitur oculōrum, ut postea numquam dextrō aequē bene ūsus sit. Qua valetudine cum etiam tum premerētur lecticāque<sup>3</sup> ferretur, C. Flaminiūm cōsulem apud Trasumēnum cum exercitu īsidiis circumventum occidit, neque multō post C. Centēnum praetōrem cum dēlectā manū saltū occupantem. Hinc in Apuliam pervēnit. Ibi obviam<sup>4</sup> et vēnerunt duo cōsules, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utriusque exercitū tūnō proeliō fugavit. Paulum cōsulem occidit et aliquot praetereā cōsulāres, in iis Cn. Serviliūm Geminū, qui superiore annō fuerat cōsul.

<sup>1</sup> Clastidi, locative case.

<sup>2</sup> cōserō, ere, serui, sertus, *join*; with manum, *join battle*.

<sup>3</sup> lectica, ae, f., *couch, sedan*.

<sup>4</sup> obviam, *to meet*.

*He outwits Fabius and defeats the Roman generals*

20. Hāc pugnā pugnāta, Rōmam profectus est nūllō resistente. In propinquis urbī montibus morātus est. Cum aliquot ibi diēs castra habuisset et Capuā reverteretur, Q. Fabius Maximus, dictator Rōmānus, in agrō Falernō ei sē obiecit. Hic clausus locōrum angustiis, noctū sine ullō dētrimentō exercitus<sup>1</sup> se expedivit Fabioque, callidissimō imperātori, dedit<sup>2</sup> verba. Namque obducta<sup>3</sup> nocte sarmenta<sup>4</sup> in cornib⁹ iuvencōrum<sup>5</sup> deligata incendit eiusque generis multitūdinem magnam dispalatam<sup>6</sup> immisit. Quō repentinō obiectō visū,<sup>7</sup> tantum terrōrem iniēcit<sup>8</sup> exercitū Rōmānorū ut ēgredi extrā vallum nēmō sit ausus. Hanc post rem gestam nōn ita multis diēbus M. Minucium Rāfum, magistrum<sup>9</sup> equitū parū ac<sup>10</sup> dictatōrem imperiō, dolō prōductum in proelium fugavit. Tiberium Semprōniūm Gracchum, iterum cōsulem, in<sup>11</sup> Lūcanis absens<sup>12</sup> in īnsidiās inductum sustulit. M. Claudiū Mārcellūm, quīnqūies<sup>13</sup> cōsulēm, apud Venusiam parū modō interfecit. Longum est omnia ēnumerāre proelia. Quārē hoc unum satis erit dictum, ex quō intellegi possit quantus ille fuerit: quamdiū in Italia fuit, nēmō ei in aciē restitit, nēmō adversus eum post Cannēensem pugnam in campō castra posuit.

<sup>1</sup> exercitūs, objective genitive after dētrimentō.

<sup>2</sup> dedit verba, *deceived*.

<sup>3</sup> obductā nocte, *under the cover of night*.

<sup>4</sup> sarmenta, *twigs*.

<sup>5</sup> iuvencus, I, m., *bullock*.

<sup>6</sup> dispālor, ari, atus, *wander about*.

<sup>7</sup> visus, ūs, m., *sight*.

<sup>8</sup> iniēcit, Hannibal is understood as subject.

<sup>9</sup> magister, ri, m., *master, commander*.

<sup>10</sup> ac dictatōrem, *to that of dictator*.

<sup>11</sup> in Lūcanis, modifies sustulit.

<sup>12</sup> absens, *although not in command personally*.

<sup>13</sup> quīnqūies, *five times*.

*Hannibal, after retiring from Italy, is defeated by Scipio at Lama*

**21.** Hinc invictus patriam defensum<sup>1</sup> revocatus bellum gessit adversus P. Scipiōnem, filium eius Scipiōnis, quem ipse primō apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertīō apud Trebiam fugārat. Cum hoc exhaustis<sup>2</sup> iam patriae facultatibus cupivit impraesentiārum<sup>3</sup> bellum compōnere,<sup>4</sup> quō valentior postea congrederetur. In colloquium convēnit, condicōnes nōn convēnerunt.<sup>5</sup> Post id factum paucis diēbus apud Lamam cum eodem cōfīxit; pulsus (incredibile dicta) bīduō et duabus noctibus Hadramētūm pervenit, quod abest ab Lamā circiter milia passuum trecenta. In hac fuga Numidae, qui simul cum eo ex acie excesserant, insidiati<sup>6</sup> sunt et; quos non solum effugit, sed etiam ipsōs oppressit. Hadramēti reliquōs ē fugā collegit; novis delectibus<sup>7</sup> paucis diēbus multis contraxit.

---

<sup>1</sup> defensum, supine.

<sup>2</sup> exhaustis, drained.

<sup>3</sup> impraesentiārum, for the present.

<sup>4</sup> compōnō, ere, posui, positus, settle, end.

<sup>5</sup> convēnerunt, were agreed upon.

<sup>6</sup> insidior, ārī, ātus, lie in wait for.

<sup>7</sup> dēlectus, us, m., a recruiting.

*Hannibal at Home. His flight to Antiochus*

22. Cum in apparando<sup>1</sup> acerrime esset occupatus, Karthaginiensēs bellum cum Rōmānis composuerunt. Ille nihilō sētius exercitū postea praefuit rēsque in Africa gessit itemque Māgō frater eius usque ad<sup>2</sup> P. Sulpiciū C. Aureliū cōsulēs. His<sup>3</sup> enim magistratibus legati Karthaginiensēs Rōmam vēnērunt, qui senātū populōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent, quod cum iis pācem fēcissent ob eamque rem corōnā aureā eōs dōnārent simulque peterent ut obsidēs eōrum Fregellīs<sup>4</sup> essent captivūque redderentur. His ex senātū cōsultō respōnsum est: mānus eōrum grātūm acceptūmque esse; obsidēs, quō locō rogārent, futūrōs; captivōs nōn remissūrōs, quod<sup>5</sup> Hannibalem cuius opera susceptū bellū foret, inimicissimum nōmini Rōmānō, etiam nunc cum imperiō apud exercitū habērent itemque frātrem eius Magōnem. Hōc respōnsō Karthaginiensēs cōgnitō Hannibalem domūm et Māgōnem revocārunt. Hūc ut rediit, rex factus est, postquam imperātor fuerat, annō secundō et vicesimo; ut enim Rōmae cōsulēs, sic Karthagine quotannis annui bīni reges creābantur. In eō magistratū pari diligentia sē Hannibal praebeuit ac<sup>6</sup> fuerat in bello. Namque effecit ex novis vectigalibus nōn sōlū ut esset pectūnia quae Rōmānis ex<sup>7</sup> foedere<sup>8</sup> penderetur, sed etiam superesset, quae in aerāriō<sup>9</sup> repōneretur.<sup>10</sup> Deinde M. Claudiō L. Furiō cōsulib⁹, Rōmā legati Karthaginem vēnērunt. Hōs Hannibal ratus sui expōscendi grātia missōs, priusquam iis senātūs<sup>11</sup> daretur, nāvēm ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad Antiochum profūgit. Hac rē palam<sup>12</sup> facta Poeni nāvēs duas, quae eum comprehendērēnt, si possent cōsequi, miserunt; bona eius pūblicarunt, domūm a fundamentis<sup>13</sup> disiecerunt, ipsum exsulem iūdicarunt.

<sup>1</sup> apparō āre, āvi, ātus, *prepare*.

<sup>2</sup> ad, *to the time of*.

<sup>3</sup> His magistratibus, ablative absolute.

<sup>4</sup> Fregellīs, *at Fregellae*.

<sup>5</sup> quod Hannibalem . . . etiam nunc cum imperiō apud exercitū habērent, *because they even then kept Hannibal in command of the army*.

<sup>6</sup> ac, as.

<sup>7</sup> ex, *in accordance with*.

<sup>8</sup> foedus, foederis, n., *treaty*.

<sup>9</sup> aerārium, I, n., *treasury*.

<sup>10</sup> repōnō, ere, posui, positus, *lay, restore*.

<sup>11</sup> senātūs, *a hearing before the senate*.

<sup>12</sup> palam facta = nūtiāta.

<sup>13</sup> fundamentū, I, n., *foundation, groundwork*.

*He arouses Antiochus to war against the Romans*

**23.** At Hannibal anno quārto, postquam domo profūgerat, L. Corneliō Q. Minuciō cōsulibus, cum quīnque nāvibus Africam accessit in finibus Cyrēnaeōrum, si<sup>1</sup> forte Karthaginiēs ad bellum Antiochi<sup>2</sup> spē fiduciāque inducerentur,<sup>3</sup> cui iam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Italiam proficisci eretur. Hūc Māgōnem frātrem excīvit.<sup>4</sup> Id ubi Poeni rescīverunt, Māgōnem eādem, quā frātrem, absentem adfēcerunt poena. Illi<sup>5</sup> desperatis rēbus cum solvissent nāvēs ac vela<sup>6</sup> ventis dediſſent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervenit. Dē Māgōnis interitū duplex memoria prōdita est; namque aliī naufragiō,<sup>7</sup> aliī a servulī<sup>8</sup> ipsius interfectum eum scriptum<sup>9</sup> reliquerunt. Antiochus autem, si tam in gerendō bellō cōsiliis eius<sup>10</sup> parēre voluisset quam<sup>11</sup> in suscipiendo instituerat, propius Tiberi<sup>12</sup> quam Thermopylis dē summa imperii dīmicasset. Quem<sup>13</sup> etiā multa stulte<sup>14</sup> cōnāri videbat,<sup>15</sup> tamen nūlla dēseruit in rē. Praefuit paucis nāvibus, quās ex Syriā iussus erat in Asiam dūcere, itisque adversus Rhodiōrum classem in Pamphyliō marī cōnflexit. Quōd cum<sup>16</sup> multitādine adversariōrum sui<sup>17</sup> superārentur, ipse, quōd cornū rem gessit, fuit superior.

<sup>1</sup> si (to see), if.<sup>2</sup> Antiochi spē fiduciāque, because of their faith and hope in Antiochus.<sup>3</sup> inducerentur, they could be drawn into.<sup>4</sup> excīo (or excīō), ēre (ire), cōvī (it) citus (itus), call out, summon.<sup>5</sup> Illi, i. e., Hannibal and Mago.<sup>6</sup> vēlūm, i. n., sail,<sup>7</sup> naufragium, i. n., shipwreck.<sup>8</sup> servulus, i. n., a little slave.<sup>9</sup> scriptum reliquerunt, they left a record to the effect that.<sup>10</sup> eius, i. e., Hannibalis.<sup>11</sup> quam in suscipiendo instituerat, as he had done in beginning it.<sup>12</sup> Tiberi, dative with propius.<sup>13</sup> Quem, i. e., Antiochus.<sup>14</sup> stulte, foolishly.<sup>15</sup> videbat, Hannibal is understood as subject.<sup>16</sup> cum, concessive.<sup>17</sup> sui, his forces.

*He goes to Crete, and there saves his money by a trick*

24. Antiochō fugātō, verēns nē dēderētur, quod sine dubiō accidisset si<sup>1</sup> sui fēcisset potestātem, Crētam ad Gortyniōs vēnit, ut ibi quō sē cōnferret cōnsiderāret.<sup>2</sup> Vīdit autem vir omnium callidissimus in magnō sē fore periculō, nisi quid prōvidisset, propter avaritiam Cretēnum; magnam enim sēcum pecūniā portābat, dē quā sciēbat exisse famam. Itaque capit tāle cōsilia. Amphorās<sup>3</sup> complūres complet plumbo,<sup>4</sup> summās<sup>5</sup> operit<sup>6</sup> aurō et argento. Has, praeſentibus p̄ncipib⁹, dēponit in templō Dignae, simulans sē suas fortūnas illōrum fidei cōdēdere. His in errōrem inductis, statuas aēneās,<sup>7</sup> quās sēcum portābat, omni suā pectūnia completas easque in prōpatulō<sup>8</sup> domi abicit.<sup>9</sup> Gortyniū templum magna cūrā custodiunt, nōn tam à ceteris quam ab Hannibāle, nē ille, īſcientibus iis, tolleret sēcumque dūceret.

---

<sup>1</sup> si sui fēcisset potestātem, if he had given them a chance at him.

<sup>2</sup> cōnsiderō, are, āvi, ātus, look at carefully, consider.

<sup>3</sup> amphora, ae, f., a two handled jar.

<sup>4</sup> plumbō, lead.

<sup>5</sup> summās, sc. amphorās, the tops of the jars.

<sup>6</sup> operiō, ire, perui, pertus, cover.

<sup>7</sup> aēneus, a, um, bronze.

<sup>8</sup> prōpatulum, I, n., courtyard.

<sup>9</sup> As if they were of no value.

*Hannibal goes to Prusias. His bit of stratagem*

25. Sic, cōservātis suis rēbus Poenus, illūst̄s<sup>1</sup> Crētēnsibus omnibus, ad Prūsiām in Pontum pervenit. Apud quem eōdem animō fuit ergā Italiam, neque aliud quicquam ēgit quam rēgem armavit et exercuit aduersus Rōmānōs. Quem cum videret domesticis opibus minus<sup>2</sup> esse rōbustum,<sup>3</sup> conciliabat ceterōs rēges, adjungebat bellicōsās natiōnēs. Dissidebat<sup>4</sup> ab eō<sup>5</sup> Pergamēnus rēx Eumenēs, Rōmānis amicissimus, bellumque inter eōs gerēbatur et mari et terrā; quō magis cupiebat eum Hannibal opprimi. Sed utrobique<sup>6</sup> Eumenēs plus valēbat propter Rōmānorūm societātem: quem si remōvisset faciliōra sibi cetera fore arbitrabatur. Ad hunc interficiendum talem iniit rationēm. Classe paucis diēbus erant dēcretūrī. Superabatur nāvium multitudine; dolō erat pugnandum, cum pār nōn esset armis. Imperāvit quam plūrimās venēnatās<sup>7</sup> serpentēs<sup>8</sup> vivās colligī eāsque in vāsa<sup>9</sup> fictilia<sup>10</sup> conici. Hārum cum effecisset magnam multitudinem, die ipsō, quō factūrus erat nāvē proelium, classiariōs convocat iisque praecipit, omnēs ut in unā Eumenis rēgis concurrant nāvem, a ceteris tantum satis<sup>11</sup> habeant sē defendere. Ad illōs facile serpentium multitudine cōsecutūrōs. Rēx autem in quā nāve veherētur ut<sup>12</sup> scirent sē factūrum; quem si aut cēpissent aut interfecissent, magnō iis pollicetur praeſiō fore.

<sup>1</sup> illūdō, ere, lūsi, lūsum, *deceive*.

<sup>2</sup> minus, *not very*.

<sup>3</sup> rōbustus, a, um, *powerful*.

<sup>4</sup> dissideō, ēre, sēdi, sessum, *differ*.

<sup>5</sup> eō, i. e., Prusias.

<sup>6</sup> utrobique, *on both sides*; here, *on land and sea*.

<sup>7</sup> venēnatās, a, um, *poisonous*.

<sup>8</sup> serpēns, serpentis, f., *snake*.

<sup>9</sup> vās, vāsis, n. pl., vāsa, vāsōrum, *jar*.

<sup>10</sup> fictilis, e., *earthen*.

<sup>11</sup> satis habeant, *should consider it enough*.

<sup>12</sup> ut scirent sē factūrum, *he would see to it that they would know*.

*By his strategy he defeats Eumenes*

26. Tali cohortatione militum facta classis ab utrisque in proelium deducitur. Quarum acie constituta, priusquam signum pugnae daretur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suis, quod loco Eumenēs esset, tabellarium<sup>1</sup> in scaphā<sup>2</sup> cum caduceo<sup>3</sup> mittit. Qui ubi ad nāvēs adversariōrum pervenit epistulamque ostendens se rēgem professus est<sup>4</sup> quaerere, statim ad Eumenem dēductus est, quod nēmō dubitabat quin aliquid dē pace esset scriptum. Tabellarius ducis nāve declarata suis,<sup>5</sup> eōdem unde erat egressus se recipit. At Eumenēs solutā<sup>6</sup> epistula nihil in ea repperit, nisi quae ad irridendum eum pertinērent. Cuius etsi causam mirabatur neque reperiēbat, tamen proelium statim committere nōn dubitavit. Hōrum in concursū Bithynī Hannibalīs praeceptō<sup>7</sup> universi nāvēs Eu-menis adoriantur. Quōrum vim rēx cum sustinēre nōn posset, fūga salūtem petiit; quam<sup>8</sup> consecutus nōn esset, nisi intrā sua praesidia se recipisset, quae in proximō litore erant collocata. Reliquae Pergamēnae nāvēs cum adversariōs premerent acrius, repente in eās vāsa fictilia, dē quibus suprā mentiōnem fecimus, conici coepta sunt. Quae<sup>9</sup> iacta initiō rīsum pugnantibus concitārunt, neque quārē id fieret peteret intellegi. Post-quām autem nāvēs suās oppletās cōspēxerunt serpentibus, novā rē perterriti cum quid<sup>10</sup> potissimum vitārent nōn vidērent, puppes vertērunt sēque ad sua castra nautica<sup>11</sup> retulerunt. Sic Hannibal cōsiliō arma Pergamēnorū superāvit, neque tum sōlum, sed saepe aliās pedestribus cōpīs parī prūdentia pepulit adversariōs.

<sup>1</sup> Tabellarius, i., m., *messenger, herald*.

<sup>2</sup> scapha, *small boat*.

<sup>3</sup> caduceus, i., m., *herald's staff*.

<sup>4</sup> professus est, *stated*.

<sup>5</sup> suis, *to his own men*.

<sup>6</sup> soluta, *opened*.

<sup>7</sup> praeceptō, *in accordance with the command*.

<sup>8</sup> quam cōsecutus nōn esset, *he would not have reached safety*.

<sup>9</sup> Quae iacta, *the throwing of these*.

<sup>10</sup> quid potissimum vitārent, *what they should avoid most*.

<sup>11</sup> nauticus, a, um, *naval*.

*His death by poison*

27. Quae dum in Asia geruntur, accidit casū ut legati Prūsiae Rōmae apud<sup>1</sup> T. Quintium Flamininūm cōsulārem cēnārent,<sup>2</sup> atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā ex iis unus diceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō die Flamininus senātūl dētulit. Patrēs<sup>3</sup> cōscripti, qui Hannibale vivō numquam sē sine Insidiis futūrōs existimārent, lēgatōs in Bithyniam misērunt, in iis Flaminīnum, qui ab rēge peterent nē<sup>4</sup> inimicissimum suum sēcum habēret sibique dēderet. His Prūsia negāre ausus nōn est; illud recūsavit, nē id a sē fieri postulārent, quod adversus iūs hospitiī esset; ipsi, si possent, comprehendērēnt; locum ubi esset facile inventūrōs. Hannibal enim unō loco sē tēnebat in castellō, quod et a rēge datum erat mūneri, idque sic aedificārat ut in omnibus partibus aedificiū exitūs habēret, scilicet<sup>5</sup> verēns nē<sup>6</sup> usū veniret quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgati Rōmānōrum vēnissent ac multitudine domum eius circumdedissent, puer ab iānuā<sup>7</sup> prōspiciēns Hannibali dixit plārēs praeter cōsuētūdinē armatōs appārēre. Qui imperāvit et ut omnēs fores<sup>10</sup> aedificiū circumfret ac propere<sup>11</sup> sibi nūntiāret num<sup>12</sup> eōdem modō undique obsiderētur. Puer cum celeriter quid esset renūtiāset omnēsque exitūs occupatōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuitō factum, sed sē peti neque<sup>13</sup> sibi diūtius vitam esse retinen-dam. Quam<sup>14</sup> nē alienō arbitriō dimitteret, memor<sup>15</sup> pristinārūm virtūtūm, venēnum,<sup>16</sup> quod semper sēcum habēre cōsuērat, sūmpsit.

<sup>1</sup> apud, *at the house of*.

<sup>2</sup> cēnōm, ārē, āvī, ātūs, *dine*.

<sup>3</sup> Patrēs cōscripti, *senators*.

<sup>4</sup> nē inimicissimum suum sēcum habēret, *that he should not keep their greatest enemy with him*.

<sup>5</sup> comprehendērēnt, subjunctive representing imperative of direct discourse.

<sup>6</sup> scilicet, *evidently*.

<sup>7</sup> nē usū veniret, *lest that should happen*.

<sup>8</sup> iānus, ae, f., *door*.

<sup>9</sup> apparēre, *appeared*.

<sup>10</sup> foris, foris, f., *door*.

<sup>11</sup> propere, *quickly*.

<sup>12</sup> num, *whether*.

<sup>13</sup> neque retinendam, *could not be preserved*.

<sup>14</sup> Quam, i. e., *vitām*.

<sup>15</sup> memor, memoris, *mindful*.

<sup>16</sup> venēnum, i., n., *poison*.

*His historians and his own writings*

28. Sic vir fortissimus, multis variisque perfunctus<sup>1</sup> labōribus, annō adquievit<sup>2</sup> septuagēsimō. Quibus cōsulibus interierit, nōn<sup>3</sup> convenit. Namque Atticus M. Claudiō Marcellō Q. Fabiō Labeōne cōsulibus mortuum in annali<sup>4</sup> suō scriptum relīquit, at Polybius L. Aemiliō Paulō Cn. Baebiō Tamphilo, Sulpicius autem Blithō P. Corneliō Cethēgo M. Baebiō Tamphilo. Atque<sup>5</sup> hic tantus vir tantisque bellis districtus<sup>6</sup> nōn nihil temporis tribuit litteris. Namque aliquot eius libri sunt Graecō sermōne cōflecti, in iis ad<sup>7</sup> Rhodiōs dē<sup>8</sup> Cn. Manlii Vulsōnis in Asiā rēbus gestis. Hūius<sup>9</sup> belli<sup>10</sup> gesta multi memoriae prōdidērunt, sed ex his duo<sup>11</sup> qui cum eō in castris fuērunt simulque vixērunt, quamdiū fortūna passa est, Sīlēnus et Sōsilus Lacedaemonius. Atque hōc Sōsliō Hannibal litterarū Graecarū ūsus est doctōre.

Sed nōs<sup>12</sup> tempus est hūius libri facere finem et Rōmānōrum explicare imperatōres, quō facilius collatis utrōrumque<sup>13</sup> factis, qui virtū praferendī sint, possit iudicari.

<sup>1</sup> perfungor, I; fūctus sum, *perform*.

<sup>2</sup> adquiēscō, ere, quiēvi, quiētus, *go to rest, die*.

<sup>3</sup> nōn convenit, *it is not agreed*.

<sup>4</sup> annālis, annālis, m., *record*.

<sup>5</sup> Atque, *and yet*.

<sup>6</sup> distringō, ere, strīnxi, strictus, *draw apart, engage*.

<sup>7</sup> ad Rhodiōs, i. e., liber ad Rhodiōs.

<sup>8</sup> dē, governs rēbus gestis.

<sup>9</sup> Hūius, i. e., Hannibal.

<sup>10</sup> belli gesta, deeds of war.

<sup>11</sup> duo, sc. sunt.

<sup>12</sup> nōs facere finem, *for me to make an end*.

<sup>13</sup> utrōrumque, i. e., Roman and Greek generals.

## C. IULII CAESARIS

## De Bello Gallico

## LIBER TERTIUS

*Caesar sends Galba against the Nantuates, Veragri, and Seduni. Galba establishes winter quarters at Octodurus.*

29. Cum in Italiam proficeretur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legione duodecimā et parte equitatū in Nantuātes, Veragrōs, Sedūnōsque misit, qui a finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flumine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit quod iter per Alpēs quo magnō cum periculō magnisque cum portōris<sup>1</sup> mercatōrēs ire cōsuērant,<sup>2</sup> patefieri volebat. Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitrarētur, uti in his locis legiōnem hiemandi causa collocaret. Galba, secundis aliquot<sup>3</sup> proelīis factis castellisque complūribus eōrum expugnatis missis ad eum undique lēgatis obsidibusque datis et pāce factā, cōstituit cohortes duas in Nantuātibus collocare et ipse cum reliquis eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, qui appellatur Octodurus, hiemare; qui vicus positus in valle,<sup>4</sup> nōn magnā<sup>5</sup> adiectā<sup>6</sup> planitiē<sup>7</sup> altissimis montibus undique continētur. Cum<sup>8</sup> hīc in duas partes flumine divideretur, alteram partem eius vici Gallis concessit, alteram vacuam ab his relictam cohortibus attribuit.<sup>9</sup> Eum locum vallō fossaque mūnivit.

<sup>1</sup> portoris, *customs duty*.

<sup>2</sup> cōsuērant, contracted from cōsuēverant, *were* (lit., *had become*) *accustomed*.

<sup>3</sup> aliquot, indeclin. adj., *several*.

<sup>4</sup> valles, vallis, f., *a valley*.

<sup>5</sup> nōn magnā = parvā.

<sup>6</sup> adiō, ere, iēcti, iectus, add, adiectā as an adj., *lying near*.

<sup>7</sup> planitiē, *plain*.

<sup>8</sup> Cum, causal.

<sup>9</sup> attribuō, ere, tribui, tributus, *assign*.

*Mountain tribes revolt and occupy the neighboring heights*

**30.** Cum dies hibernorum complures transissent frumentumque eō comportari iussisset, subito per exploratores certior factus est ex ea parte vici quam Gallis concesserat omnes noctū discessisse montesque qui impenderent a maxima multitudine Sedunorum et Veragrorum teneri. Id<sup>1</sup> aliquot dē causis acciderat, ut subito Galli belli renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōsilium caperent; primum, quod legiōnem unam, neque<sup>2</sup> eam plenissimam,<sup>3</sup> dētractis cohortibus duabus et compluribus singillatim<sup>4</sup> qui commeatūs petendi causā missi erant, absentibus<sup>5</sup> propter paucitatem<sup>6</sup> despiciebant;<sup>7</sup> tum etiam, quod propter iniquitatem<sup>8</sup> loci, cum ipsi<sup>10</sup> ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tela conicerent, nē primum quidem impetum suum posse sustineri existimabant. Accedebat quod suos ab se liberos abstractos obsidum<sup>11</sup> nōmine dolebant et Rōmanos nōn solum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessionis<sup>12</sup> culmina<sup>13</sup> Alpium occupare cōnāri et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere<sup>14</sup> sibi persuasum habebant.

<sup>1</sup> Id, explained by the following ut clause.

<sup>2</sup> renovō, āre, avī, ātus, *renew*.

<sup>3</sup> neque, *and not*.

<sup>4</sup> plenus, a, um, *full*.

<sup>5</sup> singillatim, adv., *one by one*.

<sup>6</sup> absentibus, abl. absol. with compluribus.

<sup>7</sup> paucitas, atis, f., noun of pauci.

<sup>8</sup> despiciebant, *despised*.

<sup>9</sup> propter iniquitatem, *on account of the unfavorable character*.

<sup>10</sup> ipsi, i. e., the mountaineers.

<sup>11</sup> obsidum nōmine, *under the name of hostages, as hostages*.

<sup>12</sup> possessōnis, sc. causa.

<sup>13</sup> culmen, culminis, n., *top*.

<sup>14</sup> adiungō, ere, nxi, nctus, *join*.

*The Romans meet in council and determine to defend their positions*

31. His nūntiis acceptis, Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mānitōnesque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frumentō reliquōque commeatū satis esset prōvīsum, quod dēditiōne facta obsidibusque acceptis nihil de bellō timendum existimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocato sententias exquirere<sup>1</sup> coepit. Quo in cōnsiliō cum tantum repentinī periculi<sup>2</sup> praeter opiniōnem accidisset ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitudine armātōrum complēta cōspicerentur neque subsidio<sup>3</sup> venīrī<sup>4</sup> neque commeatū supportāri interclūsis itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērata salūte nōnnūllae eius modi sententiae dicebantur, ut impedimentis relictis ēruptiōne factā, isdēm itineribus, quibus eō pervenissent, ad salūtem contenderent. Maiōrī tamen parti placuit, hōc reservatō ad extreūmum cōnsiliō, interim rei ēventum experīrī<sup>5</sup> et castra dēfendere.

<sup>1</sup> exquirere, *ask for*.

<sup>2</sup> periculi, partitive genitive with *tantum*.

<sup>3</sup> subsidio, dative of purpose.

<sup>4</sup> venīrī, impersonal.

<sup>5</sup> experīrī and dēfendere, subjects of *placuit*.

*The Romans are attacked by a larger force*

32. Brevi spatiō interiectō,<sup>1</sup> vix ut iis rēbus<sup>2</sup> quās constituisserunt comparandis atque administrandis tempus daretur, hostes<sup>3</sup> ex omnibus partibus signō datō decurrere, lapides gaesaque<sup>4</sup> in vallum conicere. Nostrī primo integris<sup>5</sup> viribus fortiter pugnare neque ullum frūstrā<sup>6</sup> tēlum ex locō superiore mittere, et quaecumque pars castrorum nūdata dēfensoribus premī videbatur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc<sup>7</sup> superāri, quod diuturnitate<sup>8</sup> pugnae hostes dēfessi proeliō excēdēbant, alii integris<sup>9</sup> viribus succēdabant; quārum rērum<sup>10</sup> a nostrīs propter paucitatem fieri nihil poterat, ac nōn modo<sup>11</sup> dēfessō<sup>12</sup> ex pugna excēdendi,<sup>13</sup> sed nē sauciō<sup>14</sup> quidem eius loci ubi cōstiterat relinquendi ac sui recipiendi facultas debātur.

<sup>1</sup> interiectō, from inter-iaciō.

<sup>2</sup> rēbus, dative.

<sup>3</sup> hostēs, nom. as of the historical infinitives decurrere and conicere.

<sup>4</sup> gaesum, i., n., *heavy javelin*.

<sup>5</sup> integris viribus, abl. absol., denoting time; integer, gra, grum, *untouched, fresh*.

<sup>6</sup> frūstrā, *in vain*.

<sup>7</sup> hōc, ablative of specification.

<sup>8</sup> diuturnitate, *long duration*.

<sup>9</sup> integris viribus, abl. of description.

<sup>10</sup> rērum, partitive gen. with nihil.

<sup>11</sup> nōn, modo, sc. non.

<sup>12</sup> dēfessō, sauciō, indirect objects of dabatur.

<sup>13</sup> excēdendi, loci relinquendi, sui recipiendi, modify facultas.

<sup>14</sup> saucius, a, um, *wounded, hurt, injured*.

*After fighting for six hours, Galba decides upon a sally*

33. Cum iam amplius hōris sex continenter pugnāretur,<sup>1</sup> ac nōn solum vīres sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs acrius instārent, languidiōribusque<sup>2</sup> nostrīs vāllum scindere<sup>3</sup> et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, prīmī pili<sup>4</sup> centuriō, quem<sup>5</sup> Nervicō<sup>6</sup> proeliō complūribus cōflectum vulneribus diximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribānus militū, vir et cōsiliī magni et virtutis, ad Galbam accurunt<sup>7</sup> atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, si eruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experientur. Itaque convocatīs centuriōnibus celeriter milites certiores facit paulisper intermitterent<sup>8</sup> proelium ac tantummodo<sup>9</sup> tēla missa exciperent sequē ex labōre reficerent, post datō signo ex castris ērumperent<sup>10</sup> atque omnem spem salūtis in virtute pōnerent.

---

<sup>1</sup> pugnāretur, *had been* (and was still being) *fought*.

<sup>2</sup> languidiōribus nostrīs, abl. absol. of cause.

<sup>3</sup> scindō, ere, scidi, scissus, *split, cut down*.

<sup>4</sup> prīmī pili, *of the first rank*.

<sup>5</sup> quem, subject of *cōflectum esse*.

<sup>6</sup> Nervicō, *of the Nervii*.

<sup>7</sup> accurunt, *rushed up*.

<sup>8</sup> intermitterent, and the four following subjunctives represent the imperative of direct discourse.

<sup>9</sup> tantummodo, *only*.

<sup>10</sup> ērumpō, ere, rupi, ruptum, *burst forth*.

*The Gauls are completely routed. Galba goes into winter quarters*

34. Quod iussi<sup>1</sup> sunt faciunt, ac subito omnibus portis eruptione facta neque cognoscendi quid fieret neque sui<sup>2</sup> colligendi<sup>3</sup> hostibus facultatem relinquunt. Ita commutata<sup>4</sup> fortuna eos qui in spem potiundorum castrorum venerant undique circumventos intercipiunt,<sup>5</sup> et ex hominum milibus<sup>6</sup> amplius XXX, quem numerum barbarorum ad castra venisse constabat,<sup>7</sup> plus tertia parte imperfecta reliquos perterritos in fugam coniciunt ac ne in locis quidem superiорibus consistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium copiis fusis<sup>8</sup> armisque<sup>9</sup> exutis<sup>10</sup> se in castra munitionesque suas recipiunt. Quod proeliō factō, quod saepius fortunam temptare Galba nōlebat atque alio<sup>11</sup> se in hiberna consilio venisse meminerat,<sup>12</sup> aliis occurrisse rebus<sup>13</sup> videbat, maximē frumenti commeatusque inopia permotus, posterō die, omnibus eius vici aedificis incensis, in provinciam reverti contendit ac nullō hoste prohibente aut iter demorante in columem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemavit.

<sup>1</sup> iussi sunt, sc. facere. The object of facere is quod.

<sup>2</sup> sui colligendi, of collecting themselves, i. e., of rallying.

<sup>3</sup> colligo, ere, legi, lectus, collect.

<sup>4</sup> commutata, changed.

<sup>5</sup> intercipiunt, cut off, intercept.

<sup>6</sup> ex milibus, modifies tertia parte.

<sup>7</sup> constō, stāre, stiti, status, stand together, stand firm. Impersonal as here, *it was agreed, it was ascertained.*

<sup>8</sup> fundō, ere, fudi, fusus, pour, throw, rout.

<sup>9</sup> armis, abl. of separation with exutis; latter agrees with copiis.

<sup>10</sup> exuō, ere, exui, exutus, draw off, despoil.

<sup>11</sup> alio, one, other.

<sup>12</sup> meminerat, remembered.

<sup>13</sup> rebus, conditions.

## General Latin-English Vocabulary

- ā, ab, prep. with abl., *from, by.*  
abeō, īre, īi, itūrus, *go away.*  
absinthium, ī, n., *wormwood.*  
absolutiō, ḍnis, f., *absolution.*  
absolvō, ere, vī, ūtus, *release, free.*  
abstergēō, ēre, rsī, rsus, *wipe away.*  
ac (atque) *and, and also;* ac is not used before vowels.  
accēdō, ere, accessī, accessum, *draw near, advance.*  
accendō, ere, accendi, accensum, *enkindle, rouse.*  
accidit, accidere, accidit, impers., *it happens.*  
acciipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *receive.*  
acclinis, e, *inclined to, disposed to.*  
accūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call one to account, accuse.*  
acervus, ī, m., *heap, pile.*  
acētum, ī, n., *sour wine, vinegar.*  
aciēs, īi, f., *line of battle.*  
āriter, *sharply, fiercely.*  
acūmen, inis, n., *keenness.*  
ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, vigorous, keen, severe.*  
ad, to, *towards, prep. with acc.*  
ad multam noctem, *till late at night.*  
addicō, ere, xī, ctus, *adjudge, devote.*  
addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead on, impel.*  
adeō, adv., *so much, to such a degree.*  
adeō, īre, īi, itus, *go to, visit.*  
adhūc, *up to this time, still, hitherto.*  
aditus, ūs, m., *approach.*  
adiūtrix, īcis, f., *helper, promoter.*  
administrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *perform.*  
admīror, -ārī, ātus, sum *wonder at, admire.*  
admodum, *quite, very much.*  
adorior, orīrī, ortus sum, *attack.*  
adulēscēns, entis, m., *young man.*  
adveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *arrive.*  
adventus, ūs, m., *approach, arrival.*  
adversārius, ii, m., *adversary.*

- adversō, āre, āvī, ātus, *oppose.*  
 adversus, a, um, *adverse.*  
 advocāta, ae, f., *advocate.*  
 advocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call or summon to.*  
 aedificium, ī, n., *building.*  
 aedificō, āre, āvī, ātus, *build, erect.*  
 aeger, ra, rum, *sick.*  
 aquus, a, um, *level.*  
 aestas, ātis, f., *summer.*  
 aestimō, āre, āvī, ātus, *determine, estimate.*  
 aestus, ūs, m., *heat.*  
 aetas, ātis, f., *life, age.*  
 aeternus, a, um, *everlasting, eternal.*  
 afferō, ferre, attulī, allātus, *bring.*  
 ager, agrī, m., *field, land.*  
 agger, eris, m., *embankment, rampart.*  
 agmen, inis, n., *army (on the march).*  
 agō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *do.*  
 agricola, ae, m., *farmer.*  
 aiō, —, —, —, *say.*  
 alacer, cris, cre, *eager.*  
 alienus, a, um, *unfavorable.*  
 aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, adj., *some.*  
 aliquis, aliquid; *some one, something.*  
 Allobrogēs, um, m. pl., *Allobroges, a Gallic tribe.*  
 altitūdō, inis, f., *depth, height.*  
 altus, a, um, *high, deep.*  
 amabilis, e, *worthy of love, lovely.*  
 amicē, *in a friendly way.*  
 amicitia, ae, f., *friendship.*  
 amicus, ī, m., *friend.*  
 āmittō, ere, misī, missus, *lose.*  
 amo, āre, āvī, ātus, *love.*  
 amoenus, a, um, *delightful, pleasant.*  
 amor, ḍoris, m., *love.*  
 amplexō, āre, āvī, ātus, *embrace.*  
 amplius, *more.*  
 amplus, a, um, *great, glorious.*  
 ancora, ae, f., *anchor.*  
 angelus, ī, m., *angel.*  
 angō, ere, xi, ctus and xus, *bind.*

- angustiae, *ārum*, f. pl., *a narrow pass.*  
 angustus, a, um, *narrow.*  
 anima, ae, f., *air, the breath of life.*  
 animadvertisō, ere, vertī, versus, *notice.*  
 animal, animālis, n., *animal.*  
 animō, āre, āvī, ātus, *animate, encourage.*  
 animus, ī, m., *soul, mind, courage.*  
 annus, ī, m., *year.*  
 ante, *before, in front of*, prep. with acc.  
 ante, adv., *before.*  
 anteā, *before, formerly.*  
 antecēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *precede.*  
 antiquus, a, um, *old, ancient.*  
 apertus, a, um, *open.*  
 apostolus, ī, m., *apostle.*  
 appareō, ēre, uī, itus, *appear, be evident.*  
 appellō, āre, āvī, ātus, *name, call.*  
 appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātus, *approach.*  
 Aprilis, e, adj., *of April.*  
 aptus, a, um, *suitable, fit.*  
 apud, prep. with acc., *among, with.*  
 aqua, ae, f., *water.*  
 aquila, ae, f., *eagle.*  
 āra, ae, f., *altar.*  
 arbitror, ārī, ātus sum, *consider.*  
 arbor, oris, f., *tree.*  
 arceō, ēre, uī, ——, *keep from, hinder.*  
 arcessō, ere, ivī, itus, *summon.*  
 archangelus, ī, m., *archangel.*  
 ardeō, ēre, -rī, rsus, *take fire, kindle.*  
 arduus, a, um, *steep, difficult.*  
 Ariovistus, ī, m., *Ariovistus, king of the Germans.*  
 arma, ūrum, n. pl., *weapons, arms, armour.*  
 armātūra, ae, f., *equipment.*  
 armenta, ūrum, n. pl., *herds, cattle.*  
 armō, āre, āvī, ātus, *arm.*  
 arō, āre, āvī, ātus, *plough.*  
 arrideō, ēre, risī, risus, *smile upon.*  
 arx, arcis, f., *castle.*  
 ascendō, ere, dī, sum, *ascend.*  
 asinus, ī, m., *ass.*

- aspectus, ūs, m., sight, look, appearance.**  
**asper, era, erum, rough.**  
**aspiciō, ere, pēxi, pectus, behold.**  
**assentātiō, ūnis, f., flattery.**  
**assistō, ere, astiti, ——, stand.**  
**Athēnae, ārum, f., Athens.**  
**auctōritās, ātis, f., authority.**  
**audācia, ae, f., boldness.**  
**audācter, courageously.**  
**audax, audācis, bold, daring.**  
**audeō, ēre, ausus sum, semi-dep., dare.**  
**audiō, īre, īvi, ītus, hear.**  
**aufugiō, ere, fūgī, ——, flee, run away.**  
**augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus, increase.**  
**augur, is, m. and f., augur, soothsayer.**  
**auris, is, f., ear.**  
**aurum, ī, n., gold.**  
**aut, conj., or. aut . . . aut either . . . or.**  
**autem, conj. (never first in a sentence), but, however.**  
**auxilia, ūrum, n. pl., auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.**  
**Avāricum, ī, n., Avaricum, a Gallic town.**  
**avē, imperative 2d sing. of aveō, -ēre, farewell, hail.**  
**āvertō, ere, tī, versus, avert, turn away, turn aside.**  
**avis, is, f., bird.**  
**avus, ī, m., grandfather.**
- baptista, ae, m., baptist.**  
**barbarus, a, um, barbarian; as noun, m., a barbarian.**  
**beātus, a, um, happy.**  
**Belgae, ārum, m. pl., Belgians, a tribe of Gaul.**  
**bellō, āre, āvī, ātus, make war, carry on war.**  
**bellum, ī, n., war.**  
**bene, well.**  
**benedicō, ere, xī, ctus, bless, praise.**  
**beneficium, ī, n., kindness, favor.**  
**benigne, adv., kindly, benevolently.**  
**benignitās, ātis, f., kindness.**  
**bestia, ae, f., animal, beast.**  
**bīduum, ī, n., two days.**  
**bonus, a, um, good.**  
**bōs, bōvis, ox.**

**brevis, e, short, brief.**

**Britannia, ae, f., Britain.**

**caedēs, is, f., slaughter.**

**caelum, ī, n., sky, heaven (climate, weather).**

**Caesar, aris, m., Caesar.**

**calamitās, ātis, f., misfortune, calamity.**

**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus, produce melodious sounds, sing, play.**

**capio, ere, cēpī, captus, take, adopt, capture.**

**captivus, a, um, captive; captivus (as noun), a captive.**

**caput, itis, n., head.**

**carcer, eris, m., any inclosed space, prison, jail.**

**caro, carnis, f., flesh, body.**

**carpō, ere, carpsi, carpturn, pluck, pick.**

**cārus, a, um, dear.**

**cassus, a, um, empty, void.**

**castellum, ī, n., fort.**

**castra, ḫrum, n. pl., a camp.**

**cāsus, ūs, m., chance, accident.**

**catholicus, a, um, universal, catholic.**

**causa, ae, f., cause, condition.**

**causā, abl., for the sake of; always preceded by the dependent genitive.**

**cautus, a, um, cautious, careful.**

**cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, yield.**

**celer, eris, ere, swift.**

**celeritās, ātis, f., swiftness.**

**cēlō, ere, ——, ——, keep secret, conceal.**

**celeriter, quickly.**

**cernō, ere, ——, ——, perceive.**

**cernuuſ, a, um, inclined forwards.**

**certamen, inis, n., contest, strife.**

**certē, surely.**

**certus, a, um, sure. N. B. Phrase certior fierī (lit., to be made more certain), i. e., to be informed.**

**cēterī, ae, a, the rest, the other.**

**Christus, ī, m., Christ.**

**cinis, eris, m., ashes.**

**circiter, adv., about.**

**circum, prep. with acc., around.**

**circumducō, ere, dūxī, ductus, lead around.**

**circumeō, ire, ii, itus, go around, surround.**

- circumveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, surround.**  
**citerior, ius, comp. adj., nearer, hither.**  
**cīvis, is, m., citizen, fellow-citizen.**  
**cīvitas, tātis, f., state.**  
**clādēs, is, f., destruction, defeat.**  
**clam, secretly.**  
**clāmō, āre, āvī, ātus, call, cry out.**  
**clāmor, ḫris, m., loud cry, noise.**  
**clārus, a, um, bright, splendid, happy.**  
**classis, is, f., fleet.**  
**claudō, ere, clausī, clausum, shut up, close, surround.**  
**clēmens, ntis, mild, gentle.**  
**cliēns, clientis, m., client.**  
**coena, ae, f., dinner, supper, the principal meal taken about midday.**  
**coepī, coepisse, began, have begun.**  
**coerceō, ēre, uī, itus, restrain, check.**  
**cōgitātio, ḫnis, f., thought.**  
**cōgitō, āre, āvī, ātus, think.**  
**cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus, learn, become acquainted with.**  
**cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus, force, compel, collect.**  
**cohors, rtis, f., cohort.**  
**cohortor, ārī, ātus sum, encourage, exhort.**  
**collis, is, m., hill.**  
**collocō, place, arrange, station.**  
**colloquium, ī, n., conversation, conference.**  
**colloquor, ī, locūtus sum, converse, confer.**  
**comēs, comitis, m. and f., companion, comrade.**  
**commeātus, ūs, m., supplies.**  
**committo, ere, mīsī, missus, I bring together; with proelium, to join battle.**  
**commūnio, ḫnis, f., communion.**  
**commūniō, īre, īvī, ii, ītus, fortify strongly.**  
**commūnis, e, common.**  
**commūtatiō, ḫnis, f., change.**  
**comparō, āre, āvī, ātus, get ready.**  
**compatior, ī, passus, suffer with one, have compassion for.**  
**comperiō, īre, perī, pertus, find out.**  
**compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, fill up.**  
**complūrēs, ra, gen., -ium, very many.**  
**compos, potis, adj., partaking of, sharing in.**  
**comprehendō, ere, dī, sus, seize.**

- cōcēdō**, ere, cessī, cessūrus, grant.  
**cōcilium**, ī, n., council.  
**cōcipiō**, ere, cēpī, ceptus, conceive.  
**cōcordia**, ae, f., union, harmony, agreement.  
**cōcurro**, ere, currī, concursum, run together.  
**cōcursus**, ūs, m., a running together.  
**cōdicīō**, ūnis, f., condition, terms.  
**cōdītor**, ūris, m., builder, founder.  
**cōfērō**, ferre, tuli, collātus, bring together; se cōferre, betake one's self.  
**cōnficiō**, ere, fēcī, fectus, exhaust.  
**cōfidentia**, ae, f., confidence, trust.  
**cōfidō**, ere, fīsus sum, semi-dep., trust.  
**cōfirmō**, āre, āvī, ātus, I establish.  
**cōfiteor**, ērī, fesus sum, confess.  
**cōfūtō**, āre, āvī, ātus, restrain, check.  
**cōiiciō**, ere, coniēcī, coniectus, hurl.  
**cōiungō**, ere, iūnxi, iūnctus, unite.  
**cōiūratiō**, ūnis, f., conspiracy.  
**cōiūro**, āre, āvī, ātus, conspire, form a league together.  
**cōnor**, ārī, ātus sum, endeavor, attempt.  
**cōnsector**, ārī, ātus sum, follow up.  
**cōsequor**, sequī, secūtus sum, pursue, overtake.  
**cōservō**, āre, āvī, ātus, preserve.  
**cōnsidō**, ere, sēdī, settle.  
**cōsilium**, ī, n., deliberation, plan.  
**cōsistō**, ere, cōstitī, consist.  
**cōspectus**, ūs, m., view, sight.  
**cōspiciō**, ere, spexī, spectus, see.  
**constantia**, ae, f., firmness, fortitude, perseverance.  
**cōstat**, stāre, stītit, it is evident.  
**cōstituō**, ere, uī, ūtus, decide, determine.  
**cōsuēscō**, suēvī, suētum, become accustomed.  
**cōsuētūdō**, inis, f., custom, habit.  
**cōnsul**, is, m., consul.  
**cōnsūmō**, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, use up.  
**cōtemnō**, ere, contempsī, contemptum, disregard, despise.  
**cōtendō**, ere, tendī, tentum, hurry, hasten.  
**contentus**, a, um, contented.  
**cōtineō**, ēre, uī, tentus, hold, keep together.  
**cōtrā**, against, prep. with acc.

- contritus, a, um**, perf. pass. part. of **conterō**, *worn out, contrite.*  
**contrōversia, ae, f.**, *dispute.*  
**contumēlia, ae, f.**, *insult.*  
**conveniō, ire, vēni, ventum**, *come together.*  
**convertō, ere, tī, sum, turn.**  
**convicium, i, n.**, *outcry, clamor, censure.*  
**convīva, ae, m. or f.**, *guest.*  
**convocō, āre, āvī, ātus**, *call together.*  
**cōpia, ae, f.**, *abundance, plenty; in plur., troops, forces.*  
**cor, cordis, n.**, *heart.*  
**cōram**, adv. and prep., *in the presence of.*  
**cornū, ūs, n.**, *horn; wing (of an army).*  
**corōna, ae, f.**, *wreath, crown.*  
**corpus, oris, n.**, *body.*  
**corrūō, ere, uī, ——**, *fall down, collapse.*  
**coruscō, āre, ——, ——**, *shake, glitter.*  
**cottidiē, adv.**, *every day, daily.*  
**Crassus, ī, m.**, *Crassus (a man's name).*  
**creātor, ūris, m.**, *creator.*  
**creātūra, ae, f.**, *creature.*  
**crēber, bra, brum**, *frequent.*  
**crēdō, ere, didī, ditum**, *believe.*  
**cremō, āre, āvī, ātus**, *burn.*  
**creō, āre, āvī, ātus**, *create, choose, elect.*  
**crucifixus**, perf. part. of **crucifigō**, *crucified.*  
**crūdēlis, e**, *cruel.*  
**cruentus, a, um**, *bloody, stained with blood.*  
**crux, cis, f.**, *cross.*  
**culpa, ae, f.**, *guilt, fault.*  
**culpō, āre, āvī, ātus**, *blame.*  
**cum, because, since.**  
**cum, with**, prep. with abl.  
**cum, when**, conjunction.  
**cum, though, although.**  
**cunctus, a, um**, *whole, all.*  
**cupidus, a, um**, *fond, eager.*  
**cūr, why.**  
**cūra, ae, f.**, *trouble, care.*  
**cūrō, āre, āvī, ātus**, *care for, take care of.*  
**cūrrō, ere, cucurri, ——**, *fly, run.*  
**cūstōdia, ae, f.**, *custody.*  
**cūstōs, ūdis, m. and f.**, *guard, keeper.*

- dē**, concerning, prep. with abl.
- dē** tertīā vigiliā, about the third watch (a watch was equal to a fourth of the night).
- dēbeō**, ēre, uī, itus, owe; with an infinitive, ought.
- dēcernō**, ēre, crēvī, crētus, decree, decide.
- deceit**, decēre, decuit, impers., it becomes.
- decor**, ūris, m., comeliness, grace.
- dēditio**, ūnis, f., surrender.
- dēdō**, ēre, dēdidī, itus, give up, surrender.
- dēducō**, ēre, dūxī, ductus, lead away.
- dēfectiō**, ūnis, f., revolt.
- dēfendō**, ēre, fendi, fēnsus, defend.
- dēfensiō**, ūnis, f., defence.
- dēfleō**, ēre, ēvī, ētus, lament, deplore.
- deiciō**, ēre, iēcī, iectus, cast down, dejected.
- dēlectō**, āre, āvī, ātus, delight.
- dēleō**, ēre, ēvī, ētus, destroy.
- dēliberō**, āre, āvī, ātus, deliberate, consult.
- dēligō**, ēre, lēgī, lectum, choose out, select.
- dēmigrō**, āre, āvī, ātus, emigrate, depart.
- dēmōnstrō**, āre, āvī, ātus, point out, show, mention.
- dēnique**, adv., finally, at last.
- dērelinquō**, ēre, liquī, lictus, forsake.
- dēscendō**, ēre, dī, sum, come down, descend.
- dēserō**, ēre, seruī, sertus, abandon, desert, neglect.
- dēsiderō**, āre, āvī, ātus, long for, desire.
- dēsistō**, ēre, stitī, —, cease.
- dēspērō**, āre, āvī, ātus, despair.
- dēspiciō**, ēre, exī, ectus, despise.
- dēsum**, dēesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus, be wanting, fail.
- dēterior**, ius, comp. adj., worse.
- dētrimentum**, ī, n., loss, damage.
- deus**, ī, m., god.
- dēvincō**, ēre, vici, victus, overcome.
- dexter**, tra, trum, right.
- dicō**, ēre, dixī, dictus, say, appoint.
- dictātor**, ūris, m., dictator.
- dictum**, ī, n., word, utterance.
- diēs**, diēī, m., day.
- differō**, ferre, distulī, dilātus, differ.
- difficilis**, e, difficult.

- dignus, a, um, *worthy*.  
 diligentia, ae, f., *diligence*.  
 dignitas, ātis, f., *dignity, rank*.  
 dignus, a, um, *worthy*.  
 diligentia, ae, f., *diligence, carefulness, industry*.  
 dimicō, *I contend*.  
 dimitto, ere, mīsī, missus, *let go*.  
 diripiō, ere, ripuī, reptus, *plunder*.  
 discēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *depart*.  
 disciplina, ae, f., *discipline*.  
 discipulus, ī, m., *learner, disciple*.  
 discordia, ae, f., *disunion, discord*.  
 discutiō, ere, cussī, cussus, *strike asunder, scatter*.  
 dispōnō, ere, posui, *positus, distribute*.  
 disēnsiō, ūnis, f., *disagreement*.  
 dissimilis, e, adj., *unlike, dissimilar*.  
 disturbō, āre, āvī, ātus, *throw into disorder, disturb*.  
 diū, adv., *a long time*.  
 Diviciācus, ī, m., *Diviciacus*, a powerful Haeduan.  
 dividō, ere, visī, visus, *divide, separate*.  
 divitiae, ārum, f. plu., *riches, wealth*.  
 dō, dāre, dedī, datus, *give, render*.  
 doceō, ēre, uī, doctus, *teach, show*.  
 doleo, ēre, uī, itus, *feel sorry, be pained, grieve*.  
 dolor, is, m., *pain, sorrow*.  
 dominus, ī, m., *lord, ruler, master, chief*.  
 domus, ūs, f., *house, home*.  
 dōnec, *until*.  
 dōnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *give, present*.  
 dōnum, ī, n., *gift*.  
 dubitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *doubt, be in doubt*.  
 dūcō, ere, dūxī, *ductus, lead*.  
 dulcēdo, inis, f., *sweetness*.  
 dulcis, e, *sweet*.  
 dum, *while, until, as long as*.  
 Dumnorix, īgis, m., *Dumnorix*, a leader of the Haedui.  
 duodecim, indecl., *twelve*.  
 dux, ducis, m., *leader*.
- ē, ex, *from, out of*, prep. with abl., ex is to be used before vowels or h.  
 ecclēsia, ae, f., *the Church*.

- ēdoceō, ēre, uī, ēdoctus, *teach.*  
 ēducō, īre, āvī, ātus, *bring up, educate.*  
 ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, *ductus, lead forth.*  
 efficiō, ere, fēcī, *fectus, make, render.*  
 effugīō, ere, fūgī, *fugitūrus, escape.*  
 egēnus, a, um, *desitute, indigent.*  
 egeō, ēre, uī, ——, *need, want, lack.*  
 ego, meī, *I.*  
 ēgredior, ī, *gressus sum, march out.*  
 ēgregius, a, um, *excellent, eminent.*  
 Éia, interj., *we beseech, indeed.*  
 ēiciō, ere, ēiēci, ēiectus, *thrust out; sē ēicere, rush forth.*  
 ēloquentia, ae, f., *eloquence.*  
 emō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus, *buy.*  
 ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *reveal, disclose.*  
 eō, adv., *thither, to that place.*  
 eōdem, adv., *to the same place.*  
 epistula, ae, f., *letter.*  
 eques, itis, m., *horseman; pl., cavalry.*  
 equester, tris, tre, *equestrian, cavalry (adjective)*  
 equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry.*  
 equus, ī, m., *horse.*  
 ergō, adv., *therefore.*  
 errō, āre, āvī, ātus, *err, am mistaken.*  
 error, īris, m., *wandering, mistake.*  
 ērudiō, īre, īvī, or ii, ītus, *instruct, teach.*  
 ēruptiō, īnis, f., *sally.*  
 esuriō, īre, īvī, *be hungry, suffer hunger.*  
 ēsūs, ūs, m., *food.*  
 et, conj., *and, et . . . et, both . . . and.*  
 etiam, *also, even.*  
 Eurōpa, ae, f., *Europe.*  
 exaudiō, īre, īvī, or ii, ītus, *hearken to.*  
 excēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *depart from.*  
 excidium, ī, n., *destruction.*  
 excitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *stir up, rouse.*  
 exeō, īre, ii, *exitūrus, go out, go forth.*  
 exercitus, ūs, m., *army.*  
 exilium, ii, n., *exile.*  
 existimō, āre, āvī, ātus, *think, consider.*  
 exitium, ī, n., *destruction.*

exitus, ūs, m., *exit, passage.*  
 expallesco, ere, uī, *turn pale.*  
 expedītus, a, um, *unencumbered, light-armed.*  
 expellō, ere, puli, pulsus, *drive out.*  
 experior, irī, *pertus sum, try, test.*  
 explorātor, òris, m., *scout.*  
 explorō, āre, āvī, ātus, *examine.*  
 exprimō, ere, pressī, *pressus, force out, elicit.*  
 expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *take by storm.*  
 existō, ere exstīti, exstītum, *arise.*  
 exterus, a, um, *outside.*  
 extra, prep. with acc., *outside, beyond.*  
 extrēmus, a, um, *extreme, end of.*  
 exul, ulis, adj., *banished, exiled.*  
 exulto, āre, āvī, ātus, *exult, rejoice.*

fābula, ae, f., *story.*  
 facile, *easily.*  
 facilis, e, *easy.*  
 facinus, facinoris, n., *crime.*  
 faciō, ere, fēci, factus, *make, do.*  
 factiō, ònis, f., *faction.*  
 facultās, ātis, f., *abundance, supply.*  
 fama, ae, f., *report, reputation, fame, renown.*  
 favēō, ēre, favī, *fautus, favor, be well disposed.*  
 familiāris, e, *intimate, familiar.*  
 famulus, i, m., *servant, attendant.*  
 favilla, ae, f., *ashes.*  
 fel, fellis, n., *bile, bitterness.*  
 fēlix, fēlicis, *fortunate, happy.*  
 fēmina, ae, f., *woman.*  
 ferax, ferācis, *fertile.*  
 ferē, almost, about, *practically.*  
 ferrum, i, n., *iron, sword.*  
 festinō, āre, āvī, ātus, *hasten, hurry.*  
 festus, a, um, *solemn, festive.*  
 fidēs, ēi, f., *fidelity, loyalty.*  
 fidūcia, ae, f., *confidence.*  
 filia, ae, f., *daughter.*  
 filius, i (ii), m., *son.*  
 finiō, īre, īvī or ii, ītus, *limit, bound, end.*

- fīnis, is, m., end, boundary; in pl., territory.**  
**fīmitās, ātis, f., firmness, strength.**  
**fīrmō, āre, āvī, ātus, make firm, strengthen.**  
**fīrmus, a, um, steadfast, strong.**  
**fīgitō, āre, āvī, ātus, demand.**  
**fīlamma, ae, f., blaze, flame.**  
**fīlō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, weep.**  
**fīltus, us, m., weeping.**  
**fīlōrēō, ēre, ui, flourish, bloom, thrive.**  
**fīlōs, flōris, m., flower.**  
**fīlūmen, inis, n., river.**  
**fīluvius, i (ii), m., river.**  
**foedus, ēris, n., league, treaty, compact.**  
**forma, ae, f., shape, appearance, beauty.**  
**fortis, f, brave, courageous.**  
**fortiter, bravely.**  
**fortitūdo, inis, f., strength, bravery.**  
**fortūna, ae, f., fortune.**  
**forum, i, n., market-place.**  
**fossa, ae, f., ditch, trench.**  
**frangō, ere, frēgi, fractus, break, shiver.**  
**frāter, tris, m., brother.**  
**frōns, tis, f., garland, chaplet.**  
**fructus, ūs, m., fruit (especially of trees).**  
**frūmentum, i, n., grain.**  
**fruor, frui, fructus sum, enjoy, delight in.**  
**frustrā, adv., in vain.**  
**fuga, ae, f., flight.**  
**fugiō, ere, fūgi, fugitūrus, flee.**  
**fugitīvus, a, um, fugitive; fugitīvus (as noun), a fugitive.**  
**fugō, āre, āvī, ātus, put to flight.**  
**fulgeō, ēre, fulsi, ——, flash, shine.**  
**fulgidus, a, um, flashing, glittering.**  
**fulgor, ūris, m., lightning, brightness, glory.**  
**fungor, fungī, functus sum, perform, execute.**  
**furor, ūris, m., rage, fury.**

**Galba, ae, m., Galba (a man's name).**

**Gallī, ūrum, m. pl., Gauls.**

**Gallia, ae, f., Gaul.**

**Gallus, i, m., a Gaul.**

- gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice, delight in.**  
**gaudium, ī, n., joy.**  
**gemō, ere, uī, itus, moan.**  
**Genava, ae, f., Geneva, a town of the Allobroges.**  
**genitrix, īcis, f., mother.**  
**gēns, gentis, f., tribe.**  
**genus, eris, n., race, kind.**  
**Germāni, ḫrum, m. pl., Germans.**  
**gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, carry on, perform; with bellum, to wage.**  
**gladius, ī (ii), m., sword.**  
**glōria, ae, f., glory.**  
**gracilis, e, slender.**  
**Graeci, ḫrum, m. pl., Greeks.**  
**grātia, ae, f., grace, favor, thanks.**  
**grātus, a, um, pleasing, welcome.**  
**gravis, e, heavy, grievous, serious.**  
**gravitās, ātis, f., heaviness, violence.**
- habeō, ēre, uī, itus, have, possess.**  
**habitō, āre, āvī, ātus, dwell, reside.**  
**Haeduī, ḫrum, m. pl., Haedui, a Gallic tribe.**  
**hasta, ae, f., spear.**  
**Helvētiī, ḫrum, m. pl., the Helvetii, a Celtic tribe.**  
**Hēva, ae, f., Eve.**  
**hiberna, ḫrum, n. pl., winter quarters.**  
**Hibernia, ae, f., Ireland.**  
**Hibērus, ī, m., Hiberus, a river in Spain.**  
**hīc, here, at this place.**  
**hīc, haec, hōc, this.**  
**hiemō, āre, āvī, ātus, pass the winter.**  
**hiems, is, f., winter.**  
**Hispānia, ae, f., Spain.**  
**historia, ae, f., a narrative of past events, history.**  
**hodiē, today.**  
**homo, inis, m., man.**  
**honor, ḫris, m., honor.**  
**honōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, respect, honor.**  
**hōra, ae, f., hour.**  
**hortor, ārī, ātus sum, exhort.**  
**hortus, ī, m., garden.**  
**hostia, ae, f., victim.**

**hostis**, **is**, m., *enemy*.

**hūc**, adv., *hither*.

**hūmānus**, **a**, **um**, *human*.

**humilis**, **e**, *low, humble*.

**iaceō**, **ēre**, **ui**, **itus**, *lie*.

**iam**, adv., *now, already, nōn iam, no more, no longer*.

**ibi**, adv., *there, in that place*.

**īdem**, **eadem**, **idem**, *the same*.

**ideō**, adv., *on that account, therefore*.

**Iēsus**, **u**, m., *Jesus*.

**idōneus**, **a**, **um**, *suitable*.

**ignāvia**, **ae**, f., *cowardice*.

**ignāvus**, **a**, **um**, *cowardly*.

**ignis**, **is**, f., *fire*.

**ignōminia**, **ae**, f., *disgrace, infamy*.

**ignoscō**, **ere**, **nōvī**, **nōtus**, *pardon, excuse*.

**ille**, **illa**, *illud, that*.

**imber**, **imbris**, m., *rainstorm*.

**immensus**, **a**, **um**, *immeasurable, boundless*.

**immortālis**, **e**, *immortal*.

**impedimentum**, **i**, n., *hindrance; plural, baggage*.

**impediō**, **ire**, **ivī** (ii), **itus**, *impede, hinder*.

**impendeō**, **ēre**, —, —, *overhang, threaten*.

**imperātor**, **ōris**, m., *commander*.

**imperitus**, **a**, **um**, *inexperienced*.

**imperium**, **i**, n., *rule, command*.

**imperō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *demand*.

**impetus**, **ūs**, m., *onset, attack*.

**implōrō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *entreat*.

**impūne**, adv., *with impunity*.

**in**, *into*; prep. with acc.

**in**, *in*, *on*, prep. with abl.

**in animō habeō**, *I have in mind, intend*.

**incarnātiō**, **ōnis**, f., *incarnation*.

**incendium**, **i**, n., *fire, conflagration*.

**incendō**, **ere**, **cendi**, *census, set on fire*.

**incertus**, **a**, **um**, *uncertain*.

**incipiō**, **ere**, **cēpī**, *ceptus, begin*.

**incitō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *urge on, encourage*.

**incola**, **ae**, m., *inhabitant*.

- incolō, ere, uī, cultus, *inhabit.*  
 incolumis, e, *unharmed.*  
 incommodum, i, n., *disaster.*  
 inde, adv., *thence, thereupon.*  
 indignus, a, um, *unworthy.*  
 indulgentia, ae, f., *pardon.*  
 indulgeō, ēre, indulsi, *indultus, be kind, indulge in (a thing).*  
 ineō, ire, ii, itus, *enter upon; consilium infire, form a plan.*  
 inferior, ius, *inferior.*  
 inferō, ferre, tulī, illātus, *bring upon.*  
 inferus, a, um, *below.*  
 infestus, a, um, *hostile, dangerous.*  
 infirmus, a, um, *weak.*  
 infundō, ere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour in, pour upon.*  
 ingemiscō, ere, uī, ——, *groan, sigh over.*  
 ingenium, i, n., *talent, natural disposition.*  
 inimicus, i, *an enemy (personal enemy as opposed to hostis, a public enemy).*  
 initium, i, n., *beginning. initiō, in the beginning, at first.*  
 iniuria, ae, f., *injury.*  
 inopia, ae, f., *lack, need.*  
 inquam, ——, ——, ——, *say.*  
 insidiae, ārum, f. pl., *ambush, plot.*  
 institūtum, i, n., *institution.*  
 instō, āre, āvī, ātus, *press on.*  
 instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, *fit out.*  
 instruō, ere, ūxī, ūctus, *draw up, arrange.*  
 insula, ae, f., *island.*  
 intellegō, ere, lēxi, lēctus, *know, understood.*  
 inter, prep. with acc., *among, between, in the midst of.*  
 inter sē dare, *to exchange, give each other.*  
 interimō, ere, ēmī, emptus, *destroy, kill.*  
 interclūdō, ere, clūsi, clūsus, *cut off, hinder.*  
 intereā, adv., *in the meanwhile.*  
 intereō, īre, ii, itūrus, *perish.*  
 interest, *it concerns.*  
 interficiō, ere, fēci, fectus, *kill.*  
 interim, *in the meanwhile.*  
 interior, ius, *inner.*  
 interitus, ūs, m., *ruin, destruction.*  
 intersum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be present, at.*

**intrā**, *within*, prep. with acc.

**intrō**, *are, āvī, ātus, walk in, enter.*

**inultus**, *a, um, unavenged, not vindicated.*

**inveniō**, *ire, vēnī, ventus, find, come upon.*

**invidia**, *ae, f., envy.*

**invītus**, *a, um, unwilling, reluctant.*

**Iōannis**, *is, m., John.*

**ipse**, *a, um, self.*

**īra**, *ae, f., anger, wrath.*

**is, ea, id, that; he, she, it, they (pl.).**

**iste, a, ud, that (of yours).**

**ita**, *thus, so.*

**itaque**, *and thus, therefore.*

**Italia**, *ae, f., Italy.*

**iter, itineris**, *n., journey, march.*

**iterum**, *again, a second time.*

**iubeō**, *ēre, iussī, iussus, order.*

**iūcundus**, *a, um, adj., agreeable, pleasant, delightful.*

**iūdex**, *icis, m., judge.*

**iūdicō**, *āre, āvī, ātus, judge, adjudge.*

**iugum**, *ī, n., yoke; ridge (of mountains).*

**iūmentum**, *i, n., beasts of burden.*

**iungō**, *ere, iunxī, iunctum, join; foedus iungō, form an alliance;*

**amicitiam iungō, make friendship.**

**iūrō**, *āre, āvī, ātus, swear, take oath.*

**iūs, iūris**, *n., right, power.*

**iūs iūrandum**; gen. **iūris iūrandī**, *n., oath.* (Each word is declined separately.)

**iūstitia**, *ae, f., justice.*

**iūstus**, *a, um, just, lawful, true.*

**iūvenis**, *is, m., young man.*

**Kalendae, ārum**, *g., Kalends (first of the month).*

**labor**, *ōris, m., labor.*

**labōrō**, *āre, āvī, ātus, work, suffer.*

**laceſſō**, *ere, laceſſīvī, laceſſītus, harass.*

**lacrimae**, *ārum, f. pl., tears.*

**laedō**, *ere, laesī, laesus, hurt, injure.*

**laetitia**, *ae, f., joy, gladness.*

**laetō**, *āre, āvī, ātus, delight, cheer.*

**laetus**, *a, um, glad, joyful, delightful.*

- lapīs, idis**, m., *stone*.  
**lassus, a, um**, *faint, weary*.  
**lateō, ēre, uī**, ——, *lurke, be hidden*.  
**latro, latrōnis**, m., *robber, highwayman*.  
**lātūs, a, um**, *broad*.  
**latus, eris, n.**, *side, flank*.  
**laudābilis, e**, *praiseworthy, laudable*.  
**laudō, āre, āvī**, *ātus, praise*.  
**laus, laudis**, f., *praise*.  
**lēgātiō, ḫnis**, f., *embassy*.  
**lēgātus, ī**, m., *lieutenant, envoy*.  
**legiō, ḫnis**, f., *legion*.  
**lēniō, ire, īvī**, or **ītūs, mollify, mitigate**.  
**lēnis, e, soft, mild, gentle**.  
**levāmen, inis**, n., *solace, consolation*.  
**levis, e**, *light*.  
**lēx, lēgis**, f., *law*.  
**libenter**, *willingly, with pleasure*.  
**liber, era, erum**, *free*.  
**liberi, ḫrum (um)**, m. pl., *children (free born)*.  
**liberō, āre, āvī**, *ātus, set free*.  
**libertās, tātis**, f., *liberty*.  
**lignum, ī**, n., *wood*.  
**licet, licēre, licuit**, *impers., it is permitted*.  
**litterae, ārum**, f., *a letter, literature*.  
**litus, oris**, n., *shore*.  
**locus, ī**, m., *place, spot*.  
**longē, adv.**, *far*.  
**longus, a, um**, *long*.  
**loquax, ācis**, *talkative, loquacious*.  
**loquor, ī**, *locūtus sum, speak*.  
**lūceō, ēre, lūxi**, ——, *shine*.  
**lūcidus, a, um**, *bright, shining*.  
**luctus, ūs**, m., *mourning*.  
**lūdibrium, ī**, n., *mockery, sport; habeō in lūdebriō, deride, mock*.  
**ludus, ī**, m., *play, game*.  
**lūna, ae**, f., *moon*.  
**lux, lūcis**, m., *light*.  
**luxūria, ae**, f., *extravagance, luxury*.  
**Magdalēna, ae**, f., *Magdalene*.  
**magis, more**, *rather; comp. of magnopere*.

- magister, trī, m., *master, teacher.*  
magnificentia, ae, f., *grandeur, splendor, greatness.*  
magistratus, ūs, m., *magistrate.*  
magnitudo, inis, f., *size, extent.*  
magnopere, *greatly, earnestly.*  
magnus, a, um, *large, great.*  
māiestas, ātis, f., *grandeur, majesty.*  
maiōrēs, um, m. pl., *ancestors.*  
maledictus, a, um, *accursed.* As subst., **maledictum**, i., n., *a curse.*  
mālō, mālle, mālui, ——, *be more willing, prefer.*  
mandatum, ī, n., *command, order.*  
mandō, āre, āvī, ātus, *assign.*  
maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *remain.*  
manus, ūs, f., *hand; band, force (of troops).*  
mare, is, n., *sea.*  
margarita, ae, f., *pearl.*  
Maria, ae, f., *Mary.*  
maritimus, a, um, *of the sea, maritime.*  
Massilia, ae, f., *Marseille.*  
Māter, tris, f., *mother.*  
mātūrus, a, um, *right, proper, speedy.*  
maximē, *especially; sup. of magnopere.*  
medicina, ae, f., *remedy, cure.*  
medius, a, um, *middle, middle of.*  
melior, ius, *better, comp. of bonus.*  
memini, meminisse, *remember.*  
memor, oris, *mindful.*  
memoria, ae, f., *memory, recollection.*  
memorō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call to mind, in pass. voice, remember.*  
mendacium, ī, n., *lie.*  
mens, mentis, f., *heart, mind.*  
mensis, is, m., *a month.*  
mereor, ērī, meritus sum, *deserve.*  
messis, is, f., *harvest.*  
metus, ūs, m., *fear, dread.*  
meus, a, um, *my.*  
Michāēl, ēlis, m., *Michael.*  
migrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *go, move, wander.*  
mihi est in animō, *I have in mind, intend.*  
miles, itis, m., *soldier.*  
militaris, e, *military.*

- mīrus, a, um**, wonderful, marvellous.  
**misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus, mix, mingle.**  
**miser, a, um**, wretched, unfortunate.  
**misereor, ērī, itus sum, pity, have mercy on.**  
**miseret, miserēre, miseritum est, impers., it excites pity.**  
**misericordia, ae, f.**, pity.  
**misericors, cordis, adj., merciful.**  
**mittō, ere, mīsi, missus, send.**  
**modestia, ae, f.**, moderation, modesty.  
**modo, just, just now.**  
**modus, i, m.**, manner, kind.  
**moestitia, ae, f.**, sorrow, grief.  
**moestus, a, um**, dejected, melancholy.  
**moneō, ēre, uī, itus, advise, warn.**  
**mōns, montis, m.**, mountain.  
**mora, ae, f.**, delay..  
**morbus, i, m.**, illness, sickness, disease.  
**morior, īrī, moritūrus, die.**  
**moror, ārī, ātus sum, tarry, delay.**  
**mors, mortis, f.**, death.  
**mortuus, a, um**, perf. part. of **morior, die.**  
**mōs, mōris, m.**, custom; pl., manners.  
**mōtus, ūs, m.**, revolt.  
**moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, move.**  
**mox, soon.**  
**mulier, eris, f.**, woman.  
**multitudō, dinis, f.**, multitude.  
**multus, a, um**, much; pl., many.  
**mundus, i, m.**, the world, earth.  
**mūniō, ire, ivī, itus, fortify.**  
**mūnitiō, onis, f.**, fortification.  
**mūrus, i, m.**, wall.  
**mūsa, ae, f.**, muse (goddess).  
**mūtō, āre, āvī, ātus, change, alter.**  
**mūnus, eris, n.**, duty, favor, gift.  
**myrrha, ae, f.**, myrrh.  
  
**nancīscor, i, nactus sum, procure.**  
**narrō, āre, āvī, ātus, relate, tell.**  
**nāscor, i, nātus sum, be born.**  
**nātālis, is, m.**, a birthday.

**nātiō, ūnis, f., nation, tribe.**

**nātūitas, tātis, f., birth, nativity.**

**nātūra, ae, f., nature.**

**nātus, a, um, perf. part. of nascor, born.**

**nauta, ae, m., sailor.**

**nāvālis, e, naval.**

**nāvis, is, f., ship.**

**-ne,** enclitic interrogative particle, attached to emphatic word, and expecting either a negative or affirmative answer.

**nē, not.**

**nē, lest, that . . . not.**

**nē . . . quidem, not even;** emphasizes the expression placed between the **nē** and the **quidem**.

**necessē est, it is necessary.**

**nēcō, āre, āvī, ātus, murder, kill.**

**neglegō, ere, ēxi, ēctus, neglect.**

**negōtium, ī (ii), n., business.**

**nēmō, m., no one, dat., nēminī, acc., nēminem; gen. and abl., not used.**

**neque (nec), nor.**

**nihil, indecl. n., nothing.**

**nihilō, abl., by nothing.**

**nīl, nihil, or nihilum, m., indeed, nothing.**

**nīmis, adv., too much, excessively.**

**nisi, unless.**

**nitescō, ere, nitui, ——, glitter, shine.**

**nōbilis, e, noble.**

**noceō, ēre, uī, itūrus, injure, harm.**

**nocturnus, a, um, at night.**

**nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, ——, be unwilling, will not.**

**nōmen, inis, n., name.**

**nōn, adv., not.**

**nōndum, not yet.**

**nōnne, interrogative particle expecting the answer 'yes.'**

**nōnnūllus, a, um, some.**

**noster, tra, trum, our; nostri, our men.**

**novus, a, um, new.**

**nox, noctis, f., night.**

**nūdus, a, um, bare, naked.**

**num, interrogative particle expecting the answer 'no;' in indirect questions, whether.**

**numerus**, **i**, m., *number*.

**numquam**, *never*.

**nunc**, *now*, temporal adv.

**nūntiō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *announce*.

**nūntius**, **i** (**ii**), m., *messenger*.

**ob**, *on account of*, prep. with acc.

**oblīscor**, **i**, **oblītus sum**, *forget*.

**obscūrō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *darken, obscure*.

**obses**, **idis**, m., *hostage*.

**obsidēō**, **ēre**, **sēdī**, **sessus**, *blockade*.

**obsidiō**, **ōnis**, f., *siege*.

**obstupus**, **a**, **um**, *bent, perverse*.

**obtemporō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *obey*.

**obtineō**, **ēre**, **uī**, **tentus**, *occupy, hold*.

**occāsiō**, **ōnis**, f., *occasion, opportunity*.

**occidō**, **ere**, **cīdī**, **cīsus**, *kill*.

**occupō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *take possession of, occupy*.

**ōcior**, **ius**, *swifler*.

**oculus**, **i**, m., *eye*.

**ōdi**, **ōdisse**, *hate*.

**odium**, **i**, n., *hatred*.

**officium**, **i**, n., *duty*.

**ōmen**, **inīs**, n., *foreboding*.

**omnīnō**, adv., *altogether, at all*.

**omnipotēns**, gen., **ntis**, *almighty*.

**omnis**, **e**, *all, every*.

**opera**, **ae**, f., *assistance*.

**opiniō**, **ōnis**, f., *opinion, expectation*.

**oportet**, **oportere**, **oportuit**, impers., *it is fitting*.

**oppidānus**, **i**, m., *inhabitant of a town, townsman*.

**oppidum**, **i**, n., *town, walled town*.

**opportūnus**, **a**, **um**, *fit, opportune*.

**oppīmō**, **ere**, **pressī**, **pressus**, *overwhelm*.

**oppugnātiō**, **ōnis**, f., *siege*.

**oppugnō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *I attack, assault*.

**ops**, **opis**, f., *power, help*; in pl., *resources*. Nom. sing. is not used.

**optō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *desire*.

**opus**, **eris**, n., *work, labor*.

**opus est**, *it is necessary*.

**ōra**, **ae**, f., *coast*.

**ōrātio, ūnis, f.**, *speech, oration.*

**ōrātōr, ūris, m.**, *orator, envoy.*

**ordo, inis, m.**, *order, rank or line (of soldiers).*

**ornāmentum, i, n.**, *ornament, decoration.*

**ornātus, ūs, m.**, *ornament, dress.*

**ōrō, ārē, āvī, ātus, pray, ask, request.**

**ostendō, ere, dī, sum, show.**

**ōtium, i, n.**, *leisure, idleness.*

**ovis, is, f.**, *sheep.*

**pābulum, i, n.**, *forage.*

**paene, almost, nearly.**

**paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, impers., it causes regret.**

**pāgus, i, m.**, *district, village.*

**palūs, lūdis, f.**, *marsh.*

**pār, paris, equal.**

**parātus, a, um, ready, prepared.**

**parcō, ere, pepercī, parsūrus, spare.**

**pariēs, etis, m., wall.**

**parō, I prepare, get ready.**

**pars, partis, f., part.**

**parsimōnia, ae, f.**, *economy.*

**parum, adv., little.**

**parvus, a, um, small.**

**passiō, ūnis, f.**, *suffering, passion.*

**passus, ūs, m.**, *pace (five feet).*

**pateō, ēre, patui, lie open.**

**pater, tris, m.**, *father.*

**patibulum, i, n.**, *gibbet.*

**patiōr, i, passus sum, suffer.**

**patria, ae, f.**, *native country, fatherland.*

**patrōnus, i, m.**, *protector, defender.*

**paucī, ae, a, few, used only in pl.**

**paucitās, ātis, f.**, *fewness, small number.*

**paullātim, little by little, gradually.**

**paulō, abl., by a little.**

**paulum, adv., a little.**

**Paulus, i, m.**, *Paul.*

**pauper, eris, poor.**

**paupertas, ātis, f.**, *poverty.*

**pāx, pācis, f.**, *peace.*

- peccātor, òris, m., sinner.**  
**peccātum, i, n., sin.**  
**peccō, āre, āvī, ātus, transgress, sin.**  
**pecūnia, ae, f., money.**  
**pedes, itis, m., foot-soldier; in pl., infantry.**  
**peditātus, ūs, m., infantry.**  
**pellō, erē, pepulī, pulsus, rout, defeat.**  
**pendeō, ēre, pependī, —, hang down, depend.**  
**per, through, by means of, prep. with acc.**  
**peragō, ere, ēgī, actus, finish, accomplish.**  
**perdō, ere, didi, ditus, lose.**  
**perducō, ere, xī, ctus, bring, guide.**  
**perennis, e, unceasing, perpetual.**  
**perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, carry through, convey; endure.**  
**perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, accomplish.**  
**perfodiō, ere, fōdī, fossum, pierce through, transfix.**  
**perfuga, ae, m., deserter.**  
**periculōsus, a, um, dangerous.**  
**periculum, i, n., danger.**  
**permittō, ere, mīsī, missus, permit.**  
**permovēō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, influence, arouse.**  
**perniciēs, ēi, f., destruction, ruin.**  
**perpaucus, a, um, very little, very few.**  
**perpetuuus, a, um, perpetual.**  
**persequor, i, secūtus sum, follow up.**  
**persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus, persuade.**  
**perterreō, ēre, uī, itus, terrify.**  
**perturbō, āre, āvī, ātus, agitate, disturb.**  
**perveniō, ire, vēnī, ventum, come, arrive.**  
**pēs, pedis, m., foot.**  
**petō, ere, ivī (ii), itus, seek, request.**  
**Petrus, i, m., Peter.**  
**pietās, ātis, f., affection, piety.**  
**piger, ra, rum, unwilling, lazy.**  
**pigritia, ae, f., sluggishness, laziness, idleness.**  
**piget, it disgusts.**  
**pius, a, um, pious.**  
**placeō, ēre, uī, placitūrus, please.**  
**placō, āre, āvī, ātus, reconcile, pacify.**  
**planitiēs, ēi, f., plain.**  
**plāga, ae, f., wound.**

- planctus, ūs, m., *wailing, lamentation.*  
 plangō, ere, xī, ctus, *beat, strike.*  
 plaudō, ere, sī, sus, *strike, applaud.*  
 plēbs, is, f., *common people.*  
 plēnus, a, um, *full.*  
 plērique, aequē, aque, *most.*  
 plōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *weep.*  
 plūs, comparative of *multus.*  
 poēma, ātis, n., *a composition in verse, a poem.*  
 poena, ae, f., *punishment, penalty.*  
 poēta, ae, m., *poet.*  
 polliceor, ērī, itus sum, *promise.*  
 Pompeius, Pompei, m., *Pompey, a man's name.*  
 pōnō, ere, posui, *positus, place, lay aside.*  
 pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*  
 pōnō, ere, posui, *positus, put, place, establish.*  
 Pontius Pilātus, *Pontius Pilate, governor of Judaea, in the time of Christ.*  
 populus, ī, m., *people.*  
 porta, ae, f., *gate.*  
 portō, āre, āvī, ātus, *carry, bring, convey.*  
 portus, ūs, m., *harbor.*  
 possessiō, ūnis, f., *possession.*  
 post, adv., *afterwards.*  
 post, after, prep. with acc.  
 porteā, *afterwards, later on.*  
 posterus, a, um, *following.*  
 postquam, *after, conjunction.*  
 postrēmō, adv., *at last, in the end.*  
 postulō, āre, āvī, ātus, *demand.*  
 potentia, ae, f., *power.*  
 potestās, ātis, f., *power, opportunity.*  
 potior, potirī, potitus sum, *take possession of, acquire.*  
 pōtō, āre, āvī, ātus, *drink.*  
 praebeō, ēre, uī, itus, *grant, give, offer.*  
 praecipiō, ere, cēpī, *ceptus, enjoin.*  
 praeclārus, a, um, *splendid, grand.*  
 praeco, ūnis, m., *crier, herald.*  
 praeda, ae, f., *booty.*  
 praedō, ūnis, m., *robber.*  
 praeficiō, ere, fēcī, *fectus, put in charge.*

- praemittō, ere, misī, missus, send ahead, dispatch.**  
**praemium, ī, n., reward.**  
**praesepium, ii, n., crib, manger.**  
**praesidium, ī, n., garrison.**  
**praestat, it is better.**  
**praestō, āre, āvī, ātus, perform, make, surpass.**  
**praesum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be in charge of.**  
**praetereā, besides.**  
**praetor, ūris, m., praetor.**  
**precor, ārī, ātus, pray, beseech.**  
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus, press, crowd.**  
**pretiōsus, a, um, valuable, precious.**  
**prex, precis, f., a prayer, entreaty.**  
**primō, first, firstly.**  
**princeps, cipis, m., chief.**  
**principium, ii, n., beginning.**  
**prior, us, former, before.**  
**pristinus, a, um, pristine, former, early.**  
**privātus, a, um, private.**  
**prō, prep. with abl., before, in front of; instead of; in behalf of; in accordance with.**  
**probō, āre, āvī, ātus, approve.**  
**probus, a, um, good, honest, virtuous.**  
**prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, advance.**  
**procul, adv., far, afar off.**  
**prōcurrō, ere, cucurrī, cursum, run forward.**  
**prōdigium, ii, n., unusual sign, foreboding, prodigy.**  
**prōditiō, ūnis, f., betrayal, treason.**  
**proelium, ī (ii), n., battle.**  
**profero, ferre, tuli, lātus, bring forth.**  
**proficiscor, ī, fectus sum, set out.**  
**profugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, flee, escape.**  
**prōgredior, ī, gressus sum, advance, go forward.**  
**prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus, keep off, keep away (transitive).**  
**prōiciō, ere, iēcl, iectus, throw, cast.**  
**prōmissio, ūnis, f., promise.**  
**prope, near.**  
**properō, āre, āvī, ātus, hasten, hurry.**  
**propior, ius, nearer.**  
**propitius, a, um, favorable, gracious.**  
**propter, prep. with acc., on account of.**

**protēnus**, *forthwith, straightway.*  
**prōvideō**, *ēre, vīdī, vīsus, provide, take care.*  
**prōvincia**, *ae, f., province.*  
**proximus**, *a, um, nearest, next.*  
**prūdens**, *entis, skilled, wise.*  
**prūdentia**, *ae, f., prudence.*  
**pūblicus**, *a, um, public.*  
**pudet**, *it shames.*  
**puella**, *ae, f., girl.*  
**puer**, *ī, m., boy.*  
**pugna**, *ae, f., fight, battle.*  
**pugnō**, *āre, āvī, ātus, fight.*  
**pulcher**, *chra, chrum, beautiful, pretty.*  
**pulchritūdo**, *inis, f., beauty.*  
**pulvis**, *pulveris, m., dust.*  
**putō**, *āre, āvī, ātus, believe, think, consider.*

**quā**, *where?*  
**quaerō**, *ere, quaeſīvī, quaesītus, inquire.*  
**quamquam**, *although.*  
**quandō**, *when?*  
**quantus**, *a, um, how much, how great?*  
**quārē**, *adv., wherefore, why?*  
**quasi**, *adv., as if, like.*  
**-que**, *and, enclitic, conjunction.*  
**quercus**, *ūs, f., oak.*  
**qui**, *quae, quod, who, which.*  
**quīdam**, *quaedam, quiddam or quoddam, a certain.*  
**quia**, *conj., because.*  
**quīa**, *but that.*  
**quinque**, *num. adj., five.*  
**quis**, *quid, interr. pron., who, what?*  
**quisquam**, *quaequam, quidquam (quicquam), any, any one.*  
**quisque**, *quaeque, quidque (quicque), each.*  
**quisquis**, *quaeque, quodquod, subst. quicquid, quidquid, pron.*  
**rel.**, *whoever, whatever.*  
**quō**, *in order that; regularly used when followed by a comparative.*  
**quō**, *whither, interrogative and relative adv.*  
**quod**, *because.*  
**quōminus**, *from (only with verbs of hindering).*  
**quondam**, *formerly.*

**quoniam**, *inasmuch as*, conj.

**quoque**, *also*, always follows the word it modifies.

**quum**, see **cum**.

**ratiō, ūnis**, f., *reason*.

**recēdō, ere, recessi**, *recessum, go back, retreat*.

**recēns**, *recentis, recent*.

**receptus, ūs**, m., *a drawing back, retreat*.

**recipiō, ere, cēpi**, *ceptus, take back; with reflexive sē, to retreat*.

**recordō, āre, āvī, ātus**, *recollect, remember*.

**recūsō, āre, āvī, ātus**, *refuse*.

**reddō, ere, reddidī**, *redditus, return, give back; render*.

**redeō, īre, īl, itūrus**, *return*.

**redimō, ere, ēmī**, *emptus, buy back, redeem*.

**redivīvus**, a, um, *that lives again, renewed*.

**regnō, āre, āvī, ātus**, *rule, reign*.

**redūcō, ere, dūxī**, *ductus, lead back*.

**referō, ferre, rettuli**, *relātus, bring back*.

**refugium, ī**, n., *refuge*.

**rēgīna**, ae, f., *queen*.

**regiō, ūnis**, f., *region*.

**rēgnum, ī**, n., *kingdom*.

**regō, ere, rēxī**, *rectus, rule*.

**reiciō, ere, reiēcī**, *reiectus, hurl back*.

**relinquō, ere, liquī**, *lictus, leave, leave behind*.

**reliquus**, a, um, *remaining*.

**remaneō, āre, mānsī**, *mānsūrus, remain*.

**remigrō, āre, āvī, ātus**, *go back*.

**reminiscor, ī**, *remember*.

**remissio, ūnis**, f., *remission*.

**renovō, āre, āvī, ātus**, *renew*.

**renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus**, *bring back word, report*.

**repellō, ere, reppulī**, *repulsus, drive back, repel*.

**repentīnus**, a, um, *sudden*.

**reperiō, īre, repperi**, *repertus, discover*.

**rēs, rēl**, f., *thing*.

**rēs, pūblica**, gen., **rei pūblicae**, f., *state, republic*.

**rescindō, ere, scidī**, *scissus, tear down*.

**resistō, ere, restitū**, *resist*.

**resonō, āre, āvī, ātus**, *resound, reecho*.

**respiciō, ere, spexī**, *spectus, look back, look about*.

**respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsus, answer, reply.**

**respōnsum, i, n., answer.**

**restituō, ere, uī, ūtus, restore.**

**resurgō, surgere, surrexi, surrectus, rise again.**

**resurrectio, ūnis, f., resurrection.**

**retineō, ēre, uī, tentus, retain.**

**reus, i, m., defendant, prisoner.**

**revertor, i, reversus sum, return.**

**rēx, rēgis, m., king.**

**Rhēnus, i, m., the Rhine.**

**Rhodanus, i, m., the Rhone.**

**ripa, ae, f., bank (of a river).**

**risus, ūs, m., laughter.**

**ritus, ūs, m., religious ceremony, rite.**

**rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, ask.**

**Rōma, ae, f., Rome.**

**Rōmānus, a, um, Roman; ——, as noun, m., a Roman.**

**rōsa, ae, f., rose.**

**rubeō, ēre, ——, ——, grow red, blush.**

**rūrsus, again.**

**Saba, ae, f., Saba, the largest town in Arabia Felix, noted for its frankincense, myrrh, etc.**

**sacrificium, i, n., sacrifice.**

**sacrōsanctus, a, um, inviolable, sacred.**

**saeclum, see saeculum.**

**saeculum, i, n., race, generation.**

**saepe, adv., often, frequently.**

**saevitās, ātis, f., rage, fury.**

**sagitta, ae, f., arrow.**

**saltō, āre, āvī, ātus, dance.**

**salūs, ūtis, f., safety.**

**salutō, āre, āvī, ātus, greet.**

**salvātor, ūris, m., saviour, preserver.**

**salvē, imperative 2d sing. of salvō, -ēre, be well, hail.**

**salvō, āre, āvī, ātus, save.**

**salvus, a, um, safe, sound.**

**sanctus, a, um, sacred, holy.**

**sanguis, inis, m., blood.**

**sapiens, entis, wise.**

**sapientia, ae, f., wisdom.**

- satis, enough, indecl.*  
*scēna, ae, f., stage, scene.*  
*schola, ae, f., school.*  
*sciō, īre, scivī, scītus, know.*  
*scribō, ere, scripsi, scriptus, write; of laws, draw up.*  
*scūtum, i, n., shield.*  
*sē, reflexive, he, himself, herself, themselves.*  
*secrētum, i, n., secret, mystery.*  
*sēcūrus, a, um, free from care, untroubled.*  
*sed, conj., but.*  
*sedeō, ēre, sēdi, sessum, sit.*  
*sedile, is, n., seat.*  
*sēditio, ūnis, f., uprising, revolt, rebellion.*  
*sēmen, inis, n., seed.*  
*semper, adv., always, ever.*  
*senātus, ūs, m., senate.*  
*senectus, ūtis, f., old age, senility.*  
*sententia, ae, f., opinion.*  
*sentiō, īre, sēnsi, sēnsus, feel.*  
*septingenti, ae, a, seven hundred.*  
*sepulchrum, i, n., burial place, grave.*  
*sepultus, a, um, perf. part. of sepeliō, bury.*  
*Sēquani, ūrum, m. pl., Sequani, a tribe of Gaul.*  
*sequestrō, āre, āvī, ātus, remove, separate.*  
*sequor, i, secūtus sum, seek, follow.*  
*serēnus, a, um, fair, clear, bright.*  
*sermō, ūnis, m., conversation.*  
*serpens, entis, m., snake, serpent.*  
*servitūs, ūtis, f., servitude, bondage.*  
*servō, āre, āvī, ātus, keep, save, preserve.*  
*servus, i, m., slave, servant.*  
*sescenti, ae, a, six hundred.*  
*sī, if.*  
*Sibylla, ae, f., a prophetess, Sibyl.*  
*sic, so, in this way.*  
*sicut, adv., just as, as.*  
*signa īferō, charge (literally, bear the standards against).*  
*signum, i, n., sign, standard.*  
*silentium, ii, n., silence.*  
*silva, ae, f., forest.*  
*similis, e, like.*

- Simo, ònis, m., *Simon.***  
**simul, together, at the same time.**  
**simul ac (atque), as soon as.**  
**sine, without, prep. with abl.**  
**sinister, tra, trum, left.**  
**sitiò, ire, ivi, or ii, ——, be thirsty, suffer thirst.**  
**societàs, àtis, f., association, alliance.**  
**socius, i (ii), m., comrade, ally, companion.**  
**sòl, sòlis, m., sun.**  
**sollicitò, àre, àvi, àtus, rouse, instigate.**  
**solvò, ere, solvi, solütus, loose, of ships, unmoor; nàvès solvere, set sail.**  
**sonitus, üs, m., noise, sound, din.**  
**sonus, i, m., noise, sound.**  
**soror, òris, f., sister.**  
**spargò, ere, sì, sus, scatter, hurl.**  
**spatiu[m], i, n., space, time, opportunity.**  
**spectò, àre, àvi, àtus, behold, see.**  
**spèrò, àre, àvi, àtus, hope, hope for.**  
**spès, spei, f., hope.**  
**spíritus, üs, m., a breath, spirit.**  
**statim, at once, immediately.**  
**statuò, ere, ui, ütus, decide.**  
**stella, ae, f., star.**  
**stricte, adv., rigidly, strictly.**  
**studeò, ère, ui, ——, be eager for (with dative); novis rèbus studere, to be eager for a revolution.**  
**stultitia, ae, f., folly.**  
**stultus, a, um, foolish, silly.**  
**stupeò, ère, ui, ——, be astonished, be amazed.**  
**suàvis, e, sweet, pleasant, agreeable.**  
**sub, under, prep. with abl.**  
**subdùcò, ere, dùxi, ductus, withdraw.**  
**subeò, ire, ii, itùrus, approach.**  
**subitò, suddenly.**  
**sublevò, àre, àvi, àtus, relieve.**  
**submitto, ere, misi, missus, send, despatch.**  
**subsidiu[m], i, n., assistance.**  
**suffrágium, i, n., assent, approbation.**  
**sum, esse, fuì, futùrus, be.**  
**sùmò, ere, sùmpsi, sùmptus, take.**

**superbia**, ae, f., *haughtiness, pride, insolence.*

**superbus**, a, um, *haughty, proud, insolent.*

**superior**, ius, *higher.*

**superō**, I *overcome.*

**supersum**, esse, fui, *remain, be left.*

**superus**, a, um, *above.*

**supplex**, icis, adj., *humble, beseeching.*

**supplicium**, i, n., *torture, punishment.*

**supplicō**, āre, āvī, ātūs, *pray, implore.*

**suspendō**, ere, di, sum, *hang up, suspend.*

**suspiciō**, ūnis, f., *suspicion.*

**suspīrō**, āre, āvī, ātūs, *sigh.*

**sustineō**, ēre, sustinui, *withstand.*

**suus**, a, um, *his, her, its, their.*

**taedet**, it *wearies.*

**talentum**, i, n., *a talent* (not a coin), but a certain number of pounds of gold or silver equivalent to about \$1200.

**talis**, e, *such.*

**tam**, so (of degree).

**tamen**, nevertheless, yet.

**tangō**, ere, tetigī, tactus, *touch.*

**tantus**, a, um, *so much, so great.*

**tardō**, āre, āvī, ātūs, *retard, check.*

**tegō**, ere, texi, tectus, *cover.*

**tēlum**, i, n., *javelin.*

**temere**, *rashly.*

**tempestās**, ātis, f., *weather, storm.*

**templum**, i, n., *temple, church.*

**temptō**, āre, āvī, ātūs, *attempt, make trial of.*

**tempus**, oris, n., *time.*

**teneō**, ēre, uī, tentus, *hold.*

**tergum**, i, n., *back.*

**terminus**, i, m., *limit, end.*

**terra**, ae, f., *land, country.*

**terror**, ūris, m., *terror, alarm.*

**tertius**, a, um, *third.*

**thronus**, i, m., *throne.*

**timeō**, ēre, uī, —, *fear.*

**timidus**, a, um, *fearful, afraid.*

**timor**, ūris, m., *fear.*

- tollō, ere, sustuli, sublātum, *lift up, raise up.*  
tot, *so many*, indecl.  
tōtus, a, um, *the whole, all.*  
trādō, ere, didī, dītus, *hand over.*  
trādūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead across.*  
trāns, *across*, prep. with acc.  
trānseō, īre, īi, itus, *cross.*  
transfuga, ae, m., *deserter.*  
trāsportō, āre, āvī, ātus, *transport.*  
tremō, ere, uī, ——, *shake, tremble.*  
tremor, ūris, m., *shaking, tremor.*  
tribūnus, ī, m., *tribune.*  
tribuō, ere, uī, ūtus, *grant, give.*  
triduum, ī, n., *three days.*  
Trīnitas, ātis, f., *the Trinity.*  
tristis, e, *sad.*  
tristitia, ae, f., *sadness, grief.*  
tū, tuī, *thou, you.*  
triumphō, āre, āvī, ātus, *celebrate, triumph.*  
tuba, ae, f., *trumpet.*  
tueor, ērī, ——, ——, *guard, watch.*  
Tullia, ae, f., *Tullia*, a woman's name.  
tum, *then, at that time.*  
tumba, ae, f., *tomb.*  
tumultus, ūs, m., *uprising.*  
turba, ae, f., *crowd, multitude.*  
turbō, āre, āvī, ātus, *embarrass, disturb, trouble.*  
turgescō, ere, ——, ——, *swell.*  
turpis, e, *base.*  
turris, is, f., *tower.*  
tūs, tūris, n., *incense.*  
tūtus, a, um, *safe.*  
tuus, a, um, *your.*  
  
ubi, adv., *where, when.*  
ulterior, ius, comp. adj., *farther.*  
umbra, ae, f., *shadow.*  
unda, ae, f., *wave.*  
ultio, ūnis, f., *vengeance, revenge.*  
unde, *whence, wherefore.*  
undique, adv., *from all parts or sides.*

- ūnicus, a, um, *only, sole.*  
 ūnus, a, um, *one, alone.*  
 urbānus, a, um, *of a city, refined.*  
 urbs, urbīs, f., *city.*  
 usque, adv., *as far as, up to.*  
 ūsus, ūs, m., *use, service.*  
 ūsus militāris, *military experience.*  
 ut, *that, in order that.*  
 ūtilis, e, *useful.*  
 ūtilitās, ātis, f., *advantage.*  
 utinam, affirmative particle.  
 ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, *use.*  
 uxor, ūris, f., *wife, consort.*  
  
 vadum, ī, n., *ford.*  
 valeō, ēre, ūi, itūrus, *avail, prevail.*  
 vallis, is, f., *valley.*  
 vällum, ī, n., *rampart, intrenchment.*  
 vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus, *lay waste.*  
 vēna, ae, f., *vein.*  
 vēndō, ere, vēndidi, vēnditus, *sell.*  
 Venetī, ūrum, m. pl., *Veneti, a Gallic tribe.*  
 venia, ae, f., *permission, forgiveness.*  
 veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come.*  
 venter, ris, m., *womb.*  
 vēntus, ī, m., *wind.*  
 verbum, ī, n., *word.*  
 vērsor, ārī, ātus sum, *be engaged in.*  
 vertō, ere, vertī, versus, *turn; terga vertere, flee.*  
 vērus, a, um, *true, genuine.*  
 vescor, vescī, ——, *feed, eat.*  
 vester, tra, trum, *your.*  
 vestimentum, ī, n., *garment.*  
 vetus, veteris, *old.*  
 vetus, veteris, *old.*  
 vexō, āre, āvī, ātus, *I harass, annoy; ravage.*  
 via, ae, f., *road, way, street.*  
 vicissitūdo, inis, f., *change.*  
 victor, is, m., *victor.*  
 victōria, ae, f., *victory.*  
 vīcus, ī, m., *village.*

- videō, ēre, vidī, visus, see.**  
**videor, ērī, visus sum** (passive of **videō**), *be seen; seem.*  
**vigilia, ae, f., watch (of the night).  
**vigintī, twenty, indecl.**  
**vilitas, ātis, f., cheapness, baseness.**  
**vincō, ere, vīcī, victum, conquer.**  
**vindex, icis, m., avenger, defender.**  
**vinculum, ī, n., bond, fetter.**  
**vir, ī, m., man.**  
**virgo, inis, f., virgin.**  
**viriditās, ātis, f., green color, freshness, vigor.**  
**virilis, e, manly, of a man.**  
**virtūs, tūtis, f., valor, virtue.**  
**vīs (vis), f., violence; pl., vīrēs, ium, strength.**  
**vīta, ae, f., life.**  
**vitium, ī, n., fault, vice, mistake.**  
**vitō, I avoid.**  
**vituperō, āre, āvī, ātus, blame.**  
**vīvō, ere, vixī, victus, live.**  
**vīvus, a, um, alive, living.**  
**vix, scarcely, with difficulty.**  
**vocō, āre, āvī, ātus, call.**  
**volō, velle, volui, ——, be willing, wish, will.**  
**voluptās, ātis, f., pleasure, enjoyment.**  
**vōx, vōcis, f., voice, word.**  
**vulnus, eris, n., wound.**  
**vultur, vulturis, m., vulture.**  
**vultus, ūs, m., expression, look.****

## English-Latin Vocabulary

- abandon**, dēserō, ere, serui, sertus.  
**able, be able**, possum, posse, potui.  
**about, concerning**, dē, prep. with abl.  
**absent, be absent**, absum, esse, aſui, aſutūrus.  
**account, on account of**, propter, prep. with acc.  
**accuse**, accusō, -are, aſi, -atus.  
**across**, trāns, prep. with acc.  
**adjudge**, iudicō, -are, -avi, -atus.  
**admire**, admiror, ari, atus sum.  
**advance**, prōgredior, i, gressus sum.  
**advantage**, utilitās, atis, f.  
**advice**, cōſilium, i, n.  
**advise**, moneō, ere, ui, itus.  
**affair**, rēs, rei, f.  
**after** (adv.), post.  
**after** (conj.), postquam.  
**after**, post, prep. with acc.  
**afterwards**, posteā.  
**against**, contra, prep. with acc.  
**aid**, auxiliū, i, n.  
**alarm**, terror, ōris, m.  
**all**, omnis, e.  
**alliance**, societās, atis, f.  
**ally**, socius, i, m.  
**almost**, paene.  
**alone**, sōlus, a, um; ūnus, a, um.  
**already**, iam.  
**also**, etiam.  
**although, though**, quamquam; quamvis; cum.  
**always**, semper.  
**ambassador**, legātus, i, m.  
**ambush**, insidiae, ārum, f. pl.  
**ancestors**, maiōrēs, um, m.  
**and**, et; -que (enclitic); atque.  
**anger**, ira, ae, f.  
**animal**, animal, alis, n.  
**announce**, nūntiō, -are, aſi, atus.  
**another**, alius, a, ud.

**answer**, respondeō, ēre, spondi, spōnsum.

**answer**, respōnsum, I, n.

**any**, fīllus, a, um.

**anybody, anyone, anything**, quisquam, quaequam, quidquam, quis, quid.

**any you please**, quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet or quodlibet.

**appoint**, dīcō, ere, dīxi, dictus; lit., say.

**approach**, noun, aditus, ūs, m.

**approach**, verb, appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātus; adeō, ire, iī, itus.

**approve**, probō, āre, āvī, ātus.

**April**, Aprīlis, e, adj.

**Ariovistus**, Ariovistus, I, m.

**arm**, armō, āre, āvī, ātus.

**army**, exercitus, ūs, m.

**army on the march**, agmen, minis, m.

**arrange**, collocō, āre, āvī, ātus.

**arrive**, perveniō, ire, vēni, ventus.

**as long as**, dum.

**as soon as**, simul atque (ac).

**ask**, rogō, āre, āvī, ātus.

**assemble** (intransitive), conveniō, ire, vēni, ventum.

**assistance**, subsidium, I, n.; auxilium, I, n.

**at all**, omnīnō, adv.

**at hand, be at hand**, adsum, esse, adfui, adfutūrus.

**at once**, statim.

**Athens**, Athēnae, ārum, f.

**attack**, impetus, ūs, m.

**attack**, adoriōr, irī, ortus sum.

**attack, assault** (a town), oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus.

**attempt**, temptō, āre, āvī, ātus.

**authority**, auctōritās, tātis, f.

**auxiliaries**, auxilia, ūrum, n. pl.

**avoid**, vitō, āre, āvī, ātus.

**bad**, malus, a, um.

**band, force** (of troops), manus, ūs, f.

**barbarian** (adj.), barbarus, a, um; (noun), barbarus, I, m.

**battle**, proelium, I, n.

**battle line**, aciēs, et, f.

**be**, sum, esse, fui, futūrus.

**be able**, possum, posse, potui.

- bear**, ferō, ferre, tuli, latus.  
**beast**, bestia, ae, f.  
**beast of burden**, iūmentum, i, n.  
**beautiful**, pulcher, chra, chrum.  
**because**, quod; quia; cum.  
**become**, fiō, fieri, factus sum.  
**before**, (prep. and adv.), ante.  
**before**, (conj.), antequam, priusquam.  
**begin**, coepi, coepisse.  
**beginning**, initium, i, n.  
**behoove**, it behooves, oportet, ere, oportuit.  
**Belgians**, Belgae, ārum, m.  
**believe**, crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēdūtus.  
**betake oneself**, cōferō, ferre, tuli, collatus, with the reflexive pron.  
**better**, melius.  
**between**, inter, prep. with acc.  
**black**, niger, gra, grum.  
**blame**, culpō, āre, āvi, ātus.  
**boat**, nāvis, is, f.  
**bold**, audax, -acis.  
**boldly**, audacter, adv.  
**boldness**, audacia, ae, f.  
**bondage**, servitū, ūtis, f.  
**booty**, praeda, ae, f.  
**born**, be, **born**, nāscor, i, nātus sum.  
**born**, nātus, a, um.  
**both**, each, uterque, utraque, utrumque.  
**boundary**, finis, is, m.  
**boy**, puer, eri, m.  
**brave**, fortis, e.  
**bravely**, fortiter; from the adj., fortis, e.  
**bridge**, pōns, pontis, m.  
**brief**, brevis, e.  
**bring**, afferō, ferre, attuli, allatus.  
**bring about**, efficiō, ere, feci, fectus.  
**bring against**, inferō, ferre, tuli, illatus, with dat. of indirect obj.  
**bring back**, referō, ferre, rettuli, relatus.  
**bring together**, cōferō, ferre, tuli, collatus.  
**bring up**, ēducō, āre, āvi, ātus.  
**bring upon**, inferō, ferre, tuli, illatus.  
**Britain**, Britannia, ae, f.

**broad**, latus, a, um.

**brother**, frater, tris, m.

**building**, aedificium, i, n., building.

**burn**, accendō, ere, dī, sus.

**by** (of personal agent), a ab, prep. with abl.

**Caesar**, Caesar, is, m.

**calamity**, calamitas, tatis, f.

**call (name)**, appellō, are, āvī, atus.

**call (summon)**, vocō, are, āvī, atus.

**call out**, clamō, are, āvī, atus.

**call together**, convocō, are, āvī, atus.

**camp**, castra, ḍrum, n.

**can (be able)**, possum, posse, potui.

**captive**, captivus, i, m.

**capture**, capio, ere, cēpi, captus.

**carry**, portō, are, āvī, atus.

**carry on**, gerō, ere, gessi, gestus.

**cause**, causa, ae, f.

**cavalry**, equites, um, m. pl. of eques, itis; **of cavalry, equestrian**, equester, tris, tre.

**cease**, desistō, ere, dēstiti.

**certain**, certain one, quidam, quaedam, quiddam, or quoddam.

**change**, mūto, are, āvī, atus.

**charge**, be, in **charge**, praesum, esse, fut, with dative.

**charge, put in charge**, praeficiō, ere, fēci, fectus, with dat.

**check**, tardō, are, āvī, atus.

**chief**, princeps, cipis, m.

**children**, liberi, ḍrum (um), m.

**choose**, dēligō, ere, lēgi, lectus.

**circumstance**, rēs, ei, f.

**citadel**, arx, arcis, f.

**citizen, fellow-citizen**, cīvis, is, m.

**city**, urbs, urbis, f.

**client**, cliens, ntis, m.

**coast**, ūra, ae, f.

**cohort**, cohors, rtis, f.

**collapse**, corrūbō, ere, uī, ——.

**collect**, colligō, ere, lēgi, lectus.

**come**, veniō, ire, vēni, ventum.

**command** (noun), mandātum, i, n.

**command** (verb), imperō, āre, āvi, ātus.  
**commander**, imperātor, ūris, m.  
**common**, communis, e.  
**compel**, cōgō, ēre, coēgi, coāctus.  
**conceal**, celō, āre, āvi, ātus.  
**concern**, it **concerns**, interest, esse, fuit.  
**concerning**, dē, prep. with abl.  
**condemn**, damnō, āre, āvi, ātus.  
**confer**, colloquor, I, locutus sum.  
**conference**, colloquium, i, n.  
**conflagration**, incendium, I, n.  
**consider**, putō, āre, āvi, ātus.  
**conspiracy**, coniūratiō, ūnis, f.  
**conspire**, coniurō, āre, āvi, ātus.  
**consul**, cōnsul, is, m.  
**consult** (with), dēliberō, āre, āvi, ātus.  
**contend**, dīmicō, āre, āvi, ātus.  
**contented**, contentus, a, um.  
**Corinth**, Corinthus, I, m., a city in Greece.  
**council**, concilium, I, n.  
**country**, terra, ae, f.  
**country, native country**, patria, ae, f.  
**courage**, animus, I, m. virtus, ūtis, f.  
**courageous**, fortis, e.  
**courageously**, audācter, from adj. audāx, acis.  
**cowardice**, ignāvia, ae, f.  
**cowardly**, ignāvus, a, um.  
**Crassus**, Crassus, I, m.  
**cross**, transeō, ire, ii, itus.  
**crowd**, premō, ēre, pressi, pressus.  
**cry**, clamor, ūris, m.  
**cross**, trānseō, ire, ii, itūrus.  
**crown**, corōna, ae, f.  
**cruel**, crūdēlis, e.  
**custom**, mōs, mōris, m.

**dance**, saltō, āre, āvi, ātus.  
**danger**, periculum, I, n.  
**dangerous**, periculōsus, a, um.  
**dare**, audeō, ēre, ausus sum. semi-deponent.  
**daring**, audāx, -acis, adi.

**daring**, audacia, ae, f.  
**daughter**, filia, ae, f.  
**day**, diēs, ei, m.  
**death**, mors, mortis, f.  
**decide**, cōstituō, ere, ui, atus.  
**decree**, dēcērō, ere, crēvi, crētus.  
**deed**, rēs, rei, f.  
**deep**, altus, a, um.  
**defend**, defendō, ere, fendi, fēnsus.  
**defense**, dēfensiō, ūnis, f.  
**delay**, moror, ari, atus.  
**delegate**, legātus, i, m.  
**deliberate**, dēliberō, are, avi, atus.  
**delight**, dēlectō, are, avi, atus.  
**demand**, flagitō, are, avi, atus.  
**depart**, excēdō, ere, cessi, cessūrus.  
**depth**, altitūdō, inis, f.  
**desert**, dēserō, ere, serui, sertus.  
**deserter**, transfuga, ae, m.  
**deserve**, mereor, ēri, meritus.  
**desire**, wish, optō, are, avi, atus.  
**desirous**, cupidus, a, um.  
**despair**, dēspérō, are, avi, atus.  
**destroy**, dēleō, ere, evi, etus.  
**destruction**, perniciēs, ei, f.  
**difficult**, difficilis, e.  
with **difficulty**, vix.  
**dignity**, dignitas, atis, f.  
**disagreement**, dissensiō, ūnis, f.  
**disaster**, calamitās, tatis, f.  
**discover**, reperiō, ire, repperi, repertus.  
**disease**, morbus, i, m.  
**disgrace**, ignōminia, ae, f.  
**disgust**, it disgusts, piget, pigēre, piguit.  
**dismiss**, dīmittō, ere, misi, missus.  
**dispatch**, praemittō, ere, misi, missus.  
**distant**, be **distant**, absum, esse, afut, afutūrus.  
**disturb**, perturbo, are, avi, atus.  
**ditch**, fossa, ae, f.  
**do**, faciō, ere, feci, factus.  
**doubt**, be in **doubt**, dubitō, are, avi, atus.

**draw up**, instruō, ere, ūxi, ūctus.

**drive back**, repellō, ere, reppuli, repulsus.

**drive out**, expellō, ere, puli, pulsus.

**Dumnorix**, Dumnorix, igis, m.

**dust**, pulvis, pulveris, m.

**duty**, officium, i, n.

**each**, quisque, quaeque, quidque.

**each (of two)**, uterque, utraque, utrumque.

**each other**, sui, sibi, se; also nōs, vōs, used reflexively.

**eager**, alacer, alacris, alacre.

**eagle**, aquila, ae, f.

**ear**, auris; is, f.

**easily**, facile, from adj. facilis, e.

**easy**, facilis, e.

**Ebro**, Hibērus, i, m., a river in Spain.

**eighteen**, duodeviginti.

**either . . . or**, aut . . . aut.

**elect**, creō, āre, āvi, ātus.

**eloquence**, ēloquentia, ae, f.

**else**, alias, a, ud.

**embankment, rampart**, agger, eris, m.

**embarrass**, turbō, āre, āvi, ātus.

**embassy**, legatiō, ūnis, f.

**encourage**, incitō, āre, āvi, ātus.

**endeavor**, cōnor, āri, ātus sum, dep.

**endure**, perferō, ferre, tuli, latus.

**enemy** (in military sense), hostis, is, m; (collectively), hostes, ium, m.

**enemy** (personal), inimicus, i, m.

**(be) engaged (in)**, vēsor, āri, ātus.

**envoy**, fruor, i, fructus.

**enough**, satis.

**entreat**, implōrō, āre, āvi, ātus.

**envoy**, legātus, i, m.

**envy**, invidia, ae, f.

**equal**, par. Gen. paris.

**especially**, maximē, adv.

**establish**, cōfirmō, āre, āvi, ātus.

**Europe**, Eurōpa, ae, f.

**even**, etiam.

**ever, always**, semper.

**every**, omnīs, e.

**evident (it is)**, cōstat, stāre, stitit.

**examine**, explōrō, āre, āvī, ātūs.

**exchange**, inter sē, dare.

**excuse**, ignoscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus.

**execute**, fungor, I, functus.

**exhaust, wear out**, cōficiō, ere, fēci, fectus.

**expect**, exspectō, āre, āvī, ātūs.

**extent**, magnitūdo, inis, f.

**extravagance**, luxūria, ae, f.

**faction**, factiō, ūnis, f.

**family (stock)**, genus, eris, n.

**farmer**, agricola, ae, m.

**father**, pater, patris, m.

**fatherland**, patria, ae, f.

**favor (thanks)**, grātia, ae, f.

**favor**, beneficium, I, n.

**fear (noun)**, timor, ūris, m.

**fear (verb)**, timeō, ēre, ui.

**fellow-citizen**, cīvis, is, m.

**fertile**, ferāx, acis.

**few**, pauci, ae, a.

**fidelity**, fidēs, 'I, f.

**field**, ager, agri, m.

**fiercely**, acriter; from the adj., acer, acris, acre.

**fifteen**, quindecim.

**fight**, pugnō, āre, āvī, ātūs.

**fill up**, compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētūs.

**find (by searching)**, reperiō, ire, repperī, repertus.

**find (come upon)**, inveniō, ire, vēni, ventus.

**first**, adj., primus, a, um.

**first**, adv., primum.

**fit out**, equip, instruō, ere, uxi, fūctus.

**fitting (it is)**, decet.

**five**, quinque.

**flattery**, assentiō, ūnis, f.

**flee, flee from**, fugiō, ere, fūgi, fugitūrus.

**fleet**, classis, is, f.

**flight**, fuga, ae, f.

**flourish**, flōreō, ēre, ui, ——.

- flower**, flos, flōris, m.  
**follow**, sequor, I, secūtus.  
**(following), on the following day**, postridie.  
**fond, fond of**, cupidus, a, um.  
**foolish**, stultus, a, um.  
**foot**, pēs, pedis, m.  
**forage**, pābulum, I, n.  
**force**, cōgō, ere, coēgi, coāctus.  
**ford**, vadum, I, n.  
**forest**, silva, ae, f.  
**forget**, oblivisor, I, oblitus sum.  
**(to) form a plan**, consilium ire.  
**form an alliance**, foedus iungō, ere, iunxi, iunctum.  
**fortification**, mūnitiō, ònis, f.  
**fortify**, mūniō, ire, Ivi, itus.  
**fortune**, fortūna, ae, f.  
**fortune (i.e., property)**, fortūnae, àrum, f.  
**founder**, conditor, òris, m.  
**four**, quattuor.  
**free (adjective)**, liber, a, um.  
**free, set free**, liberō, àre, àvi, àtus.  
**frequently**, crēbrē, adv.  
**friend**, amīcus, I, m.  
**friendship**, amīctia, ae, f.  
**frighten**, perterreō, ère, ui, itus.  
**from**, à, ab.  
**from, out of**, è, ex.  
**from (=of)**, with verbs of demanding, etc., à, ab.  
**from**, after verbs of hindering, etc., quōminus, ne.  
**front (adj.)**, primus, a, um.  
**fury**, furor, òris, m.
- Galba**, Galba, ae, m.  
**Gallic**, Gallus, a, um.  
**game**, ludus, I, m.  
**garden**, hortus, I, m.  
**garrison**, praeſidium, I, n.  
**gate**, porta, ae, f.  
**Gaul (a Gaul)**, Gallus, I, m.  
**Gaul (the country)**, Gallia, ae, f.  
**general**, imperator, -òris, m.

**Geneva**, Genava, ae, f.  
**gentle**, clēmens, ntis.  
**German** (a German), Germānus, t, m.  
**Germany**, Germānia, ae, f.  
**general**, imperātor, ḍris, m.  
**Germans**, Germāni, ḍrum, m. pl.  
**get ready** (trans.), parō, āre, āvī, ātus.  
**gift**, dōnum, t, n.  
**girl**, puella, ae. f.  
**give**, dō, dare, dedi, datus.  
**give up**, dēdō, ere, dedidī, itus.  
**glad**, laetus, a, um.  
**glorious**, amplius, a, um.  
**glory**, glōria, ae, f.  
**go**, eō, ire, īvī (ii), itum.  
**go around**, circumeō, ire, īvī (ii), itus.  
**go away**, abeō, iī, itūrus.  
**go back**, remigrō, āre, āvī, ātus.  
**gold**, aurum, I, n.  
**good**, bonus, a, um.  
**grain**, frūmentum, I, n.  
**grandfather**, avus, I, m.  
**great**, magnus, a, um.  
**greatest** (of qualities), summus, a, um.  
**greatly**, magnopere.  
**grief**, dolor, ḍris, m.  
**(ground), on the ground that.**  
**guard**, cūstōs, ḍdis, m. and f.  
**guard, watch**, tueor, ēri.

**Haedui**, Haedui, ḍrum, m.  
**hand over**, trādō, ere, didī, ditus.  
**happen, be done**, fiō, fieri, factus sum.  
**happen, it happens, it befalls**, impersonal, accidit, ere, accidit.  
**happy**, beatus, a, um.  
**harass**, vexō, āre, āvī, ātus.  
**harbor**, portus, ūs, m.  
**harm**, détrimentum, I, n.  
**harvest**, messis, is, f.  
**hasten**, properō, āre, āvī, ātus.  
**hate**, ḍdi, ḍdisse.

**have**, *habeō, ēre, ui, itus.*  
**he**, *is (ea, id).*  
**head**, *caput, itis, n.*  
**hear, hear of**, *audiō, Ire, Ivi, Itus.*  
**heart, courage**, *animus, i, m.*  
**help**, *auxilium, I, n.*  
**Helvetii**, *Helvētiī, ūrum, m.*  
**her**, *suus, a, um, reflexive.*  
**herald**, *praeco, ūnis, m.*  
**here**, *hic.*  
**hide**, *lateō, ēre, ui, ——.*  
**high**, *altus, a, um.*  
**highest (of qualities)**, *summus, a, um.*  
**hill**, *collis, is, m.*  
**himself, herself, etc.**, *sui, sibi, se, reflexive.*  
**hinder, impede**, *impediō, ire, ivi, itus.*  
**his**, *suus, a, um, reflexive.*  
**hither**, *huc, adv.*  
**hold**, *habeō, ēre, ui, itus.*  
**(home), at home**, *domi.*  
**home (at one's home)**, *domum.*  
**honor**, *honōrō, āre, āvi, atus.*  
**honor**, *honor, ūris, m.*  
**hope**, *spes, ei, f.*  
**horn**, *cornū, ūs, n.*  
**horse**, *equus, I, m.*  
**horseman**, *eques, itis, m.*  
**hostage**, *obses, idis, m.*  
**house**, *domus, ūs, f.*  
**how many**, *quot, indecl.*  
**how much**, followed by genitive of the whole, **quantum**.  
**humble**, *humilis, e.*  
**hundred**, *centum.*  
**hurl**, *coniciō, ere, conieci, coniectus.*  
**hurry**, *contendō, ere, tendi, tentum.*  
  
**I**, *ego, mef.*  
**if**, *si, conj.*  
**immortal**, *immortalis, e.*  
**impede**, *impediō, ire, ivi, itus.*  
**implore**, *ōrō, āre, āvi, atus.*

**in**, in, prep. with abl.  
**in no way**, omnino, adv.  
**in vain**, frustra, adv.  
**inasmuch as**, quoniam.  
**increase** (trans.), augeō, ēre, auxi, auctus.  
**infantry**, pedestes, um, m.  
**inferior**, Inferior, ius, comp. adj.  
**inform**, certiōrem faciō, ere, fect, factus.  
**inhabit**, incolō, ere, ui, cultus.  
**inhabitant**, incola, ae, m.  
**injure**, noceō, ere, ui, itūrus, with the dative.  
**injury**, iniūria, ae, f.  
**insult**, contumēlia, ae, f.  
**into**, in, prep. with acc.  
**Ireland**, Hibernia, ae, f.  
**island**, insula, ae, f.  
**Italy**, Italia, ae, f.

**javelin**, tēlum, I, n.  
**join (battle)**, committō, ere, misi, missus.  
**just**, iustus, a, um.  
**justice**, iustitia, ae, f.

**Kalends**, Kalendae, arum, f. pl.  
**keenness**, acūmen, inis, n.  
**keep away, ward off**, prohibeō, ēre, ui, itus.  
**kill**, nēcō, āre, avi, atus.  
**kill**, interficiō, ere, fect, fectus.  
**kind**, genus, generis, n.  
**kind (be)**, indulgeō, ēre, indulsi, indultus.  
**kind**, rēx, regis, m.  
**kingdom**, rēgnūm, I, n.  
**know**, sciō, ire, iūt, Itus.

**labor**, labor, ōris, m.  
**lack, be lacking**, dēsum, deesse, dēfui.  
**land**, ager, agrī, m.  
**land** (opposed to water), terra, ae, f.  
**large**, magnus, a, um.  
**last, last part of**, limiting a noun, extrēmus, a, um.  
**law, statute**, lēx, lēgis, f.

- lay waste**, *vastō, āre, āvī, ātus.*
- lead**, *dūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus.*
- lead across**, *trādūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus.*
- lead back**, *redūcō, ere, xi, ctus.*
- lead, lead out, lead away**, *dēdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus.*
- leader**, *dux, ducis, m.*
- learn**, *cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus.*
- leave (behind)**, *relinquō, ere, liqui, lictus.*
- legion**, *legiō, ḥnis, f.*
- lend (help)**, *ferō, ferre, tuli, latus.*
- less**, *minus.*
- lest**, *nē.*
- let go**, *dīmittō, ere, mīstī, missus.*
- letter**, *litterae, ārum, f.*
- liberty**, *libertas, atis, f.*
- lieutenant**, *legatus, I, m.*
- life**, *vita, ae, f.*
- light-armed**, *expeditus, a, um.*
- like**, see **love**.
- like**, *similis, e.*
- line of battle**, *acīes, ei, f.*
- listen to**, *audiō, īre, īvi, itus.*
- literature**, *litterae, ārum, f. pl.*
- little (a little)**, *paulum.*
- long (adv.)**, *diū.*
- long for**, *desiderō, āre, āvī, ātus.*
- long (adj.)**, *longus, a, um.*
- loss**, *detrimentum, I, n.*
- love**, *amō, āre, āvī, ātus.*
- lowest**, *Infīmus, a um, or īmus, a, um, superl. of inferus.*
- loyalty**, *fides, ei, f.*
- make**, *faciō, ere, fēci, factus.*
- make** (in sense of, make somebody or something safe, bold, clear, de.), *reddō, ere, redidi, redditus.*
- man**, *homo, inis, m., the general term for mankind; vir, virt, m., man as opposed to woman, or as a complimentary term.*
- many**, *multi, ae, a; very many, complurēs, a; gen. complurium.*
- march (noun)**, *iter, itineris, n.*
- march (verb)**, *iter facere, lit., make a march.*
- march forth**, *egredior, I, gressus sum.*

**market-place**, *forum*, *i.*, *n.*

**messenger**, *nuntius*, *i.*, *m.*

**middle**, *medius*, *a.*, *um.*

**mile**, *mille passus*, *lit.*, thousand paces; *pl.*, *milia passuum*.

**military experience**, *usus militaris*, *usus militaris*, *f.*

**mind**, *animus*, *i.*, *m.*

**mitigate**, *lenio*, *ire*, *ivi*, or *it*, *itus*.

**money**, *pecunia*, *ae*, *f.*

**moon**, *luna*, *ae*, *f.*

**more** (adv.), *magis*.

**more** (substantive), *plus*, *pluris*, *n.*

**most**, *plerique*, *aeque*, *aque*.

**mother**, *matre*, *tris*, *f.*

**mound**, *agger*, *eris*, *m.*

**mountain**, *mōns*, *montis*, *m.*

**move**, *migrō*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātus* (intransitive).

**move**, *moveō*, *ēre*, *mōvi*, *mōtuſ* (intransitive).

**much**, *multus*, *a*, *um.*

**muse**, *mūsa*, *ae*, *f.*

**my**, *meus*, *a*, *um.*

**name**, *nōmen*, *inis*, *n.*

**narrow**, *angustus*, *a*, *um.*

**nation**, see **tribe**.

**naval**, *nāvālis*, *e.*

**nearest**, *proximus*, *a*, *um*, adj., superl. of *propior*.

**necessary**, *it is necessary*, *necesse est*.

**need (be in)**, *egeō*, *ēre*, *ui*, ——.

**need, there is need**, *opus est* (w. ablative).

**neglect**, *neglegō*, *ere*, *lexi*, *lectus*.

**neither**, *neuter*, *-tra*, *-trum*, adj. and pron., **neither** (of two).

**never**, *numquam*, *adv.*

**nevertheless**, *tamen*, *adv.*

**next**, *proximus*, *a*, *um.*

**night**, *nox*, *noctis*, *f.*

**no**, *nūllus*, *a*, *um.*

**no one**, *nēmō*, *dat.*, *nēmī*, *acc.*, *nēminem*; *gen.* and *abl.*, wanting.

**noble**, *nōbilis*, *e.*

**not**, *nōn*. *nē*.

**(not), is not? does not? etc.**, *nōnnc*.

**not even**, *ne . . . quidem*, with the emphatic word between.

**not yet**, nōndum.

**nothing**, nihil, indecl.

**notice**, animadvertisō, ere, verti, versus.

**now** (at the present time), nunc.

**number**, numerus, I, m.

**oak**, quercus, ūs, f.

**obey**, pāreō, ēre, ui, itūrus.

**occupy**, occupō, āre, avī, atus.

**occur**, see become.

**of, concerning**, dē, prep. with abl.

**offer**, praebeō, ēre, ui, itus.

**often**, saepe.

**old**, vetus, gen., veteris.

**on**, in, prep. with abl.

**on all sides**, undique, adv.

**one**, ūnus, a, um.

**one . . . an other**, alius . . . alius; **the one . . . the other**, alter . . . alter.

**onset**, impetus, ūs, m.

**open**, apertus, a, um.

**opinion**, sententia, ae, f.

**opportunity**, occasiō, ūnis, f.

**oppose**, adversō, āre, avī, atus.

**or**, aut. See either.

**order**, levy, imperō, āre, avī, atus.

**order**, command, iubeō, ēre, iussi, iussus.

**other**, another, alius, a, ud.

**other, the other**, alter, a, um.

**others**, all the others, ceteri, ae, a.

**ought**, débeō, ēre, ui, itus; **it behooves**, oportet, ēre, oportuit.

**our, our own**, noster, tra, trum.

**outer**, exterior, ius, comp. of exterus.

**overcome**, superō, āre, avī, atus.

**owe**, débeō, ēre, ui, itus.

**pace** (=5 feet), passus, ūs, m.

**pained (be)**, doleō, ēre, ui, itus.

**pardon**, ignoscō, ēre, nōvi, nōtus.

**parent**, parēns, entis, m. and f.

**part**, pars, partis, f.

- pass** (**narrow**), angustiae, *ārum*, f. pl.
- passage**, exitus, *ūs*, m.
- peace**, *pāx*, *pācis*, f.
- people**, *populus*, *I*, m.
- perish**, intereō, *Ire*, *itīrus*.
- permit**, permittō, *ere*, *mīstī*, missus.
- persuade**, persuādeō, *ēre*, *suāstī*, suāsum.
- pile**, acervus, *I*, m.
- pitch** (**camp**), *pōnō*, *ere*, *posūtī*, positus.
- pity**, misericordia, *ae*, f.
- pity**, it **excites pity**, miseret, miserēre, miseruit, impersonal.
- place**, collocō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.
- place**, locus, *I*, m.
- place in charge, in command over**, praeficiō, *ere*, *fēctī*, fectus, with the dat. of indirect obj.
- plain**, plānitīes, *ei*, f.
- plan**, cōnsilium, *I*, n.
- please**, placeō, *ēre*, *ui*, placitūrus.
- pleasing**, grātus, *a*, um.
- plunder**, diripiō, *ire*, *ripūtī*, *reptus*.
- Pompey**, Pompeius, Pompeī, *m*.
- position**, locus, *I*, m.
- power**, potestās, *ātis*, f; the power that is vested in an official.
- praetor**, praetor, *ōris*, *m*.
- praise**, laudō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.
- pray**, ūrō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.
- prefer**, malō, malle, malūtī.
- prepare**, parō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.
- present**, give, dōnō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.
- present**, be **present**, adsum, esse, *fūtī*, futūrus.
- preserve**, cōservō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.
- pretty**, pulcher, *ra*, rum.
- prevail**, valeō, *ēre*, valūtī, *itūrus*.
- prevent**, prohibeo, *ēre*, *ui*, *itus*.
- private**, privātus, *a*, um.
- procure**, nanciscor, *I*, nactus.
- prodigy**, prodigium, *I*, *n*.
- promoter**, adiūtrix, *Icīs*, *f*.
- proud**, superbūs, *a*, um.
- province**, prōvincīa, *ae*, *f*.
- public**, pūblicus, *a*, um.

**put in charge**, *praeficiō*, *ere*, *feci*, *fectus*.

**put to flight**, *fugō*, *are*, *avi*, *atus*.

**queen**, *rēgina*, *ae*, *f.*

**quickly**, *celeriter*, *adv.*, from the adj., *celer*, *eris*, *ere*.

**race (people)**, *genus*, *eris*, *n.*

**rampart**, *agger*, *eris*, *m.*

**ravage**, *vexō*, *are*, *avi*, *atus*.

**reason**, *causa*, *ae*, *f.*

**receive**, *accipiō*, *ere*, *cēpi*, *ceptus*.

**recollection**, *memoria*, *ae*, *f.*

**reconcile**, *placō*, *are*, *avi*, *atus*.

**refuse**, *recūsō*, *are*, *avi*, *atus*.

**region**, *regiō*, *ōnis*, *f.*

**regret**, *it causes regret*, *paenitet*, *ere*, *uit*, *impersonal*.

**rejoice**, *gaudeō*, *ere*, *gāvisus*.

**remain**, *maneō*, *ere*, *mānsi*, *mānstrus*.

**remaining**, *reliquus*, *a*, *um*.

**remember**, *bear in mind*, *memini*, *isse*.

**remind**, *admoneō*, *ere*, *ui*, *itus*.

**reply**, *respondeō*, *ere*, *respondi*, *respōnsus*.

**report** (noun), *fama*, *ae*, *f.*

**report** (verb), *nūntiō*, *are*, *avi*, *atus*.

**reputation**, *fāma*, *ae*, *f.*

**request**, *seek*, *petō*, *ere*, *petīvī* (*if*), *Itus*.

**resist**, *resistō*, *ere*, *restiti*, with dative.

**resources**, *opēs*, *um*, *f. pl.*

**rest**, *the rest*, *ceteri*, *ae*, *a*.

**restore**, *restituō*, *ere*, *ui*, *atus*.

**retard**, *tardō*, *are*, *avi*, *atus*.

**return** (intrans.), *revertor*, *I*; *redeō*, *ire*, *it*, *itum*.

**revolt**, *seditio*, *ōnis*, *f.*

**reward**, *praemium*, *I*, *n.*

**Rhine**, *Rhēnus*, *I*, *m.*

**riches**, *opēs*, *ium*, *f. pl.*

**right**, *dexter*, *tra*, *trum*.

**river**, *flūmen*, *inis*, *n.* *fluvius*, *I*, *m.*

**road**, *via*, *ae*, *f.*

**robber**, *latrō*, *ōnis*, *m.*

**Roman**, *Romānus*, *a*, *um*; **a Roman**, *Rōmānus*, *I*, *m.*

- Rome**, Rōma, ae, f.  
**rose**, rōsa, ae, f.  
**rough**, asper, era, erum.  
**rouse**, sollicitō, āre, āvī, ātus.  
**rouse**, accendō, ere, accendi, accensum.  
**rout**, pellō, ere, pepuli, pulsus.  
**rule**, regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus.  
**ruler**, see **king**.  
**run forward**, prōcurrō, ere, cucurri, cursum.  
**rush forth**, se ēicere.
- safety**, salūs, ūtis, f.  
**sailor**, nauta, ae, m.  
**sake**, for the sake, causā, with gen., the genitive always precedes.  
**same**, idem, eadem, idem, at the same time, simul.  
**save**, servō, āre, āvī, ātus.  
**say**, dicō, ere, dixi, dictus.  
**scarcely**, vix.  
**scout**, explorātor, īris, m.  
**sea**, mare, is, n.  
**seat**, sedile, is, n.  
**secret**, secretūm, f, n.  
**seek**, quaerō, ere, quaesivi, quaesitus.  
**seek**, petō, ere, petivī, petitus.  
**seize**, capiō, ere, cēpi, captus.  
**seize**, expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus.  
**seize**, occupō, āre, āvī, ātus.  
**select**, dēligō, ere, lēgi, lectum.  
**self** (i.e., I myself, you yourself, etc.), ipse, in apposition with the subject or object.  
**self, oneself**, sui, sibi, sē.  
**sell**, vēndō, ere, vēndidi, vēnditus.  
**senate**, senātus, ūs, m.  
**send**, mittō, ere, misi, missus.  
**seem**, videor, ēri, visus sum.  
**Sequani**, Sēquani, īrum, m.  
**servant**, servus, i, m.  
**service**, ūsus, ūs, m.  
**set on fire**, incendō, ere, cendi, census.  
**set out**, proficiscor, I, fectus sum.  
**set sail**, navēs solvō, etc.

**she**, ea, f. of is.  
**shield**, scūtum, I, n.  
**ship**, nāvis, is, f.  
**shore**, lītus, oris, n.  
**short**, brevis, -e.  
**show**, mōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus.  
**sick**, aeger, gra, grum.  
**(from all) sides**, undique, adv.  
**(sides) on all**, undique.  
**silence**, silentium, I, n.  
**since (causal)**, cum.  
**sister**, soror, ūris, f.  
**six**, sex, indecl.  
**sky**, caelum, I, n.  
**slave**, servus, I, m.  
**small**, paſvus, a, um.  
**so great**, tantus, a, um.  
**so many**, tot, indecl.  
**so (of degree)**, tam.  
**so, thus (of manner)**, ita, sic.  
**soldier**, miles, itis, m.  
**some . . . others**, aliī . . . aliī.  
**some, something**, aliquis, aliqua, aliquid or aliquod.  
**son**, filius, I, m.  
**soon**, mox, adv.  
**soul**, animus, I, m.  
**sound**, sonitus, ūs, m.  
**Spain**, Hispānia, ae, f.  
**spare**, parcō, ere, pepercī, parsūrus.  
**speak**, loquor, I, locūtus sum; dicō, ere, dīxi, dictus.  
**spear**, hasta, ae, f.  
**speedily**, celeriter, adv.  
**standard**, signum, I, n.  
**star**, stella, ae, f.  
**state**, cīvitās, atis, f.  
**station**, collocō, āre, āvī, ātus.  
**steadfast**, firmus, a, um.  
**storm**, oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus.  
**storm**, tempestās, atis, f.  
**stone**, lapis, idis, m.  
**story**, fabula, ae, f.

**strong**, fortis, e.  
**such**, talis, e.  
**sudden**, repentinus, a, um.  
**suddenly**, subito.  
**suffer**, labōrō, āre, āvī, atus.  
**suffer**, patior, I, passus sum.  
**suitable**, aptus, a, um.  
**suitable**, idōneus, a, um.  
**summer**, aestas, atis, f.  
**summon**, vocō, āre, āvī, atus.  
**(superior)**, **be superior to**, superō, āre, āvī, atus.  
**surely**, certe, adv.  
**surpass**, superō, āre, āvī, atus.  
**surrender**, dēditiō, -ōnis, f.  
**surrender** (oneself), dedō, ere, dedidi, dēditus.  
**surround**, circumveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus.  
**suspicion**, suspiciō, ūnis, f.  
**sustain**, sustineō, ēre, uī, tentus.  
**swift**, celer, eris, ere.  
**sword**, gladius, I, m.

**take**, **seize**, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.  
**take by storm**, expugnō, āre, āvī, atus.  
**take care**, cūrō, āre, āvī, atus.  
**take oath**, iurō, āre, āvī, atus.  
**talent**, talentum, I, n.  
**talk**, loquor, I, locūtus sum.  
**talkative**, loquax, acis.  
**tall**, altus, a, um.  
**tarry**, moror, ārī, ātus sum.  
**teach**, doceō, ēre, uī, doctus.  
**tell, say**, dicō, ere, dixī, dictus.  
**temple**, templum, I, n.  
**ten**, decem, indecl.  
**terrify**, perterreō, ēre, uī, territus.  
**terror**, terror, ūris, m.  
**than**, quam, conj.  
**thanks**, grātia, ae, f.  
**that**, is, ea, id, ille, illa, illud.  
**that of yours**, iste, ista, istud.  
**that**, rel. pron., qui, quae, quod.

- that, in order that**, ut; qui, quae, quod with the subj.; with comp., quod.
- that, on the ground that**, quod.
- that, lest**, with verbs of fearing, ne.
- that not, in order that not**, ne.
- that not**, with verbs of fearing, ut.
- that (of result)**, ut, **that not**, ut non.
- their, their own**, suus, a, um.
- there**, ibi, adv.
- they**, see **he, she, etc.**
- thing**, rēs, rei, f.
- think**, cogitō, āre, āvi, ātus.
- third**, tertius, a, um.
- thirty-eight**, duodequadraginta.
- this**, hic, haec, hōc.
- those**, as antecedent of rel., et, eae, ea.
- thou**, tū, tuī.
- though**, quamquam, quamvis, etsi, cum.
- thousand**, mīlle, pl., mīlia, ium, n.
- three**, trēs, tria.
- three hundred**, trecenti, ae, a.
- thus**, sic.
- till**, dum, dōnec, conj.
- time**, tempus, oris, n.
- to**, ad, prep. with acc.
- today**, hodiē, adv.
- (top) top of**, with a noun, summus, a, um.
- torture**, supplicium, i, n.
- touch**, moveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus.
- tower**, turris, is, f.
- town, oppidum**, i, n.
- townsman**, oppidānus, i, m.
- transport**, trāsportō, āre, āvi, ātus.
- tree**, arbor, oris, f.
- trench**, fossa, ae, f.
- tribe**, gēns, gentis, f.
- tribune**, tribūnus, i, m.
- troops**, cōpiae, ārum, f.
- true**, vērus, a, um.
- trust**, cōfidō, ere, fīsus sum, semi-dep.
- try, make trial**, temptō, āre, āvi, ātus.

**twenty**, viginti.

**twenty-two**, duo et viginti.

**two**, duo, duae, duo.

**uncertain**, incertus, a, um.

**under**, sub., prep, with acc.

**unfavorable**, alienus, a, um.

**unharmed**, incolmis, e.

**unmindful (be)**, oblitiscor, I, oblitus sum.

**until**, dum, donec, quoad.

**unwilling**, invitus, a, um; **be unwilling**, nōlo, nolle, nōlui.

**uprising**, tumultus, ūs, m.

**urge on**, incitō, are, avi, atus.

**us**, nōs, nostrum, nostrī, pl. of ego.

**use**, ūtor, I, ūsus sum.

**valley**, vallis, is f.

**valor**, virtūs, tātis, f.

**valuable**, pretiosus, a, um.

**Veneti**, Veneti, örum, m.

**very many**, complūrēs, a; gen., complūrium.

**victory**, victoria, ae, f.

**see**, videō, ēre, vidi, visus.

**village**, vīcus, I, m.

**virtue**, virtūs, ūtis, f.

**visit**, adeō, ire, it, itus.

**voice**, vox, vōcis, f.

**wage**, gerō, ere, gessi, gestus.

**wait**, wait for, exspectō, are, avi, atus.

**wall**, mūrus, I, m.

**war**, bellum, I, n.

**watch**, vigilia, ae, f.

**we**, nōs, nostrum or nostrī.

**weapons**, arma, örum, n. pl.

**weeping**, lacrimae, ārum, f. pl.

**welcome**, grātus, a, um.

**well**, bene, adv.

**what?** quis (qui), quae, quid, (quod).

**whatever**, quisquis, quidquid.

**when?** quandō.

**when**, rel., ubi, ut, cum.  
**where**, ubi.  
**whether**, num., -ne.  
**whither**, quō.  
**while**, conj., dum.  
**who?** quis.  
**who, which**, rel. pron., qui, quae, quod.  
**whole**, tōtus, a, um.  
**why**, quārē, adv.  
**wife**, uxor, ūris, f.  
**willingly**, libenter, adv.  
**wing**, cornū, ūs, n.  
**winter quarters**, hiberna, ūrum, n.  
**wise**, sapiens, entis.  
**wish**, volō, velle, volui.  
**with**, cum, prep. with abl.  
**withdraw**, discēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus.  
**without**, sine, prep. with abl.  
**withstand**, sustineō, ēre, uī, tentus.  
**woman**, femina, ae, f.  
**wonderful**, mirus, a, um.  
**woods**, silva, ae, f.  
**word**, verbum, i, n.  
**work**, labōrō, āre, āvi, ātus.  
**work (a work)**, opus, eris, n.  
**worthy**, dignus, a, um.  
**wound (noun)**, vulnus, eris, n.  
**wound (verb)**, vulnerō, āre, āvi, ātus.  
**wreath**, corōna, ae, f.  
**wretched**, miser, a, um.  
**write**, scribō, ere, scripti, scriptus.

**year**, annus, i, m.  
**(yet), not yet**, nōndum.  
**yield**, cedō, cēdere, cessī, cessum.  
**you**, tū, tui, sing., vōs, vestrum or vestri, pl.  
**young man**, adulēscēns, entis, m.  
**your, your own**, tuus, a, um., vester, tra, trum.



From the Digital Library Collection  
Of  
St. Mary's Hermitage Nr. Canterbury in Kent

The Order of the Hermits of Saint Bruno

Brother Librarian:  
[st.maryshermitage\(at\)hermitsofsaintbruno.org](mailto:st.maryshermitage(at)hermitsofsaintbruno.org)

<https://hermitsofsaintbruno.org>

<https://www.facebook.com/EremoSantaMaria/>







